

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
HIGHWAY DIVISION 5

PROPOSAL

DATE AND TIME OF BID OPENING: APRIL 13TH, 2022 AT 2:00 PM

CONTRACT ID: DE00335

WBS ELEMENT NO.: 17BP.5.R.88

COUNTY: WARREN COUNTY

MILES: 0.08 MILES

ROUTE NO.: SR 1609 (POWELLS MILLS ROAD)

LOCATION: BRIDGE #135 OVER FISHING CREEK ON SR 1609 (POWELLS MILLS ROAD)

TYPE OF WORK: STRUCTURE

NOTICE:

ALL BIDDERS SHALL COMPLY WITH ALL APPLICABLE LAWS REGULATING THE PRACTICE OF GENERAL CONTRACTING AS CONTAINED IN CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA WHICH REQUIRES THE BIDDER TO BE LICENSED BY THE N.C. LICENSING BOARD FOR CONTRACTORS WHEN BIDDING ON ANY NON-FEDERAL AID PROJECT WHERE THE BID IS \$30,000 OR MORE, EXCEPT FOR CERTAIN SPECIALTY WORK AS DETERMINED BY THE LICENSING BOARD. BIDDERS SHALL ALSO COMPLY WITH ALL OTHER APPLICABLE LAWS REGULATING THE PRACTICES OF ELECTRICAL, PLUMBING, HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING AND REFRIGERATION CONTRACTING AS CONTAINED IN CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA. NOTWITHSTANDING THESE LIMITATIONS ON BIDDING, THE BIDDER WHO IS AWARDED ANY FEDERAL - AID FUNDED PROJECT SHALL COMPLY WITH CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA FOR LICENSING REQUIREMENTS WITHIN 60 CALENDAR DAYS OF BID OPENING.

THIS IS A STRUCTURE PROJECT.

BID BONDS ARE REQUIRED.

NAME OF BIDDER

ADDRESS OF BIDDER

**PROPOSAL FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF
CONTRACT No. DE00335 IN WARREN COUNTY, NORTH CAROLINA**

Date _____ 20 _____

**DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION,
RALEIGH, NORTH CAROLINA**

The Bidder has carefully examined the location of the proposed work to be known as Contract No. **DE00335**; has carefully examined the plans and specifications, which are acknowledged to be part of the proposal, the special provisions, the proposal, the form of contract, and the forms of contract payment bond and contract performance bond; and thoroughly understands the stipulations, requirements and provisions. The undersigned bidder agrees to bound upon his execution of the bid and subsequent award to him by the Department of Transportation in accordance with this proposal to provide the necessary contract payment bond and contract performance bond within fourteen days after the written notice of award is received by him. The undersigned Bidder further agrees to provide all necessary machinery, tools, labor, and other means of construction; and to do all the work and to furnish all materials, except as otherwise noted, necessary to perform and complete the said contract in accordance with *the 2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures* by the dates(s) specified in the Project Special Provisions and in accordance with the requirements of the Engineer, and at the unit or lump sum prices, as the case may be, for the various items given on the sheets contained herein.

The Bidder shall provide and furnish all the materials, machinery, implements, appliances and tools, and perform the work and required labor to construct and complete State Highway Contract No. **DE00335** in **Warren County**, for the unit or lump sum prices, as the case may be, bid by the Bidder in his bid and according to the proposal, plans, and specifications prepared by said Department, which proposal, plans, and specifications show the details covering this project, and hereby become a part of this contract.

The published volume entitled *North Carolina Department of Transportation, Raleigh, Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, January 2018* with all amendments and supplements thereto, is by reference incorporated into and made a part of this contract; that, except as herein modified, all the construction and work included in this contract is to be done in accordance with the specifications contained in said volume, and amendments and supplements thereto, under the direction of the Engineer.

If the proposal is accepted and the award is made, the contract is valid only when signed either by the Contract Officer or such other person as may be designated by the Secretary to sign for the Department of Transportation. The conditions and provisions herein cannot be changed except over the signature of the said Contract Officer or Division Engineer.

The quantities shown in the itemized proposal for the project are considered to be approximate only and are given as the basis for comparison of bids. The Department of Transportation may increase or decrease the quantity of any item or portion of the work as may be deemed necessary or expedient.

An increase or decrease in the quantity of an item will not be regarded as sufficient ground for an increase or decrease in the unit prices, nor in the time allowed for the completion of the work, except as provided for the contract.

Accompanying this bid is a bid bond secured by a corporate surety, or certified check payable to the order of the Department of Transportation, for five percent of the total bid price, which deposit is to be forfeited as liquidated damages in case this bid is accepted and the Bidder shall fail to provide the required payment and performance bonds with the Department of Transportation, under the condition of this proposal, within 14 calendar days after the written notice of award is received by him, as provided in the Standard Specifications; otherwise said deposit will be returned to the Bidder.

TABLE OF CONTENTS**COVER SHEET
PROPOSAL SHEET**

THIS CONTRACT IS FOR CONTRACT ID DE00335 FOR STRUCTURE TYPE OF WORK
IN WARREN COUNTY.

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS5**PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS - GENERAL**

<u>BOND REQUIREMENTS</u>	6
<u>SPECIAL BID OPENING PROCEDURE</u>	6
<u>CONTRACT TIME & LIQUIDATED DAMAGES</u>	6
<u>INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME 1 & LIQUIDATED DAMAGES</u>	7
<u>NO MAJOR CONTRACT ITEMS</u>	7
<u>SPECIALITY ITEMS</u>	7
<u>FUEL PRICE ADJUSTMENT</u>	7
<u>SCHEDULE OF ESTIMATED COMPLETION PROGRESS</u>	8
<u>MINORITY BUSINESS ENTERPRISE & WOMEN</u>	
<u>BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DIVISIONS)</u>	9
<u>RESTRICTIONS ON ITS EQUIPMENT & SERVICES</u>	24
<u>USE OF UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (UAS)</u>	25
<u>EQUIPMENT IDLING GUIDELINES</u>	25
<u>ELECTRONIC BIDDING</u>	26
<u>TWELVE MONTH GUARANTEE</u>	26
<u>OUTSOURCING OUTSIDE THE USA</u>	27
<u>EROSION & SEDIMENT CONTROL/STORMWATER</u>	
<u>CERTIFICATION</u>	27
<u>PROCEDURE FOR MONITORING BORROW PIT DISCHARGE</u>	32

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS - ROADWAY

<u>CLEARING & GRUBBING – METHOD III</u>	RW-1
<u>GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE – TL-2</u>	RW-1
<u>IMPERVIOUS DIKE</u>	RW-2
<u>AUTOMATED MACHINE GUIDANCE</u>	RW-2
<u>FINAL SURFACE TESTING NOT REQUIRED</u>	RW-4
<u>PRICE ADJUSTMENT – ASPHALT BINDER FOR PLANT MIX</u>	RW-4
<u>ASPHALT CONCRETE PLANT MIX PAVEMENTS</u>	RW-4
<u>SUPPLEMENT SURVEYING</u>	RW-8
<u>PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PRODUCTION</u>	
<u>& DELIVERY</u>	RW-8
<u>MATERIALS FOR PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE</u>	RW-10
<u>MATERIALS & EQUIPMENT STORAGE & PARKING</u>	
<u>OF PERSONAL VEHICLES</u>	RW-10
<u>PERMANENT SEEDING & MULCHING</u>	RW-11
<u>CONCRETE COMPOSITE GEOTEXTILE MATTING</u>	RW-11
<u>WORK ZONE INSTALLER</u>	RW-13

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISIONS

AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS – TERMINATION OF CONTRACTSSSP-1
NCDOT GENERAL SEED SPECIFICATION FOR SEED QUALITY .SSP-2
ERRATASSP-5
PLANT & PEST QUARANTINES.....SSP-7
TITLE VI & NONDISCRIMINATIONSSP-8
ON-THE-JOB TRAININGSSP-17
MINIMUM WAGESSSP-20

EROSION CONTROL SPECIAL PROVISIONS

STRUCTURES SPECIAL PROVISIONS

PERMITS PACKAGE

MUSSEL RELOCATION PLAN FOR BRIDGE NO. 135 IN WARREN COUNTY

CONTRACT PAYMENT & PERFORMANCE BONDS

BID BOND

EXECUTION OF BID

BID FORM

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

**PLEASE READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY
BEFORE PREPARING AND SUBMITTING YOUR BID.**

All bids shall be prepared and submitted in accordance with the following requirements. Failure to comply with any requirement may cause the bid to be considered irregular and may be grounds for rejection of the bid.

For preparing and submitting the bid electronically, refer to Article 102-8(B) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Bidders that bid electronically on Raleigh Central-Let projects will need a separate Digital Signature from the approved electronic bidding provider for Division Contracts.

ELECTRONIC ON-LINE BID:

1. Download entire proposal from Connect NCDOT website. Download the electronic submittal file from the approved electronic bidding provider website.
2. Prepare and submit the electronic submittal file using the approved electronic bidding provider software.
3. Electronic bidding software necessary for electronic bid preparation may be downloaded from the Connect NCDOT website at: <https://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/Pages/Electronic-Bidding.aspx> or from the approved electronic bidding provider website.

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**GENERAL****BOND REQUIREMENTS:**

(06-01-16)

102-8, 102-10

SPD 01-420A

A Bid Bond is required in accordance with Article 102-10 of the *2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures*.

Contract Payment and Performance Bonds are required in accordance with Article 103-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures*.

SPECIAL BID OPENING PROCEDURE:

Due to current policies in place related to Covid 19, Contractors are not allowed to attend the Bid Opening in person and will not be admitted entry into Department buildings. A Conference Call number has been set up for Contractors who wish to listen to the Bid results as they are read:

Phone Number: (919) 662-4554

CONTRACT TIME AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(8-15-00) (Rev. 12-18-07)

108

SP1 G07 A

The date of availability for this contract is **August 1, 2022**, except that work in jurisdictional waters and wetlands shall not begin until a meeting between the DOT, Regulatory Agencies, and the Contractor is held as stipulated in the permits contained elsewhere in this proposal. This delay in availability has been considered in determining the contract time for this project.

The completion date for this contract is **January 28, 2023**.

Except where otherwise provided by the contract, observation periods required by the contract will not be a part of the work to be completed by the completion date and/or intermediate contract times stated in the contract. The acceptable completion of the observation periods that extend beyond the final completion date shall be a part of the work covered by the performance and payment bonds.

The liquidated damages for this contract are **Eight Hundred Fifty Dollars (\$850.00)** per calendar day. These liquidated damages will not be cumulative with any liquidated damages which may become chargeable under Intermediate Contract Time Number 1.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 1 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(7-1-95) (Rev. 2-21-12)

108

SP1 G13 A

Except for that work required under the Project Special Provisions entitled *Planting, Reforestation* and/or *Permanent Vegetation Establishment*, included elsewhere in this proposal, the Contractor will be required to complete all work included in this contract and shall place and maintain traffic on same.

The date of availability for this intermediate contract time is **August 1, 2022**.

The completion date for this intermediate contract time is **October 16, 2022**.

The liquidated damages for this intermediate contract time are **Eight Hundred Fifty Dollars (\$850.00)** per calendar day.

Upon apparent completion of all the work required to be completed by this intermediate date, a final inspection will be held in accordance with Article 105-17 and upon acceptance, the Department will assume responsibility for the maintenance of all work except *Planting, Reforestation* and/or *Permanent Vegetation Establishment*. The Contractor will be responsible for and shall make corrections of all damages to the completed roadway caused by his planting operations, whether occurring prior to or after placing traffic through the project.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 2 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(11-22-21)

STEWART

The Contractor shall only begin in-stream work **September 13, 2022**.

In-stream activity must start on **September 13, 2022** and continue to completion. The in-stream activity is considered to be complete installation of the impervious dikes surrounding the brick masonry abutments at Fishing Creek. If the Contractor does not begin in-water work by **September 13, 2022**, the liquidated damages are **TWENTY-SEVEN THOUSAND, FIVE HUNDRED DOLLARS (\$27,500.00)** one-time payment.

If the Contractor does not begin in-water by **September 19, 2022**, the liquidated damages are an additional **TWO THOUSAND, FIVE HUNDRED DOLLARS (\$2,500.00)** per week until in-water work begins.

NO MAJOR CONTRACT ITEMS:

(2-19-02) (Rev. 8-21-07)

104

SP1 G31

None of the items included in this contract will be major items.

SPECIALTY ITEMS:

(7-1-95)(Rev. 7-20-21)

108-6

SP1 G37

Items listed below will be the specialty items for this contract (see Article 108-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*).

Line #	Description
21-24	Guardrail
34	Long-Life Pavement Markings
37 - 62	Erosion Control
61	Reforestation

FUEL PRICE ADJUSTMENT:

(11-15-05) (Rev. 7-20-21)

109-8

SP1 G43

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-87, Article 109-8, Fuel Price Adjustments, add the following:

The base index price for DIESEL #2 FUEL is \$ **3.0794** per gallon. Where any of the following are included as pay items in the contract, they will be eligible for fuel price adjustment.

The pay items and the fuel factor used in calculating adjustments to be made will be as follows:

Description	Units	Fuel Usage Factor Diesel
Unclassified Excavation	Gal/CY	0.29

Borrow Excavation	Gal/CY	0.29
Class IV Subgrade Stabilization	Gal/Ton	0.55
Aggregate Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
Sub-Ballast	Gal/Ton	0.55
Asphalt Concrete Base Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	0.90 or 2.90
Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	0.90 or 2.90
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	0.90 or 2.90
Open-Graded Asphalt Friction Course	Gal/Ton	0.90 or 2.90
Permeable Asphalt Drainage Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	0.90 or 2.90
Sand Asphalt Surface Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	0.90 or 2.90
Aggregate for Cement Treated Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
Portland Cement for Cement Treated Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
____ " Portland Cement Concrete Pavement	Gal/SY	0.245
Concrete Shoulders Adjacent to ____ " Pavement	Gal/SY	0.245

For the asphalt items noted in the chart as eligible for fuel adjustments, the bidder may include the *Fuel Usage Factor Adjustment Form* with their bid submission if they elect to use the fuel usage factor. The *Fuel Usage Factor Adjustment Form* is found at the following link:

<https://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/LetCentral/Fuel%20Usage%20Factor%20Adjustment%20Form.pdf>

Select either 2.90 Gal/Ton fuel factor or 0.90 Gal/Ton fuel factor for each asphalt line item on the *Fuel Usage Factor Adjustment Form*. The selected fuel factor for each asphalt item will remain in effect for the duration of the contract.

Failure to complete the *Fuel Usage Factor Adjustment Form* will result in using 2.90 gallons per ton as the Fuel Usage Factor for Diesel for the asphalt items noted above. The contractor will not be permitted to change the Fuel Usage Factor after the bids are submitted.

SCHEDULE OF ESTIMATED COMPLETION PROGRESS:

(7-15-08) (Rev. 5-13-19)

108-2

SP1 G58

The Contractor's attention is directed to the Standard Special Provision entitled *Availability of Funds Termination of Contracts* included elsewhere in this proposal. The Department of Transportation's schedule of estimated completion progress for this project as required by that Standard Special Provision is as follows:

<u>Fiscal Year</u>		<u>Progress (% of Dollar Value)</u>
2023	(7/01/22 - 6/30/23)	100% of Total Amount Bid

The Contractor shall also furnish his own progress schedule in accordance with Article 108-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Any acceleration of the progress as shown by the Contractor's progress schedule over the progress as shown above shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer.

MINORITY BUSINESS ENTERPRISE AND WOMEN BUSINESS ENTERPRISE**(DIVISIONS):**

(10-16-07)(Rev. 8-17-21)

102-15(J)

SP1 G67

Description

The purpose of this Special Provision is to carry out the North Carolina Department of Transportation's policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of contracts financed in whole or in part with State funds.

Definitions

Additional MBE/WBE Subcontractors - Any MBE/WBE submitted at the time of bid that will not be used to meet the Combined MBE/WBE goal. No submittal of a Letter of Intent is required.

Combined MBE/WBE Goal: A portion of the total contract, expressed as a percentage that is to be performed by committed MBE/WBE subcontractors.

Committed MBE/WBE Subcontractor - Any MBE/WBE submitted at the time of bid that is being used to meet the Combined MBE / WBE goal by submission of a Letter of Intent. Or any MBE or WBE used as a replacement for a previously committed MBE or WBE firm.

Contract Goal Requirement - The approved participation at time of award, but not greater than the advertised Combined MBE/WBE contract goal.

Goal Confirmation Letter - Written documentation from the Department to the bidder confirming the Contractor's approved, committed participation along with a listing of the committed MBE and WBE firms.

Manufacturer - A firm that operates or maintains a factory or establishment that produces on the premises, the materials or supplies obtained by the Contractor.

MBE Participation (Anticipated) - A portion of the total contract, expressed as a percentage that is anticipated to be performed by committed MBE subcontractor(s).

Minority Business Enterprise (MBE) - A firm certified as a Disadvantaged Minority-Owned Business Enterprise through the North Carolina Unified Certification Program.

Regular Dealer - A firm that owns, operates, or maintains a store, warehouse, or other establishment in which the materials or supplies required for the performance of the contract are bought, kept in stock, and regularly sold to the public in the usual course of business. A regular dealer engages in, as its principal business and in its own name, the purchase and sale or lease of the products in question. A regular dealer in such bulk items as steel, cement, gravel, stone, and petroleum products need not keep such products in stock, if it owns and operates distribution equipment for the products. Brokers and packagers are not regarded as manufacturers or regular dealers within the meaning of this section.

Replacement / Substitution – A full or partial reduction in the amount of work subcontracted to a committed (or an approved substitute) MBE/WBE firm.

North Carolina Unified Certification Program (NCUCP) - A program that provides comprehensive services and information to applicants for MBE/WBE certification. The MBE/WBE program follows the same regulations as the federal Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) program in accordance with 49 CFR Part 26.

United States Department of Transportation (USDOT) - Federal agency responsible for issuing regulations (49 CFR Part 26) and official guidance for the DBE program.

WBE Participation (Anticipated) - A portion of the total contract, expressed as a percentage that is anticipated to be performed by committed WBE subcontractor(s).

Women Business Enterprise (WBE) - A firm certified as a Disadvantaged Women-Owned Business Enterprise through the North Carolina Unified Certification Program.

Forms and Websites Referenced in this Provision

Payment Tracking System - On-line system in which the Contractor enters the payments made to MBE and WBE subcontractors who have performed work on the project.
<https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/Vendor/PaymentTracking/>

DBE-IS Subcontractor Payment Information - Form for reporting the payments made to all MBE/WBE firms working on the project. This form is for paper bid projects only.
<https://connect.ncdot.gov/business/Turnpike/Documents/Form%20DBE-IS%20Subcontractor%20Payment%20Information.pdf>

RF-1 MBE/WBE Replacement Request Form - Form for replacing a committed MBE or WBE.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/DBE%20MBE%20WBE%20Replacement%20Request%20Form.pdf>

SAF Subcontract Approval Form - Form required for approval to sublet the contract.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Subcontract%20Approval%20Form%20Rev.%202012.zip>

JC-1 Joint Check Notification Form - Form and procedures for joint check notification. The form acts as a written joint check agreement among the parties providing full and prompt disclosure of the expected use of joint checks.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Joint%20Check%20Notification%20Form.pdf>

Letter of Intent - Form signed by the Contractor and the MBE/WBE subcontractor, manufacturer or regular dealer that affirms that a portion of said contract is going to be performed by the signed MBE/WBE for the estimated amount (based on quantities and unit prices) listed at the time of bid.

<http://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/LetCentral/Letter%20of%20Intent%20to%20Perform%20as%20a%20Subcontractor.pdf>

Listing of MBE and WBE Subcontractors Form - Form for entering MBE/WBE subcontractors on a project that will meet the Combined MBE/WBE goal. This form is for paper bids only.

[http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid%20Proposals%20for%20LGA%20Content/09%20MBE-WBE%20Subcontractors%20\(State\).docx](http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid%20Proposals%20for%20LGA%20Content/09%20MBE-WBE%20Subcontractors%20(State).docx)

Subcontractor Quote Comparison Sheet - Spreadsheet for showing all subcontractor quotes in the work areas where MBEs and WBEs quoted on the project. This sheet is submitted with good faith effort packages.

<http://connect.ncdot.gov/business/SmallBusiness/Documents/DBE%20Subcontractor%20Quote%20Comparison%20Example.xls>

Combined MBE/WBE Goal

The Combined MBE/WBE Goal for this project is **6.0 %**

The Combined Goal was established utilizing the following anticipated participation for Minority Business Enterprises and Women Business Enterprises:

(A) Minority Business Enterprises **2.0 %**

- (1) *If the anticipated MBE participation is more than zero*, the Contractor shall exercise all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure that MBEs participate in at least the percent of the contract as set forth above.
- (2) *If the anticipated MBE participation is zero*, the Contractor shall make an effort to recruit and use MBEs during the performance of the contract. Any MBE participation obtained shall be reported to the Department.

(B) Women Business Enterprises **4.0 %**

- (1) *If the anticipated WBE participation is more than zero*, the Contractor shall exercise all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure that WBEs participate in at least the percent of the contract as set forth above.
- (2) *If the anticipated WBE participation is zero*, the Contractor shall make an effort to recruit and use WBEs during the performance of the contract. Any WBE participation obtained shall be reported to the Department.

The Bidder is required to submit only participation to meet the Combined MBE/WBE Goal. The Combined Goal may be met by submitting all MBE participation, all WBE participation, or a combination of MBE and WBE participation.

Directory of Transportation Firms (Directory)

Real-time information is available about firms doing business with the Department and firms that are certified through NCUCP in the Directory of Transportation Firms. Only firms identified in the Directory as MBE and WBE certified shall be used to meet the Combined MBE / WBE goal. The Directory can be found at the following link.

<https://www.ebs.nc.gov/VendorDirectory/default.html>

The listing of an individual firm in the directory shall not be construed as an endorsement of the firm's capability to perform certain work.

Listing of MBE/WBE Subcontractors

At the time of bid, bidders shall submit all MBE and WBE participation that they anticipate to use during the life of the contract. Only those identified to meet the Combined MBE/WBE goal will be considered committed, even though the listing shall include both committed MBE/WBE subcontractors and additional MBE/WBE subcontractors. Any additional MBE/WBE subcontractor participation above the goal will follow the banking guidelines found elsewhere in this provision. All other additional MBE/WBE subcontractor participation submitted at the time of bid will be used toward the Department's overall race-neutral goals. Only those firms with current MBE and WBE certification at the time of bid opening will be acceptable for listing in the bidder's submittal of MBE and WBE participation. The Contractor shall indicate the following required information:

(A) Electronic Bids

Bidders shall submit a listing of MBE and WBE participation in the appropriate section of the electronic submittal file.

- (1) Submit the names and addresses of MBE and WBE firms identified to participate in the contract. If the bidder uses the updated listing of MBE and WBE firms shown in the electronic submittal file, the bidder may use the dropdown menu to access the name and address of the firms.
- (2) Submit the contract line numbers of work to be performed by each MBE and WBE firm. When no figures or firms are entered, the bidder will be considered to have no MBE or WBE participation.
- (3) The bidder shall be responsible for ensuring that the MBE and WBE are certified at the time of bid by checking the Directory of Transportation Firms. If the firm is not certified at the time of the bid-letting, that MBE's or WBE's participation will not count towards achieving the Combined MBE/WBE goal.

(B) Paper Bids

- (1) *If the Combined MBE/ WBE goal is more than zero,*
 - (a) Bidders, at the time the bid proposal is submitted, shall submit a listing of MBE/WBE participation, including the names and addresses on *Listing of MBE and WBE Subcontractors* contained elsewhere in the contract documents in order for the bid to be considered responsive. Bidders shall indicate the total dollar value of the MBE and WBE participation for the contract.
 - (b) If bidders have no MBE or WBE participation, they shall indicate this on the *Listing of MBE and WBE Subcontractors* by entering the word “None” or the number “0.” This form shall be completed in its entirety. **Blank forms will not be deemed to represent zero participation.** Bids submitted that do not have MBE and WBE participation indicated on the appropriate form will not be read publicly during the opening of bids. The Department will not consider these bids for award and the proposal will be rejected.
 - (c) The bidder shall be responsible for ensuring that the MBE/WBE is certified at the time of bid by checking the Directory of Transportation Firms. If the firm is not certified at the time of the bid-letting, that MBE’s or WBE’s participation will not count towards achieving the Combined MBE/WBE goal.
- (2) *If the Combined MBE/WBE Goal is zero,* entries on the *Listing of MBE and WBE Subcontractors* are not required for the zero goal, however any MBE or WBE participation that is achieved during the project shall be reported in accordance with requirements contained elsewhere in the special provision.

MBE or WBE Prime Contractor

When a certified MBE or WBE firm bids on a contract that contains a Combined MBE/WBE Goal, the firm is responsible for meeting the goal or making good faith efforts to meet the goal, just like any other bidder. In most cases, a MBE or WBE bidder on a contract will meet the Combined MBE/WBE goal by virtue of the work it performs on the contract with its own forces. However, all the work that is performed by the MBE or WBE bidder and any other similarly certified subcontractors will count toward the goal. The MBE or WBE bidder shall list itself along with any MBE or WBE subcontractors, if any, in order to receive credit toward the goals.

MBE/WBE prime contractors shall also follow Sections A or B listed under *Listing of MBE/WBE Subcontractors* just as a non-MBE/WBE bidder would.

Written Documentation – Letter of Intent

The bidder shall submit written documentation for each MBE/WBE that will be used to meet the Combined MBE/WBE goal of the contract, indicating the bidder's commitment to use the MBE/WBE in the contract. This documentation shall be submitted on the Department's form titled *Letter of Intent*.

The documentation shall be received in the office of the Engineer no later than 2:00 p.m. of the fifth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the fifth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

If the bidder fails to submit the Letter of Intent from each committed MBE and WBE to be used toward the Combined MBE/WBE goal, or if the form is incomplete (i.e. both signatures are not present), the MBE/WBE participation will not count toward meeting the Combined MBE/WBE goal. If the lack of this participation drops the commitment below the Combined MBE/WBE goal, the Contractor shall submit evidence of good faith efforts for the goal not met, completed in its entirety, to the Engineer no later than 2:00 p.m. of the eighth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the eighth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

Banking MBE/WBE Credit

If the committed MBE/WBE participation submitted exceeds the algebraic sum of the Combined MBE/WBE goal by \$1,000 or more, the excess will be placed on deposit by the Department for future use by the bidder. Separate accounts will be maintained for MBE and WBE participation and these may accumulate for a period not to exceed 24 months.

When the apparent lowest responsive bidder fails to submit sufficient participation by MBE and WBE firms to meet the advertised goal, as part of the good faith effort, the Department will consider allowing the bidder to withdraw funds to meet the Combined MBE/WBE goal as long as there are adequate funds available from the bidder's MBE and WBE bank accounts.

Submission of Good Faith Effort

If the bidder fails to meet or exceed the Combined MBE/WBE goal, the apparent lowest responsive bidder shall submit to the Department documentation of adequate good faith efforts made to reach that specific goal.

One complete set and **FIVE** copies of this information shall be received in the office of the Engineer no later than 2:00 p.m. of the fifth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the fifth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

Note: Where the information submitted includes repetitious solicitation letters, it will be acceptable to submit a representative letter along with a distribution list of the firms that were solicited. Documentation of MBE/WBE quotations shall be a part of the good faith effort submittal. This documentation may include written subcontractor quotations, telephone log notations of verbal quotations, or other types of quotation documentation.

Consideration of Good Faith Effort for Projects with a Combined MBE/WBE Goal More Than Zero

Adequate good faith efforts mean that the bidder took all necessary and reasonable steps to achieve the goal which, by their scope, intensity, and appropriateness, could reasonably be expected to obtain sufficient MBE/WBE participation. Adequate good faith efforts also mean that the bidder actively and aggressively sought MBE/WBE participation. Mere *pro forma* efforts are not considered good faith efforts.

The Department will consider the quality, quantity, and intensity of the different kinds of efforts a bidder has made. Listed below are examples of the types of actions a bidder will take in making a good faith effort to meet the goals and are not intended to be exclusive or exhaustive, nor is it intended to be a mandatory checklist.

- (A) Soliciting through all reasonable and available means (e.g. attendance at pre-bid meetings, advertising, written notices, use of verifiable electronic means through the use of the NCDOT Directory of Transportation Firms) the interest of all certified MBEs/WBEs that are also prequalified subcontractors. The bidder must solicit this interest within at least 10 days prior to bid opening to allow the MBEs/WBEs to respond to the solicitation. Solicitation shall provide the opportunity to MBEs/WBEs within the Division and surrounding Divisions where the project is located. The bidder must determine with certainty if the MBEs/WBEs are interested by taking appropriate steps to follow up initial solicitations.
- (B) Selecting portions of the work to be performed by MBEs/WBEs in order to increase the likelihood that the Combined MBE/WBE goal will be achieved.
 - (1) Where appropriate, break out contract work items into economically feasible units to facilitate MBE/WBE participation, even when the prime contractor might otherwise prefer to perform these work items with its own forces.
 - (2) Negotiate with subcontractors to assume part of the responsibility to meet the advertised goal when the work to be sublet includes potential for MBE/WBE participation (2nd and 3rd tier subcontractors).
- (C) Providing interested certified MBEs/WBEs that are also prequalified subcontractors with adequate information about the plans, specifications, and requirements of the contract in a timely manner to assist them in responding to a solicitation.
- (D) (1) Negotiating in good faith with interested MBEs/WBEs. It is the bidder's

responsibility to make a portion of the work available to MBE/WBE subcontractors and suppliers and to select those portions of the work or material needs consistent with the available MBE/WBE subcontractors and suppliers, so as to facilitate MBE/WBE participation. Evidence of such negotiation includes the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of MBEs/WBEs that were considered; a description of the information provided regarding the plans and specifications for the work selected for subcontracting; and evidence as to why additional agreements could not be reached for MBEs/WBEs to perform the work.

- (2) A bidder using good business judgment would consider a number of factors in negotiating with subcontractors, including MBE/WBE subcontractors, and would take a firm's price and capabilities as well as the advertised goal into consideration. However, the fact that there may be some additional costs involved in finding and using MBEs/WBEs is not in itself sufficient reason for a bidder's failure to meet the advertised goal, as long as such costs are reasonable. Also, the ability or desire of a prime contractor to perform the work of a contract with its own organization does not relieve the bidder of the responsibility to make good faith efforts. Bidding contractors are not, however, required to accept higher quotes from MBEs/WBEs if the price difference is excessive or unreasonable.
- (E) Not rejecting MBEs/WBEs as being unqualified without sound reasons based on a thorough investigation of their capabilities. The bidder's standing within its industry, membership in specific groups, organizations, or associates and political or social affiliations (for example, union vs. non-union employee status) are not legitimate causes for the rejection or non-solicitation of bids in the bidder's efforts to meet the project goal.
- (F) Making efforts to assist interested MBEs/WBEs in obtaining bonding, lines of credit, or insurance as required by the recipient or bidder.
- (G) Making efforts to assist interested MBEs/WBEs in obtaining necessary equipment, supplies, materials, or related assistance or services.
- (H) Effectively using the services of available minority/women community organizations; minority/women contractors' groups; Federal, State, and local minority/women business assistance offices; and other organizations as allowed on a case-by-case basis to provide assistance in the recruitment and placement of MBEs/WBEs. Contact within 7 days from the bid opening the Business Opportunity and Work Force Development Unit at BOWD@ncdot.gov to give notification of the bidder's inability to get MBE or WBE quotes.
- (I) Any other evidence that the bidder submits which shows that the bidder has made reasonable good faith efforts to meet the advertised goal.

In addition, the Department may take into account the following:

- (1) Whether the bidder's documentation reflects a clear and realistic plan for achieving the Combined MBE/WBE goal.
- (2) The bidders' past performance in meeting the contract goal.
- (3) The performance of other bidders in meeting the advertised goal. For example, when the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the goal, but others meet it, you may reasonably raise the question of whether, with additional reasonable efforts the apparent successful bidder could have met the goal. If the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the advertised goal, but meets or exceeds the average MBE and WBE participation obtained by other bidders, the Department may view this, in conjunction with other factors, as evidence of the apparent successful bidder having made a good faith effort.

If the Department does not award the contract to the apparent lowest responsive bidder, the Department reserves the right to award the contract to the next lowest responsive bidder that can satisfy to the Department that the Combined MBE/WBE goal can be met or that an adequate good faith effort has been made to meet the advertised goal.

Non-Good Faith Appeal

The Engineer will notify the contractor verbally and in writing of non-good faith. A contractor may appeal a determination of non-good faith made by the Goal Compliance Committee. If a contractor wishes to appeal the determination made by the Committee, they shall provide written notification to the Engineer. The appeal shall be made within 2 business days of notification of the determination of non-good faith.

Counting MBE/WBE Participation Toward Meeting the Combined MBE/WBE Goal

(A) Participation

The total dollar value of the participation by a committed MBE/WBE will be counted toward the contract goal requirements. The total dollar value of participation by a committed MBE/WBE will be based upon the value of work actually performed by the MBE/WBE and the actual payments to MBE/WBE firms by the Contractor.

(B) Joint Checks

Prior notification of joint check use shall be required when counting MBE/WBE participation for services or purchases that involves the use of a joint check. Notification shall be through submission of Form JC-1 (*Joint Check Notification Form*) and the use of joint checks shall be in accordance with the Department's Joint Check Procedures.

(C) Subcontracts (Non-Trucking)

A MBE/WBE may enter into subcontracts. Work that a MBE subcontracts to another MBE firm may be counted toward the anticipated MBE participation. The same holds for work that a WBE subcontracts to another WBE firm. Work that a MBE/WBE subcontracts to a non-MBE/WBE firm does not count toward the contract goal requirement. It should be noted that every effort shall be made by MBE and WBE contractors to subcontract to the same certification (i.e., MBEs to MBEs and WBEs to WBEs), in order to fulfill the MBE or WBE participation breakdown. This, however, may not always be possible due to the limitation of firms in the area. If the MBE or WBE firm shows a good faith effort has been made to reach out to similarly certified firms and there is no interest or availability, and they can get assistance from other certified firms, the Engineer will not hold the prime responsible for meeting the individual MBE or WBE breakdown. If a MBE or WBE contractor or subcontractor subcontracts a significantly greater portion of the work of the contract than would be expected on the basis of standard industry practices, it shall be presumed that the MBE or WBE is not performing a commercially useful function.

(D) Joint Venture

When a MBE or WBE performs as a participant in a joint venture, the Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement a portion of the total value of participation with the MBE or WBE in the joint venture, that portion of the total dollar value being a distinct clearly defined portion of work that the MBE or WBE performs with its forces.

(E) Suppliers

A contractor may count toward its MBE /WBE requirement 60 percent of its expenditures for materials and supplies required to complete the contract and obtained from a MBE or WBE regular dealer and 100 percent of such expenditures from a MBE or WBE manufacturer.

(F) Manufacturers and Regular Dealers

A contractor may count toward its MBE /WBE requirement the following expenditures to MBE/WBE firms that are not manufacturers or regular dealers:

- (1) The fees or commissions charged by a MBE/WBE firm for providing a *bona fide* service, such as professional, technical, consultant, or managerial services, or for providing bonds or insurance specifically required for the performance of a DOT-assisted contract, provided the fees or commissions are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees and commissions customarily allowed for similar services.
- (2) With respect to materials or supplies purchased from a MBE/WBE, which is neither a manufacturer nor a regular dealer, count the entire amount of fees or commissions charged for assistance in the procurement of the materials and supplies, or fees or

transportation charges for the delivery of materials or supplies required on a job site (but not the cost of the materials and supplies themselves), provided the fees are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees customarily allowed for similar services.

Commercially Useful Function

(A) MBE/WBE Utilization

The Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement only expenditures to MBEs and WBEs that perform a commercially useful function in the work of a contract. A MBE/WBE performs a commercially useful function when it is responsible for execution of the work of the contract and is carrying out its responsibilities by actually performing, managing, and supervising the work involved. To perform a commercially useful function, the MBE/WBE shall also be responsible with respect to materials and supplies used on the contract, for negotiating price, determining quality and quantity, ordering the material and installing (where applicable) and paying for the material itself. To determine whether a MBE/WBE is performing a commercially useful function, the Department will evaluate the amount of work subcontracted, industry practices, whether the amount the firm is to be paid under the contract is commensurate with the work it is actually performing and the MBE/WBE credit claimed for its performance of the work, and any other relevant factors. If it is determined that a MBE or WBE is not performing a Commercially Useful Function, the contractor may present evidence to rebut this presumption to the Department.

(B) MBE/WBE Utilization in Trucking

The following factors will be used to determine if a MBE or WBE trucking firm is performing a commercially useful function:

- (1) The MBE/WBE shall be responsible for the management and supervision of the entire trucking operation for which it is responsible on a particular contract, and there shall not be a contrived arrangement for the purpose of meeting the Combined MBE/WBE goal.
- (2) The MBE/WBE shall itself own and operate at least one fully licensed, insured, and operational truck used on the contract.
- (3) The MBE/WBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services it provides on the contract using trucks it owns, insures, and operates using drivers it employs.
- (4) The MBE may subcontract the work to another MBE firm, including an owner-operator who is certified as a MBE. The same holds true that a WBE may subcontract the work to another WBE firm, including an owner-operator who is certified as a WBE. When this occurs, the MBE or WBE who subcontracts work

receives credit for the total value of the transportation services the subcontracted MBE or WBE provides on the contract. It should be noted that every effort shall be made by MBE and WBE contractors to subcontract to the same certification (i.e., MBEs to MBEs and WBEs to WBEs), in order to fulfill the participation breakdown. This, however, may not always be possible due to the limitation of firms in the area. If the MBE or WBE firm shows a good faith effort has been made to reach out to similarly certified transportation service providers and there is no interest or availability, and they can get assistance from other certified providers, the Engineer will not hold the prime responsible for meeting the individual MBE or WBE participation breakdown.

- (5) The MBE/WBE may also subcontract the work to a non-MBE/WBE firm, including from an owner-operator. The MBE/WBE who subcontracts the work to a non-MBE/WBE is entitled to credit for the total value of transportation services provided by the non-MBE/WBE subcontractor not to exceed the value of transportation services provided by MBE/WBE-owned trucks on the contract. Additional participation by non-MBE/WBE subcontractors receives credit only for the fee or commission it receives as a result of the subcontract arrangement. The value of services performed under subcontract agreements between the MBE/WBE and the Contractor will not count towards the MBE/WBE contract requirement.
- (6) A MBE/WBE may lease truck(s) from an established equipment leasing business open to the general public. The lease must indicate that the MBE/WBE has exclusive use of and control over the truck. This requirement does not preclude the leased truck from working for others during the term of the lease with the consent of the MBE/WBE, so long as the lease gives the MBE/WBE absolute priority for use of the leased truck. This type of lease may count toward the MBE/WBE's credit as long as the driver is under the MBE/WBE's payroll.
- (7) Subcontracted/leased trucks shall display clearly on the dashboard the name of the MBE/WBE that they are subcontracted/leased to and their own company name if it is not identified on the truck itself. Magnetic door signs are not permitted.

MBE/WBE Replacement

When a Contractor has relied on a commitment to a MBE or WBE subcontractor (or an approved substitute MBE or WBE subcontractor) to meet all or part of a contract goal requirement, the contractor shall not terminate the MBE/WBE subcontractor for convenience. This includes, but is not limited to, instances in which the Contractor seeks to perform the work of the terminated subcontractor with another MBE/WBE subcontractor, a non-MBE/WBE subcontractor, or with the Contractor's own forces or those of an affiliate.

The Contractor must give notice in writing both by certified mail and email to the MBE/WBE subcontractor, with a copy to the Engineer of its intent to request to terminate and/or substitute, and the reason for the request. The Contractor must give the MBE/WBE subcontractor five (5) business days to respond to the Contractor's Notice of Intent to Request Termination and/or

Substitution. If the MBE/WBE subcontractor objects to the intended termination/substitution, the MBE/WBE, within five (5) business days must advise the Contractor and the Department of the reasons why the action should not be approved. The five-day notice period shall begin on the next business day after written notice is provided to the MBE/WBE subcontractor.

A committed MBE/WBE subcontractor may only be terminated after receiving the Department's written approval based upon a finding of good cause for the proposed termination and/or substitution. For purposes of this section, good cause shall include the following circumstances:

- (a) The listed MBE/WBE subcontractor fails or refuses to execute a written contract;
- (b) The listed MBE/WBE subcontractor fails or refuses to perform the work of its subcontract in a way consistent with normal industry standards. Provided, however, that good cause does not exist if the failure or refusal of the MBE/WBE subcontractor to perform its work on the subcontract results from the bad faith or discriminatory action of the prime contractor;
- (c) The listed MBE/WBE subcontractor fails or refuses to meet the prime contractor's reasonable, nondiscriminatory bond requirements;
- (d) The listed MBE/WBE subcontractor becomes bankrupt, insolvent, or exhibits credit unworthiness;
- (e) The listed MBE/WBE subcontractor is ineligible to work on public works projects because of suspension and debarment proceedings pursuant to 2 CFR Parts 180, 215 and 1,200 or applicable state law;
- (f) The listed MBE/WBE subcontractor is not a responsible contractor;
- (g) The listed MBE/WBE voluntarily withdraws from the project and provides written notice of withdrawal;
- (h) The listed MBE/WBE is ineligible to receive MBE/WBE credit for the type of work required;
- (i) A MBE/WBE owner dies or becomes disabled with the result that the listed MBE/WBE contractor is unable to complete its work on the contract;
- (j) Other documented good cause that compels the termination of the MBE/WBE subcontractor. Provided, that good cause does not exist if the prime contractor seeks to terminate a MBE/WBE it relied upon to obtain the contract so that the prime contractor can self-perform the work for which the MBE/WBE contractor was engaged or so that the prime contractor can substitute another MBE/WBE or non-MBE/WBE contractor after contract award.

The Contractor shall comply with the following for replacement of a committed MBE/WBE:

(A) Performance Related Replacement

When a committed MBE/WBE is terminated for good cause as stated above, an additional MBE/WBE that was submitted at the time of bid may be used to fulfill the MBE/WBE commitment to meet the Combined MBE/WBE Goal. A good faith effort will only be required for removing a committed MBE/WBE if there were no additional MBE/WBEs submitted at the time of bid to cover the same amount of work as the MBE/WBE that was terminated.

If a replacement MBE/WBE is not found that can perform at least the same amount of work as the terminated MBE/WBE, the Contractor shall submit a good faith effort documenting the steps taken. Such documentation shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- (1) Copies of written notification to MBE/WBEs that their interest is solicited in contracting the work defaulted by the previous MBE/WBE or in subcontracting other items of work in the contract.
 - (2) Efforts to negotiate with MBE/WBEs for specific subbids including, at a minimum:
 - (a) The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of MBE/WBEs who were contacted.
 - (b) A description of the information provided to MBE/WBEs regarding the plans and specifications for portions of the work to be performed.
 - (3) A list of reasons why MBE/WBE quotes were not accepted.
 - (4) Efforts made to assist the MBE/WBEs contacted, if needed, in obtaining bonding or insurance required by the Contractor.
- (B) Decertification Replacement
- (1) When a committed MBE/WBE is decertified by the Department after the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) has been received by the Department, the Department will not require the Contractor to solicit replacement MBE/WBE participation equal to the remaining work to be performed by the decertified firm. The participation equal to the remaining work performed by the decertified firm will count toward the contract goal requirement.
 - (2) When a committed MBE/WBE is decertified prior to the Department receiving the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) for the named MBE/WBE firm, the Contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to replace the MBE/WBE subcontractor with another MBE/WBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work to meet the Combined MBE/WBE goal requirement. If a MBE/WBE firm is not found to do the same amount of work, a good faith effort must be submitted to NCDOT (see A herein for required documentation).
 - (3) Exception: If the MBE/WBE's ineligibility is caused solely by its having exceeded the size standard during the performance of the contract, the Department will not require the Contractor to solicit replacement MBE/WBE participation equal to the remaining work to be performed by the decertified firm. The participation equal to the remaining work performed by the decertified firm will count toward the contract goal requirement and overall goal.

All requests for replacement of a committed MBE/WBE firm shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval on Form RF-1 (*DBE Replacement Request*). If the Contractor fails to follow this procedure, the Contractor may be disqualified from further bidding for a period of up to 6 months.

Changes in the Work

When the Engineer makes changes that result in the reduction or elimination of work to be performed by a committed MBE/WBE, the Contractor will not be required to seek additional participation. When the Engineer makes changes that result in additional work to be performed by a MBE/WBE based upon the Contractor's commitment, the MBE/WBE shall participate in additional work to the same extent as the MBE/WBE participated in the original contract work.

When the Engineer makes changes that result in extra work, which has more than a minimal impact on the contract amount, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by MBEs/WBEs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

When the Engineer makes changes that result in an alteration of plans or details of construction, and a portion or all of the work had been expected to be performed by a committed MBE/WBE, the Contractor shall seek participation by MBEs/WBEs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

When the Contractor requests changes in the work that result in the reduction or elimination of work that the Contractor committed to be performed by a MBE/WBE, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by MBEs/WBEs equal to the reduced MBE/WBE participation caused by the changes.

Reports and Documentation

A SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) shall be submitted for all work which is to be performed by a MBE/WBE subcontractor. The Department reserves the right to require copies of actual subcontract agreements involving MBE/WBE subcontractors.

When using transportation services to meet the contract commitment, the Contractor shall submit a proposed trucking plan in addition to the SAF. The plan shall be submitted prior to beginning construction on the project. The plan shall include the names of all trucking firms proposed for use, their certification type(s), the number of trucks owned by the firm, as well as the individual truck identification numbers, and the line item(s) being performed.

Within 30 calendar days of entering into an agreement with a MBE/WBE for materials, supplies or services, not otherwise documented by the SAF as specified above, the Contractor shall furnish the Engineer a copy of the agreement. The documentation shall also indicate the percentage (60% or 100%) of expenditures claimed for MBE/WBE credit.

Reporting Minority and Women Business Enterprise Participation

The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with an accounting of payments made to all MBE and WBE firms, including material suppliers and contractors at all levels (prime, subcontractor, or second tier subcontractor). This accounting shall be furnished to the Engineer for any given month by the end of the following month. Failure to submit this information accordingly may result in the following action:

- (A) Withholding of money due in the next partial pay estimate; or
- (B) Removal of an approved contractor from the prequalified bidders' list or the removal of other entities from the approved subcontractors list.

While each contractor (prime, subcontractor, 2nd tier subcontractor) is responsible for accurate accounting of payments to MBEs/WBEs, it shall be the prime contractor's responsibility to report all monthly and final payment information in the correct reporting manner.

Failure on the part of the Contractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from further bidding until the required information is submitted.

Failure on the part of any subcontractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from being approved for further work on future projects until the required information is submitted.

Contractors reporting transportation services provided by non-MBE/WBE lessees shall evaluate the value of services provided during the month of the reporting period only.

At any time, the Engineer can request written verification of subcontractor payments. The Contractor shall report the accounting of payments through the Department's DBE Payment Tracking System.

Failure to Meet Contract Requirements

Failure to meet contract requirements in accordance with Subarticle 102-15(J) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* may be cause to disqualify the Contractor.

RESTRICTIONS ON ITS EQUIPMENT AND SERVICES:

(11-17-20)

SP01 G090

All telecommunications, video or other ITS equipment or services installed or utilized on this project must be in conformance with UNIFORM ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS, COST PRINCIPLES, AND AUDIT REQUIREMENTS FOR FEDERAL AWARDS 2 CFR, § 200.216 **Prohibition on certain telecommunications and video surveillance services or equipment.**

USE OF UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (UAS):

(8-20-19)

SP1 G092

The Contractor shall adhere to all Federal, State and Local regulations and guidelines for the use of Unmanned Aircraft Systems (UAS). This includes but is not limited to US 14 CFR Part 107 *Small UAS Rule*, NC GS 15A-300.2 *Regulation of launch and recovery sites*, NC GS 63-95 *Training required for the operation of unmanned aircraft systems*, NC GS 63-96 *Permit required for commercial operation of unmanned aircraft system*, and NCDOT UAS Policy. The required operator certifications include possessing a current Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) Remote Pilot Certificate, a NC UAS Operator Permit as well as operating a UAS registered with the FAA.

Prior to beginning operations, the Contractor shall complete the NCDOT UAS – Flight Operation Approval Form and submit it to the Engineer for approval. All UAS operations shall be approved by the Engineer prior to beginning the operations.

All contractors or subcontractors operating UAS shall have UAS specific general liability insurance to cover all operations under this contract.

The use of UAS is at the Contractor's discretion. No measurement or payment will be made for the use of UAS. In the event that the Department directs the Contractor to utilize UAS, payment will be in accordance with Article 104-7 Extra Work.

EQUIPMENT IDLING GUIDELINES:

(1-19-21)

107

SP1 G096

Exercise reduced fuel consumption and reduced equipment emissions during the construction of all work associated with this contract. Employees engaged in the construction of this project should turn off vehicles when stopped for more than thirty (30) minutes and off-highway equipment should idle no longer than fifteen (15) consecutive minutes.

These guidelines for turning off vehicles and equipment when idling do not apply to:

1. Idling when queuing.
2. Idling to verify the vehicle is in safe operating condition.
3. Idling for testing, servicing, repairing or diagnostic purposes.
4. Idling necessary to accomplish work for which the vehicle was designed (such as operating a crane, mixing concrete, etc.).
5. Idling required to bring the machine system to operating temperature.
6. Emergency vehicles, utility company, construction, and maintenance vehicles where the engines must run to perform needed work.
7. Idling to ensure safe operation of the vehicle.
8. Idling when the propulsion engine is providing auxiliary power for other than heating or air conditioning. (such as hydraulic systems for pavers)
9. When specific traffic, safety, or emergency situations arise.
10. If the ambient temperature is less than 32 degrees Fahrenheit. Limited idling to provide for the safety of vehicle occupants (e.g. to run the heater).

11. If the ambient temperature is greater than 90 degrees Fahrenheit. Limited idling to provide for the safety of vehicle occupants of off-highway equipment (e.g. to run the air conditioning) no more than 30 minutes.
12. Diesel powered vehicles may idle for up to 30 minutes to minimize restart problems.

Any vehicle, truck, or equipment in which the primary source of fuel is natural gas or electricity is exempt from the idling limitations set forth in this special provision.

ELECTRONIC BIDDING:

(2-19-19)

101, 102, 103

SP1 G140

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-4, Article 101-3, DEFINITIONS, BID (OR PROPOSAL) *Electronic Bid*, line 1, replace “Bid Express®” with “the approved electronic bidding provider”.

Page 1-15, Subarticle 102-8(B), Electronic Bids, lines 39-40, replace “to Bid Express®” with “via the approved electronic bidding provider”.

Page 1-15, Subarticle 102-8(B)(1), Electronic Bids, line 41, delete “from Bid Express®”

Page 1-17, Subarticle 102-9(C)(2), Electronic Bids, line 21, replace “Bid Express® miscellaneous folder within the .ebs” with “electronic submittal”.

Page 1-29, Subarticle 103-4(C)(2), Electronic Bids, line 32, replace “.ebs miscellaneous data file of Expedite” with “electronic submittal file”

TWELVE MONTH GUARANTEE:

(7-15-03)

108

SP1 G145

- (A) The Contractor shall guarantee materials and workmanship against latent and patent defects arising from faulty materials, faulty workmanship or negligence for a period of twelve months following the date of final acceptance of the work for maintenance and shall replace such defective materials and workmanship without cost to the Department. The Contractor will not be responsible for damage due to faulty design, normal wear and tear, for negligence on the part of the Department, and/or for use in excess of the design.
- (B) Where items of equipment or material carry a manufacturer’s guarantee for any period in excess of twelve months, then the manufacturer’s guarantee shall apply for that particular piece of equipment or material. The Department’s first remedy shall be through the manufacturer although the Contractor is responsible for invoking the warranted repair work with the manufacturer. The Contractor’s responsibility shall be limited to the term of the manufacturer’s guarantee. NCDOT would be afforded the same warranty as provided by the Manufacturer.

This guarantee provision shall be invoked only for major components of work in which the Contractor would be wholly responsible for under the terms of the contract. Examples would

include pavement structures, bridge components, and sign structures. This provision will not be used as a mechanism to force the Contractor to return to the project to make repairs or perform additional work that the Department would normally compensate the Contractor for. In addition, routine maintenance activities (i.e. mowing grass, debris removal, ruts in earth shoulders,) are not parts of this guarantee.

Appropriate provisions of the payment and/or performance bonds shall cover this guarantee for the project.

To ensure uniform application statewide the Division Engineer will forward details regarding the circumstances surrounding any proposed guarantee repairs to the Chief Engineer for review and approval prior to the work being performed.

OUTSOURCING OUTSIDE THE USA:

(9-21-04) (Rev. 5-16-06)

SP1 G150

All work on consultant contracts, services contracts, and construction contracts shall be performed in the United States of America. No work shall be outsourced outside of the United States of America.

Outsourcing for the purpose of this provision is defined as the practice of subcontracting labor, work, services, staffing, or personnel to entities located outside of the United States.

The North Carolina Secretary of Transportation shall approve exceptions to this provision in writing.

EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL/STORMWATER CERTIFICATION:

(1-16-07) (Rev 12-15-20)

105-16, 225-2, 16

SP1 G180

General

Schedule and conduct construction activities in a manner that will minimize soil erosion and the resulting sedimentation and turbidity of surface waters. Comply with the requirements herein regardless of whether or not a National Pollution discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit for the work is required.

Establish a chain of responsibility for operations and subcontractors' operations to ensure that the *Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan* is implemented and maintained over the life of the contract.

- (A) *Certified Supervisor* - Provide a certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor to manage the Contractor and subcontractor operations, insure compliance with Federal, State and Local ordinances and regulations, and manage the Quality Control Program.
- (B) *Certified Foreman* - Provide a certified, trained foreman for each construction operation that increases the potential for soil erosion or the possible sedimentation and turbidity of surface waters.

- (C) *Certified Installer* - Provide a certified installer to install or direct the installation for erosion or sediment/stormwater control practices.
- (D) *Certified Designer* - Provide a certified designer for the design of the erosion and sediment control/stormwater component of reclamation plans and, if applicable, for the design of the project erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan.

Roles and Responsibilities

- (A) *Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor* - The Certified Supervisor shall be Level II and responsible for ensuring the erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan is adequately implemented and maintained on the project and for conducting the quality control program. The Certified Supervisor shall be on the project within 24 hours notice from initial exposure of an erodible surface to the project's final acceptance. Perform the following duties:
 - (1) **Manage Operations** - Coordinate and schedule the work of subcontractors so that erosion and sediment control/stormwater measures are fully executed for each operation and in a timely manner over the duration of the contract.
 - (a) Oversee the work of subcontractors so that appropriate erosion and sediment control/stormwater preventive measures are conformed to at each stage of the work.
 - (b) Prepare the required National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Inspection Record and submit to the Engineer.
 - (c) Attend all weekly or monthly construction meetings to discuss the findings of the NPDES inspection and other related issues.
 - (d) Implement the erosion and sediment control/stormwater site plans requested.
 - (e) Provide any needed erosion and sediment control/stormwater practices for the Contractor's temporary work not shown on the plans, such as, but not limited to work platforms, temporary construction, pumping operations, plant and storage yards, and cofferdams.
 - (f) Acquire applicable permits and comply with requirements for borrow pits, dewatering, and any temporary work conducted by the Contractor in jurisdictional areas.
 - (g) Conduct all erosion and sediment control/stormwater work in a timely and workmanlike manner.
 - (h) Fully perform and install erosion and sediment control/stormwater work prior to any suspension of the work.
 - (i) Coordinate with Department, Federal, State and Local Regulatory agencies on resolution of erosion and sediment control/stormwater issues due to the Contractor's operations.
 - (j) Ensure that proper cleanup occurs from vehicle tracking on paved surfaces or any location where sediment leaves the Right-of-Way.

- (k) Have available a set of erosion and sediment control/stormwater plans that are initialed and include the installation date of Best Management Practices. These practices shall include temporary and permanent groundcover and be properly updated to reflect necessary plan and field changes for use and review by Department personnel as well as regulatory agencies.
- (2) Requirements set forth under the NPDES Permit - The Department's NPDES Stormwater permit (NCS000250) outlines certain objectives and management measures pertaining to construction activities. The permit references *NCG010000, General Permit to Discharge Stormwater* under the NPDES, and states that the Department shall incorporate the applicable requirements into its delegated Erosion and Sediment Control Program for construction activities disturbing one or more acres of land. The Department further incorporates these requirements on all contracted bridge and culvert work at jurisdictional waters, regardless of size. Some of the requirements are, but are not limited to:
- (a) Control project site waste to prevent contamination of surface or ground waters of the state, i.e. from equipment operation/maintenance, construction materials, concrete washout, chemicals, litter, fuels, lubricants, coolants, hydraulic fluids, any other petroleum products, and sanitary waste.
 - (b) Inspect erosion and sediment control/stormwater devices and stormwater discharge outfalls at least once every 7 calendar days and within 24 hours after a rainfall event equal to or greater than 1.0 inch that occurs within a 24 hour period. Additional monitoring may be required at the discretion of Division of Water Resources personnel if the receiving stream is 303(d) listed for turbidity and the project has had documented problems managing turbidity.
 - (c) Maintain an onsite rain gauge or use the Department's Multi-Sensor Precipitation Estimate website to maintain a daily record of rainfall amounts and dates.
 - (d) Maintain erosion and sediment control/stormwater inspection records for review by Department and Regulatory personnel upon request.
 - (e) Implement approved reclamation plans on all borrow pits, waste sites and staging areas.
 - (f) Maintain a log of turbidity test results as outlined in the Department's Procedure for Monitoring Borrow Pit Discharge.
 - (g) Provide secondary containment for bulk storage of liquid materials.
 - (h) Provide training for employees concerning general erosion and sediment control/stormwater awareness, the Department's NPDES Stormwater Permit NCS000250 requirements, and the applicable requirements of the *General Permit, NCG010000*.
 - (i) Report violations of the NPDES permit to the Engineer immediately who will notify the Division of Water Quality Regional Office within 24 hours of becoming aware of the violation.

- (3) Quality Control Program - Maintain a quality control program to control erosion, prevent sedimentation and follow provisions/conditions of permits. The quality control program shall:
- (a) Follow permit requirements related to the Contractor and subcontractors' construction activities.
 - (b) Ensure that all operators and subcontractors on site have the proper erosion and sediment control/stormwater certification.
 - (c) Notify the Engineer when the required certified erosion and sediment control/stormwater personnel are not available on the job site when needed.
 - (d) Conduct the inspections required by the NPDES permit.
 - (e) Take corrective actions in the proper timeframe as required by the NPDES permit for problem areas identified during the NPDES inspections.
 - (f) Incorporate erosion control into the work in a timely manner and stabilize disturbed areas with mulch/seed or vegetative cover on a section-by-section basis.
 - (g) Use flocculants approved by state regulatory authorities where appropriate and where required for turbidity and sedimentation reduction.
 - (h) Ensure proper installation and maintenance of temporary erosion and sediment control devices.
 - (i) Remove temporary erosion or sediment control devices when they are no longer necessary as agreed upon by the Engineer.
 - (j) The Contractor's quality control and inspection procedures shall be subject to review by the Engineer. Maintain NPDES inspection records and make records available at all times for verification by the Engineer.

- (B) *Certified Foreman* - At least one Certified Foreman shall be onsite for each type of work listed herein during the respective construction activities to control erosion, prevent sedimentation and follow permit provisions:

- (1) Foreman in charge of grading activities
- (2) Foreman in charge of bridge or culvert construction over jurisdictional areas
- (3) Foreman in charge of utility activities

The Contractor may request to use the same person as the Level II Supervisor and Level II Foreman. This person shall be onsite whenever construction activities as described above are taking place. This request shall be approved by the Engineer prior to work beginning.

The Contractor may request to name a single Level II Foreman to oversee multiple construction activities on small bridge or culvert replacement projects. This request shall be approved by the Engineer prior to work beginning.

- (C) *Certified Installers* - Provide at least one onsite, Level I Certified Installer for each of the following erosion and sediment control/stormwater crew:

- (1) Seeding and Mulching

- (2) Temporary Seeding
- (3) Temporary Mulching
- (4) Sodding
- (5) Silt fence or other perimeter erosion/sediment control device installations
- (6) Erosion control blanket installation
- (7) Hydraulic tackifier installation
- (8) Turbidity curtain installation
- (9) Rock ditch check/sediment dam installation
- (10) Ditch liner/matting installation
- (11) Inlet protection
- (12) Riprap placement
- (13) Stormwater BMP installations (such as but not limited to level spreaders, retention/detention devices)
- (14) Pipe installations within jurisdictional areas

If a Level I *Certified Installer* is not onsite, the Contractor may substitute a Level II Foreman for a Level I Installer, provided the Level II Foreman is not tasked to another crew requiring Level II Foreman oversight.

- (D) *Certified Designer* - Include the certification number of the Level III Certified Designer on the erosion and sediment control/stormwater component of all reclamation plans and if applicable, the certification number of the Level III Certified Designer on the design of the project erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan.

Preconstruction Meeting

Furnish the names of the *Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor*, *Certified Foremen*, *Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* and notify the Engineer of changes in certified personnel over the life of the contract within 2 days of change.

Ethical Responsibility

Any company performing work for the North Carolina Department of Transportation has the ethical responsibility to fully disclose any reprimand or dismissal of an employee resulting from improper testing or falsification of records.

Revocation or Suspension of Certification

Upon recommendation of the Chief Engineer to the certification entity, certification for *Supervisor*, *Certified Foremen*, *Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* may be revoked or suspended with the issuance of an *Immediate Corrective Action (ICA)*, *Notice of Violation (NOV)*, or *Cease and Desist Order* for erosion and sediment control/stormwater related issues.

The Chief Engineer may recommend suspension or permanent revocation of certification due to the following:

- (A) Failure to adequately perform the duties as defined within this certification provision.
- (B) Issuance of an ICA, NOV, or Cease and Desist Order.
- (C) Failure to fully perform environmental commitments as detailed within the permit conditions and specifications.
- (D) Demonstration of erroneous documentation or reporting techniques.
- (E) Cheating or copying another candidate's work on an examination.
- (F) Intentional falsification of records.
- (G) Directing a subordinate under direct or indirect supervision to perform any of the above actions.
- (H) Dismissal from a company for any of the above reasons.
- (I) Suspension or revocation of one's certification by another entity.

Suspension or revocation of a certification will be sent by certified mail to the certificant and the Corporate Head of the company that employs the certificant.

A certificant has the right to appeal any adverse action which results in suspension or permanent revocation of certification by responding, in writing, to the Chief Engineer within 10 calendar days after receiving notice of the proposed adverse action.

Chief Engineer
1536 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1536

Failure to appeal within 10 calendar days will result in the proposed adverse action becoming effective on the date specified on the certified notice. Failure to appeal within the time specified will result in a waiver of all future appeal rights regarding the adverse action taken. The certificant will not be allowed to perform duties associated with the certification during the appeal process.

The Chief Engineer will hear the appeal and make a decision within 7 days of hearing the appeal. Decision of the Chief Engineer will be final and will be made in writing to the certificant.

If a certification is temporarily suspended, the certificant shall pass any applicable written examination and any proficiency examination, at the conclusion of the specified suspension period, prior to having the certification reinstated.

Measurement and Payment

Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor, Certified Foremen, Certified Installers and Certified Designer will be incidental to the project for which no direct compensation will be made.

PROCEDURE FOR MONITORING BORROW PIT DISCHARGE:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 4-5-19)

105-16, 230, 801

SP1 G181

Water discharge from borrow pit sites shall not cause surface waters to exceed 50 NTUs (nephelometric turbidity unit) in streams not designated as trout waters and 10 NTUs in streams, lakes or reservoirs designated as trout waters. For lakes and reservoirs not designated as trout

waters, the turbidity shall not exceed 25 NTUs. If the turbidity exceeds these levels due to natural background conditions, the existing turbidity level shall not be increased.

If during any operating day, the downstream water quality exceeds the standard, the Contractor shall do all of the following:

- (A) Either cease discharge or modify the discharge volume or turbidity levels to bring the downstream turbidity levels into compliance, or
- (B) Evaluate the upstream conditions to determine if the exceedance of the standard is due to natural background conditions. If the background turbidity measurements exceed the standard, operation of the pit and discharge can continue as long as the stream turbidity levels are not increased due to the discharge.
- (C) Measure and record the turbidity test results (time, date and sampler) at all defined sampling locations 30 minutes after startup and at a minimum, one additional sampling of all sampling locations during that 24-hour period in which the borrow pit is discharging.
- (D) Notify DWQ within 24 hours of any stream turbidity standard exceedances that are not brought into compliance.

During the Environmental Assessment required by Article 230-4 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*, the Contractor shall define the point at which the discharge enters into the State's surface waters and the appropriate sampling locations. Sampling locations shall include points upstream and downstream from the point at which the discharge enters these waters. Upstream sampling location shall be located so that it is not influenced by backwater conditions and represents natural background conditions. Downstream sampling location shall be located at the point where complete mixing of the discharge and receiving water has occurred.

The discharge shall be closely monitored when water from the dewatering activities is introduced into jurisdictional wetlands. Any time visible sedimentation (deposition of sediment) on the wetland surface is observed, the dewatering activity will be suspended until turbidity levels in the stilling basin can be reduced to a level where sediment deposition does not occur. Staining of wetland surfaces from suspended clay particles, occurring after evaporation or infiltration, does not constitute sedimentation. No activities shall occur in wetlands that adversely affect the functioning of a wetland. Visible sedimentation will be considered an indication of possible adverse impacts on wetland use.

The Engineer will perform independent turbidity tests on a random basis. These results will be maintained in a log within the project records. Records will include, at a minimum, turbidity test results, time, date and name of sampler. Should the Department's test results exceed those of the Contractor's test results, an immediate test shall be performed jointly with the results superseding the previous test results of both the Department and the Contractor.

The Contractor shall use the *NCDOT Turbidity Reduction Options for Borrow Pits Matrix*, available at <https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/roadside/FieldOperationsDocuments/>

[TurbidityReductionOptionSheet.pdf](#) to plan, design, construct, and maintain BMPs to address water quality standards. Tier I Methods include stilling basins which are standard compensatory BMPs. Other Tier I methods are noncompensatory and shall be used when needed to meet the stream turbidity standards. Tier II Methods are also noncompensatory and are options that may be needed for protection of rare or unique resources or where special environmental conditions exist at the site which have led to additional requirements being placed in the DWQ's 401 Certifications and approval letters, Isolated Wetland Permits, Riparian Buffer Authorization or a DOT Reclamation Plan's Environmental Assessment for the specific site. Should the Contractor exhaust all Tier I Methods on a site exclusive of rare or unique resources or special environmental conditions, Tier II Methods may be required by regulators on a case by case basis per supplemental agreement.

The Contractor may use cation exchange capacity (CEC) values from proposed site borings to plan and develop the bid for the project. CEC values exceeding 15 milliequivalents per 100 grams of soil may indicate a high potential for turbidity and should be avoided when dewatering into surface water is proposed.

No additional compensation for monitoring borrow pit discharge will be paid.

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**ROADWAY****CLEARING AND GRUBBING - METHOD III:**

(4-6-06) (Rev.8-18-15)

200

SP2 R02B

Perform clearing on this project to the limits established by Method "III" shown on Standard Drawing No. 200.03 of the *2018 Roadway Standard Drawings*. Conventional clearing methods may be used except where permit drawings or conditions have been included in the proposal which require certain areas to be cleared by hand methods.

GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE - TL-2:

(10-21-08) (Rev. 7-1-17)

862

SP8 R64

Description

Furnish and install guardrail end units in accordance with the details in the plans, the applicable requirements of Section 862 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*, and at locations shown in the plans.

Materials

Furnish guardrail end units listed on the NCDOT [Approved Products List](https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/vendor/approvedproducts/) at <https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/vendor/approvedproducts/> or approved equal.

Prior to installation the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer:

- (A) FHWA acceptance letter for each guardrail end unit certifying it meets the requirements of the AASHTO Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware, Test Level 2 in accordance with Article 106-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.
- (B) Certified working drawings and assembling instructions from the manufacturer for each guardrail end unit in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

No modifications shall be made to the guardrail end unit without the express written permission from the manufacturer. Perform installation in accordance with the details in the plans, and details and assembling instructions furnished by the manufacturer.

Construction Methods

Guardrail end delineation is required on all approach and trailing end sections for both temporary and permanent installations. Guardrail end delineation consists of yellow reflective sheeting applied to the entire end section of the guardrail in accordance with Article 1088-3 of the *2018 Standard Specifications* and is incidental to the cost of the guardrail end unit.

Measurement and Payment

Measurement and payment will be made in accordance with Article 862-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Guardrail End Units, Type TL-2

Pay Unit

Each

IMPERVIOUS DIKE:**Description**

This work consists of furnishing, installing, maintaining, and removing an Impervious Dike for the purpose of diverting normal stream flow around the construction site. The Contractor shall construct an impervious dike in such a manner approved by the Engineer. The impervious dike shall not permit seepage of water into the construction site or contribute to siltation of the stream. The impervious dike shall be constructed of an acceptable material in the locations noted on the plans or as directed.

Materials

Acceptable materials shall include but not be limited to sheet piles, sandbags, and/or the placement of an acceptable size stone lined with polypropylene or other impervious geotextile. Earth material shall not be used to construct an impervious dike when it is in direct contact with the stream unless vegetation can be established before contact with the stream takes place.

Measurement and Payment

Impervious Dike will be measured and paid as the actual number of linear feet of impervious dike(s) constructed, measured in place from end to end of each separate installation that has been completed and accepted. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work including but not limited to furnishing materials, construction, maintenance, and removal of the impervious dike.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Impervious Dike

Pay Unit

Linear Foot

AUTOMATED MACHINE GUIDANCE

(1-2-11)

801

SP8 R01

General

This Special Provision contains requirements to be followed if the Contractor elects to use Global Positioning System (GPS) machine control grading and shall be used in conjunction with Section

801 of the *Standard Specifications*. The use of this technology is referenced as Automated Machine Guidance (AMG).

All equipment using AMG shall be able to generate end results that meet the *Standard Specifications*. Perform test sections for each type of work to be completed with AMG to demonstrate that the system has the capability to achieve acceptable results. If acceptable results cannot be achieved, conform to the requirements for conventional stakeout.

The Contractor shall be responsible for all errors resulting from the use of AMG and shall correct deficiencies to the satisfaction of the Engineer at no cost to the Department.

Submittals

If the Contractor elects to use AMG, a Digital Terrain Model (DTM) of the design surface and all intermediate surfaces shall be developed and submitted to the Engineer for review.

At least 90 days prior to beginning grading operations, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer an AMG work plan to include, but not limited to, proposed equipment, control software manufacturer and version, types of work to be completed using AMG, project site calibration report, repetitive calibration methods for construction equipment and rover units to be used for the duration of the project, and local GPS base station to be used for broadcasting differential correction data to rover units (this may include the NC Network RTK). All surveys must be tied to existing project control as established by NCDOT.

Inspection

The Engineer will perform quality assurance checks of all work associated with AMG. If it is determined that work is not being performed in a manner that will assure accurate results, the Engineer may require corrective action at no cost to the Department.

The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with one GPS rover unit for use during the duration of the contract. The rover will be loaded with the same model that is used with the AMG and have the same capability as rover units used by the Contractor. The rover will be kept in the possession of the Engineer and will be returned to the Contractor upon completion of the contract. Any maintenance or repairs required for the rover will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Formal training of at least 8 hours shall be provided to the Engineer by the Contractor on the use of the proposed AMG system.

Subgrade and Base Controls

If the Contractor elects to use AMG for fine grading and placement of base or other roadway materials, the GPS shall be supplemented with a laser or robotic total station. Include details of the proposed system in the AMG work plan. In addition, the following requirements apply for the use of AMG for subgrade and base construction.

Provide control points at intervals along the project not to exceed 1,000 feet. The horizontal position of these points shall be determined by static GPS sessions or by traverse connection from

the original base line control points. The elevation of these control points shall be established using differential leveling from project benchmarks, forming closed loops where practical. A copy of all new control point information shall be provided to the Engineer prior to construction activities.

Provide control points and conventional survey grade stakes at 500 foot intervals and at critical points such as, but not limited to, PCs, PTs, superelevation transition points, and other critical points as requested by the Engineer.

Provide hubs at the top of the finished subgrade at all hinge points on the cross section at 500 foot intervals. These hubs shall be established using conventional survey methods for use by the Engineer to check the accuracy of construction.

Measurement and Payment

No direct payment will be made for work required to utilize this provision. All work will be considered incidental to various grading operations.

FINAL SURFACE TESTING NOT REQUIRED:

(5-18-04) (Rev. 2-16-16)

610

SP6 R45

Final surface testing is not required on this project in accordance with Section 610-13, *Final Surface Testing and Acceptance*.

PRICE ADJUSTMENT - ASPHALT BINDER FOR PLANT MIX:

(11-21-00)

620

SP6 R25

Price adjustments for asphalt binder for plant mix will be made in accordance with Section 620 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

The base price index for asphalt binder for plant mix is **\$ 580.00** per ton.

This base price index represents an average of F.O.B. selling prices of asphalt binder at supplier's terminals on **March 1, 2022**.

ASPHALT CONCRETE PLANT MIX PAVEMENTS:

(2-20-18) (Rev.1-15-19)

610, 1012

SP6 R65

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 6-14, Table 609-3, LIMITS OF PRECISION FOR TEST RESULTS, replace with the following:

TABLE 609-3 LIMITS OF PRECISION FOR TEST RESULTS	
Mix Property	Limits of Precision
25.0 mm sieve (Base Mix)	± 10.0%
19.0 mm sieve (Base Mix)	± 10.0%
12.5 mm sieve (Intermediate & Type P-57)	± 6.0%

9.5 mm sieve (Surface Mix)	± 5.0%
4.75 mm sieve (Surface Mix)	± 5.0%
2.36 mm sieve (All Mixes, except S4.75A)	± 5.0%
1.18 mm sieve (S4.75A)	± 5.0%
0.075 mm sieve (All Mixes)	± 2.0%
Asphalt Binder Content	± 0.5%
Maximum Specific Gravity (G_{mm})	± 0.020
Bulk Specific Gravity (G_{mb})	± 0.030
TSR	± 15.0%
QA retest of prepared QC Gyratory Compacted Volumetric Specimens	± 0.015
Retest of QC Core Sample	± 1.2% (% Compaction)
Comparison QA Core Sample	± 2.0% (% Compaction)
QA Verification Core Sample	± 2.0% (% Compaction)
Density Gauge Comparison of QC Test	± 2.0% (% Compaction)
QA Density Gauge Verification Test	± 2.0% (% Compaction)

Page 6-17, Table 610-1, MIXING TEMPERATURE AT THE ASPHALT PLANT, replace with the following:

TABLE 610-1 MIXING TEMPERATURE AT THE ASPHALT PLANT	
Binder Grade	JMF Temperature
PG 58-28; PG 64-22	250 - 290°F
PG 76-22	300 - 325°F

Page 6-17, Subarticle 610-3(C), Job Mix Formula (JMF), lines 38-39, delete the fourth paragraph.

Page 6-18, Subarticle 610-3(C), Job Mix Formula (JMF), line 12, replace “SF9.5A” with “S9.5B”.

Page 6-18, Table 610-3, MIX DESIGN CRITERIA, replace with the following:

TABLE 610-3 MIX DESIGN CRITERIA									
Mix Type	Design ESALs millions ^A	Binder PG Grade	Compaction Levels		Max. Rut Depth (mm)	Volumetric Properties ^B			
			G_{mm} @			VMA % Min.	VTM %	VFA Min.-Max.	% G_{mm} @ N_{ini}
			N_{ini}	N_{des}					
S4.75A	< 1	64 - 22	6	50	11.5	16.0	4.0 - 6.0	65 - 80	≤ 91.5
S9.5B	0 - 3	64 - 22	6	50	9.5	16.0	3.0 - 5.0	70 - 80	≤ 91.5
S9.5C	3 - 30	64 - 22	7	65	6.5	15.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.5
S9.5D	> 30	76 - 22	8	100	4.5	15.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.0
I19.0C	ALL	64 - 22	7	65	-	13.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.5
B25.0C	ALL	64 - 22	7	65	-	12.5	3.0 - 5.0	65 - 78	≤ 90.5
Design Parameter					Design Criteria				
All Mix	Dust to Binder Ratio ($P_{0.075} / P_{be}$)				0.6 - 1.4 ^C				

Types	Tensile Strength Ratio (TSR) ^D		85% Min. ^E
-------	---	--	-----------------------

A. Based on 20 year design traffic.
 B. Volumetric Properties based on specimens compacted to N_{des} as modified by the Department.
 C. Dust to Binder Ratio (P_{0.075} / P_{be}) for Type S4.75A is 1.0 - 2.0.
 D. NCDOT-T-283 (No Freeze-Thaw cycle required).
 E. TSR for Type S4.75A & B25.0C mixes is 80% minimum.

Page 6-19, Table 610-5, BINDER GRADE REQUIREMENTS (BASED ON RBR%), replace with the following:

**TABLE 610-5
BINDER GRADE REQUIREMENTS (BASED ON RBR%)**

Mix Type	%RBR ≤ 20%	21% ≤ %RBR ≤ 30%	%RBR ≥ 30%
S4.75A, S9.5B, S9.5C, I19.0C, B25.0C	PG 64-22	PG 64-22 ^A	PG-58-28
S9.5D, OGFC	PG 76-22 ^B	n/a	n/a

- A. If the mix contains any amount of RAS, the virgin binder shall be PG 58-28.
 B. Maximum Recycled Binder Replacement (%RBR) is 18% for mixes using PG 76-22 binder.

Page 6-20, Table 610-6, PLACEMENT TEMPERATURES FOR ASPHALT, replace with the following:

**TABLE 610-6
PLACEMENT TEMPERATURES FOR ASPHALT**

Asphalt Concrete Mix Type	Minimum Surface and Air Temperature
B25.0C	35°F
I19.0C	35°F
S4.75A, S9.5B, S9.5C	40°F ^A
S9.5D	50°F

- A. For the final layer of surface mixes containing recycled asphalt shingles (RAS), the minimum surface and air temperature shall be 50°F.

Page 6-21, Article 610-8, SPREADING AND FINISHING, lines 34-35, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Use an MTV for all surface mix regardless of binder grade on Interstate, US Routes, and NC Routes (primary routes) that have 4 or more lanes and median divided.

Page 6-21, Article 610-8, SPREADING AND FINISHING, lines 36-38, delete the fourth sentence and replace with the following:

Use MTV for all ramps, loops, Y-line that have 4 or more lanes and are median divided, full width acceleration lanes, full width deceleration lanes, and full width turn lanes that are greater than 1000 feet in length.

Page 6-23, Table 610-7, DENSITY REQUIREMENTS, replace with the following:

TABLE 610-7

DENSITY REQUIREMENTS	
Mix Type	Minimum % G_{mm} (Maximum Specific Gravity)
S4.75A	85.0 ^A
S9.5B	90.0
S9.5C, S9.5D, I19.0C, B25.0C	92.0

- A. Compaction to the above specified density will be required when the S4.75A mix is applied at a rate of 100 lbs/sy or higher.

Page 6-24, Article 610-13, FINAL SURFACE TESTING, lines 35-36, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Final surface testing is not required on ramps, loops and turn lanes.

Page 6-26, Subarticle 610-13(A)(1), Acceptance for New Construction, lines 29-30, delete the second sentence and replace with the following:

Areas excluded from testing by the profiler may be tested using a 10-foot straightedge in accordance with Article 610-12.

Page 6-27, Subarticle 610-13(B), Option 2- North Carolina Hearne Straightedge, lines 41-46, delete the eighth and ninth sentence of this paragraph and replace with the following:

Take profiles over the entire length of the final surface travel lane pavement exclusive of structures, approach slabs, paved shoulders, tapers, or other irregular shaped areas of pavement, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. Test in accordance with this provision all mainline travel lanes, full width acceleration or deceleration lanes and collector lanes.

Page 6-28, Subarticle 610-13(B), Option 2- North Carolina Hearne Straightedge, lines 1-2, delete these two lines.

Page 6-32, Article 610-16 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, replace with the following:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Asphalt Concrete Base Course, Type B25.0C	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type I19.0C	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S4.75A	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5B	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5C	Ton
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5D	Ton

Page 10-30, Table 1012-1, AGGREGATE CONSENSUS PROPERTIES, replace with the following:

**TABLE 1012-1
AGGREGATE CONSENSUS PROPERTIES^A**

Mix Type	Coarse Aggregate	Fine Aggregate Angularity	Sand Equivalent	Flat and Elongated

	Angularity ^B	% Minimum	% Minimum	5 : 1 Ratio % Maximum
<i>Test Method</i>	<i>ASTM D5821</i>	<i>AASHTO T 304</i>	<i>AASHTO T 176</i>	<i>ASTM D4791</i>
S4.75A; S9.5B	75 / -	40	40	-
S9.5C; I19.0C; B25.0C	95 / 90	45	45	10
S9.5D	100 / 100	45	50	10
OGFC	100 / 100	45	45	10
UBWC	100 / 85	45	45	10

- A. Requirements apply to the design aggregate blend.
- B. 95 / 90 denotes that 95% of the coarse aggregate has one fractured face and 90% has 2 or more fractured faces.

SUPPLEMENTAL SURVEYING:

(4-20-21)

801

SP8 R03

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 8-7, Article 801-3 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, lines 10-11, replace with the following:

Supplemental Surveying Office Calculations will be paid at the stated price of \$85.00 per hour. *Supplemental Field Surveying* will be paid at the stated price of \$145.00 per hour. The

PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PRODUCTION AND DELIVERY:

(9-15-20)

1000, 1014, 1024

SP10 R01

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 10-6, Table 1000-1, REQUIREMENTS FOR CONCRETE, replace with the following:

Class of Concrete	Min. Compressive Strength at 28 days	Maximum Water-Cement Ratio				Consistency Maximum Slump		Cement Content			
		Air-Entrained Concrete		Non-Air- Entrained Concrete		Vibrated	Non- Vibrated	Vibrated		Non-Vibrated	
		Rounded Aggregate	Angular Aggregate	Rounded Aggregate	Angular Aggregate			Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
		Units	psi			inch	inch	lb/cy	lb/cy	lb/cy	lb/cy
AA	4500	0.381	0.426	---	---	3.5 ^A	---	639	715	---	---

AA Slip Form	4500	0.381	0.426	---	---	1.5	---	639	715	---	---
Drilled Pier	4500	---	---	0.450	0.450	---	5 - 7 dry 7 - 9 wet	---	---	640	800
A	3000	0.488	0.532	0.550	0.594	3.5 ^A	4.0	564	---	602	---
B	2500	0.488	0.567	0.559	0.630	1.5 machine placed 2.5 ^A hand placed	4.0	508	---	545	---
Sand Light-weight	4500	---	0.420	---	---	4.0 ^A	---	715	---	---	---
Latex Modified	3000 (at 7 days)	0.400	0.400	---	---	6.0	---	658	---	---	---
Flowable Fill excavatable	150 max. (at 56 days)	as needed	as needed	as needed	as needed	---	Flowable	---	---	40	100
Flowable Fill non-excavatable	125	as needed	as needed	as needed	as needed	---	Flowable	---	---	100	as needed
Pavement	4500 Design, field 650 flexural, design only	0.559	0.559	---	---	1.5 slip form 3.0 hand placed	---	526	---	---	---
Precast	See Table 1077-1	as needed	as needed	---	---	6.0	as needed	as needed	as needed	as needed	as needed
Prestressed	per contract	See Table 1078-1	See Table 1078-1	---	---	8.0	---	564	as needed	---	---

- A. The slump may be increased to 6 inches, provided the increase in slump is achieved by adding a chemical admixture conforming to Section 1024-3. In no case shall the water-cement ratio on the approved design be exceeded. Concrete exhibiting segregation and/or excessive bleeding will be rejected. Utilizing an Admixture to modify slump does not relinquish the contractor's responsibility to ensure the final product quality and overall configuration meets design specifications. Caution should be taken when placing these modified mixes on steep grades to prevent unintended changes to the set slope.

MATERIALS FOR PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE:

(9-15-20)

1000, 1024

SP10 R24

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 10-52, Article 1024-4, WATER, lines 3-6, delete and replace with the following:

Test water from wells at all locations. Test public water supplies from all out of state locations and in the following counties: Beaufort, Bertie, Brunswick, Camden, Carteret, Chowan, Craven, Currituck, Dare, Gates, Hyde, New Hanover, Onslow, Pamlico, Pasquotank, Pender, Perquimans, Tyrell and Washington unless the Engineer waives the testing requirements.

Page 10-52, Table 1024-2, PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF WATER, replace with the following:

Property	Requirement	Test Method
Compression Strength, minimum percent of control at 3 and 7 days	90%	ASTM C1602
Time of set, deviation from control	From 1:00 hr. earlier to 1:30 hr. later	ASTM C1602
pH	4.5 to 8.5	ASTM D1293 *
Chloride Ion Content, Max.	250 ppm	ASTM D512 *
Total Solids Content (Residue), Max.	1,000 ppm	SM 2540B *
Resistivity, Min.	0.500 kohm-cm	ASTM D1125 *

*Denotes an alternate method is acceptable. Test method used shall be referenced in the test report.

MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT STORAGE & PARKING OF PERSONAL VEHICLES:

11-17-21

1101

SP11 R03

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 11-2, Article 1101-8 MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT STORAGE, line 35-38, delete and replace with the following:

When work is not in progress, keep all personnel, equipment, machinery, tools, construction debris, materials and supplies away from active travel lanes that meets Table 1101-1.

TABLE 1101-1	
MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT STORAGE FROM ACTIVE TRAVEL LANES	
Posted Speed Limit (mph)	Distance (ft)
40 or less	≥ 18
45-50	≥ 28

55	≥ 32
60 or higher	≥ 40

When vehicles, equipment and materials are protected by concrete barrier or guardrail, they shall be offset at least 5 feet from the barrier or guardrail.

Page 11-2, Article 1101-9 PARKING OF PERSONAL VEHICLES, line 40-41, delete and replace with the following:

Provide staging areas for personal vehicle parking in accordance with section 1101-8 or as directed by the Engineer before use.

PERMANENT SEEDING AND MULCHING:

(7-1-95)

1660

SP16 R02

The Department desires that permanent seeding and mulching be established on this project as soon as practical after slopes or portions of slopes have been graded. As an incentive to obtain an early stand of vegetation on this project, the Contractor's attention is called to the following:

For all permanent seeding and mulching that is satisfactorily completed in accordance with the requirements of Section 1660 in the *2018 Standard Specifications* and within the following percentages of elapsed contract times, an additional payment will be made to the Contractor as an incentive additive. The incentive additive will be determined by multiplying the number of acres of seeding and mulching satisfactorily completed times the contract unit bid price per acre for Seeding and Mulching times the appropriate percentage additive.

Percentage of Elapsed Contract Time	Percentage Additive
0% - 30%	30%
30.01% - 50%	15%

Percentage of elapsed contract time is defined as the number of calendar days from the date of availability of the contract to the date the permanent seeding and mulching is acceptably completed divided by the total original contract time.

CONCRETE COMPOSITE GEOTEXTILE MATTING:

(02-01-2022)

Description

Furnish, place and maintain concrete composite geotextile matting (CCGM) that consists of a flexible three dimensional concrete impregnated matrix that hardens when hydrated to form a durable concrete surface layer for the protection of slopes, drainage ditches or other areas at locations shown in the plans or as directed. Work includes providing all materials, any excavation and backfilling, placing and securing the concrete composite geotextile matting in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The conditions which occur during the construction of the project will determine the final quantity of the concrete composite geotextile matting placed. The quantity may be increased, decreased or eliminated entirely as directed. Such variations in quantity

will not be considered as alterations in the details of construction or a change in the character of the work.

Materials

(A) Concrete Composite Geotextile Matting

The CCGM shall be a shall be a polyester fiber matrix impregnated with cement and PVC backed, manufactured in rolls that hardens when hydrated and conforms to the shape of the channel or slope offering protection from hydraulic forces and debris. The material shall be of the thickness specified in the plans with the following minimum properties:

TYPE	Thickness (inch) ASTM 5199	Roll Width (ft)	Dry Weight (lb/ft ²) ASTM 5933	Compressive Strength (psi) ASTM C773	Tensile Strength (MD) (lb/in) ASTM D5035
1	0.2	3.25	1.40	5800	40
2	0.3	3.5	2.40	5800	49
3	0.5	3.5	3.80	5800	110

(B) Anchors

The CCGM shall be secured in place using heavy-duty wire staples or metal spikes or as per manufacturer's recommendations.

- (i) Wire Staples shall be machine made of No. 9 gauge new steel wire formed into a U-shape. The size when formed shall be a minimum of 6 inch in length with a throat of not less than 1-1/2 inches in width.
- (ii) Metal Spikes shall be fabricated of No. 9 gauge new steel wire 10 inches in length with a minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter metal washer specifically designed to pin the CCGM to the soil.

Construction Methods

Provide a smooth soil surface free from stones, clods or debris that will prevent the contact of the CCGM with the soil. Preserve the required line, grade and cross section of the area covered. Cut trenches for initial anchoring and termination and longitudinal anchoring and bury edges per manufacturer's requirements. Unroll CCGM in the direction of the flow of water apply without stretching so that it will lie smoothly but loosely on the soil surface. Successive panels should be installed with the upstream panel overlapping the downstream panel. Overlap CCGM panels 4 inches to seal additional panels or per manufacturer's recommendation and screw or seal seams

per manufacturer's recommendation. Install anchors at a minimum 4 feet on center or per manufacturer's recommended spacing to adequately secure the panel to the soil.

Prior to hydration, inspect panels for damage and repair according to manufacturer's requirements. Panels that connect be repaired shall be replaced.

In areas adjacent to streams or wetlands, install silt fence, temporary diversions or earth berms to prevent potential hydration runoff from entering streams or wetlands or drainage conveyances that would carry the runoff to these jurisdictional resources as directed by the Engineer. Payment for containment will be made as provided elsewhere in the contract.

Hydrate the CCGM panel by spraying water in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements. Spraying should occur in multiple applications to fully saturate the material without creating water runoff. Do not hydrate the panels if temperatures are expected to be below 32 degrees within 8 hours of completion of hydration process unless approved by the Engineer.

Measurement and Payment

Concrete Composite Geotextile Matting will be measured and paid in square yards as measured along the surface of the ground, properly installed and accepted. Such payment will be full compensation including but not limited to furnishing and installing the Concrete Composite Geotextile and necessary anchors, tools, equipment, labor and incidentals necessary to complete this work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Concrete Composite Geotextile Matting

Pay Unit

Square Yard

WORK ZONE INSTALLER:

(7-20-21)

1101, 1150

SP11 R04

Provide the service of at least one qualified work zone installer during the setup, installation, and removal of temporary traffic control within the highway right of way. The qualified work zone installer shall serve as crew leader and shall be on site and directing the installation and removal of temporary traffic control. If multiple temporary traffic control installations or removals are occurring simultaneously, then each shall have a qualified work zone installer.

The work zone installer shall be qualified by an NCDOT approved training agency in the safe and competent set up of temporary traffic control. For a complete listing of approved training agencies, see the Work Zone Safety Training webpage.

A work zone supervisor, in accordance with Article 1101-13 of the *Standard Specifications*, may fulfill the role of the work zone installer during the setup, installation, and removal of temporary traffic control within the highway right of way provided they are on site and directing the installation and removal of temporary traffic control.

All other individuals participating in the setup, installation, and removal of temporary traffic control within the highway right of way shall be certified as a qualified flagger in accordance with Article 1150-3 of the *Standard Specifications*, even if flagging is not being performed as part of the traffic control.

Provide the name and contact information of all qualified work zone installers to the Engineer prior to or at the preconstruction conference. Additionally, provide a qualification statement that all other individuals participating in the setup, installation, and removal of temporary traffic control are qualified flaggers that have been properly trained through an NCDOT approved training agency.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS – TERMINATION OF CONTRACTS**

(5-20-08)

Z-2

General Statute 143C-6-11. (h) Highway Appropriation is hereby incorporated verbatim in this contract as follows:

(h) Amounts Encumbered. – Transportation project appropriations may be encumbered in the amount of allotments made to the Department of Transportation by the Director for the estimated payments for transportation project contract work to be performed in the appropriation fiscal year. The allotments shall be multiyear allotments and shall be based on estimated revenues and shall be subject to the maximum contract authority contained in *General Statute 143C-6-11(c)*. Payment for transportation project work performed pursuant to contract in any fiscal year other than the current fiscal year is subject to appropriations by the General Assembly. Transportation project contracts shall contain a schedule of estimated completion progress, and any acceleration of this progress shall be subject to the approval of the Department of Transportation provided funds are available. The State reserves the right to terminate or suspend any transportation project contract, and any transportation project contract shall be so terminated or suspended if funds will not be available for payment of the work to be performed during that fiscal year pursuant to the contract. In the event of termination of any contract, the contractor shall be given a written notice of termination at least 60 days before completion of scheduled work for which funds are available. In the event of termination, the contractor shall be paid for the work already performed in accordance with the contract specifications.

Payment will be made on any contract terminated pursuant to the special provision in accordance with Subarticle 108-13(D) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**NCDOT GENERAL SEED SPECIFICATION FOR SEED QUALITY**

(5-17-11)

Z-3

Seed shall be sampled and tested by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory. When said samples are collected, the vendor shall supply an independent laboratory report for each lot to be tested. Results from seed so sampled shall be final. Seed not meeting the specifications shall be rejected by the Department of Transportation and shall not be delivered to North Carolina Department of Transportation warehouses. If seed has been delivered it shall be available for pickup and replacement at the supplier's expense.

Any re-labeling required by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory, that would cause the label to reflect as otherwise specified herein shall be rejected by the North Carolina Department of Transportation.

Seed shall be free from seeds of the noxious weeds Johnsongrass, Balloonvine, Jimsonweed, Witchweed, Itchgrass, Serrated Tussock, Showy Crotalaria, Smooth Crotalaria, Sicklepod, Sandbur, Wild Onion, and Wild Garlic. Seed shall not be labeled with the above weed species on the seed analysis label. Tolerances as applied by the Association of Official Seed Analysts will NOT be allowed for the above noxious weeds except for Wild Onion and Wild Garlic.

Tolerances established by the Association of Official Seed Analysts will generally be recognized. However, for the purpose of figuring pure live seed, the found pure seed and found germination percentages as reported by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory will be used. Allowances, as established by the NCDOT, will be recognized for minimum pure live seed as listed on the following pages.

The specifications for restricted noxious weed seed refers to the number per pound as follows:

<u>Restricted Noxious Weed</u>	<u>Limitations per Lb. Of Seed</u>	<u>Restricted Noxious Weed</u>	<u>Limitations per Lb. of Seed</u>
Blessed Thistle	4 seeds	Cornflower Robin)	(Ragged 27 seeds
Cocklebur	4 seeds	Texas Panicum	27 seeds
Spurred Anoda	4 seeds	Bracted Plantain	54 seeds
Velvetleaf	4 seeds	Buckhorn Plantain	54 seeds
Morning-glory	8 seeds	Broadleaf Dock	54 seeds
Corn Cockle	10 seeds	Curly Dock	54 seeds
Wild Radish	12 seeds	Dodder	54 seeds
Purple Nutsedge	27 seeds	Giant Foxtail	54 seeds
Yellow Nutsedge	27 seeds	Horsenettle	54 seeds
Canada Thistle	27 seeds	Quackgrass	54 seeds
Field Bindweed	27 seeds	Wild Mustard	54 seeds
Hedge Bindweed	27 seeds		

Seed of Pensacola Bahiagrass shall not contain more than 7% inert matter, Kentucky Bluegrass, Centipede and Fine or Hard Fescue shall not contain more than 5% inert matter whereas a maximum of 2% inert matter will be allowed on all other kinds of seed. In addition, all seed shall not contain more than 2% other crop seed nor more than 1% total weed seed. The germination rate as tested by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture shall not fall below 70%, which includes both dormant and hard seed. Seed shall be labeled with not more than 7%, 5% or 2% inert matter (according to above specifications), 2% other crop seed and 1% total weed seed.

Exceptions may be made for minimum pure live seed allowances when cases of seed variety shortages are verified. Pure live seed percentages will be applied in a verified shortage situation. Those purchase orders of deficient seed lots will be credited with the percentage that the seed is deficient.

FURTHER SPECIFICATIONS FOR EACH SEED GROUP ARE GIVEN BELOW:

Minimum 85% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 83% pure live seed will not be approved.

Sericea Lespedeza
Oats (seeds)

Minimum 80% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 78% pure live seed will not be approved.

Tall Fescue (all approved varieties)	Bermudagrass
Kobe Lespedeza	Browntop Millet
Korean Lespedeza	German Millet – Strain R
Weeping Lovegrass	Clover – Red/White/Crimson
Carpetgrass	

Minimum 78% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 76% pure live seed will not be approved.

Common or Sweet Sundangrass

Minimum 76% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 74% pure live seed will not be approved.

Rye (grain; all varieties)
Kentucky Bluegrass (all approved varieties)
Hard Fescue (all approved varieties)
Shrub (bicolor) Lespedeza

Minimum 70% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 70% pure live seed will not be approved.

Centipede grass
Crownvetch
Pensacola Bahiagrass
Creeping Red Fescue

Japanese Millet
Reed Canary Grass
Zoysia

Minimum 70% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 5% inert matter; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound.

Barnyard Grass
Big Bluestem
Little Bluestem
Bristly Locust
Birdsfoot Trefoil
Indiangrass
Orchardgrass
Switchgrass
Yellow Blossom Sweet Clover

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**ERRATA**

(10-16-18) (Rev.1-18-22)

Z-4

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Division 6

Page 6-7, Article 609-1 DESCRIPTION, line 29, replace article number “609-10” with “609-9”.

Division 7

Page 7-27, Article 725-1 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, line 4, replace article number “725-1” with “724-4”.

Page 7-28, Article 725-1 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, line 10, replace article number “725-1” with “725-3”.

Division 10

Page 10-78, Article 1056-4 GEOTEXTILES, TABLE 1056-1, Permittivity, Type 2, replace “Table 6^D” with “Table 7^D” and **Permittivity, Type 3^B,** replace “Table 7^D” with “Table 8^D”.

Page 10-121, Article 1076-7, REPAIR OF GALVANIZING, line 8, replace article number “1080-9” with “1080-7”.

Page 10-162, Article 1080-50 PAINT FOR VERTICAL MARKERS, line 1, replace article number “1080-50” with “1080-10”.

Page 10-162, Article 1080-61 EPOXY RESIN FOR REINFORCING STEEL, line 5, replace article number “1080-61” with “1080-11”.

Page 10-162, Article 1080-72 ABRASIVE MATERIALS FOR BLAST CLEANING STEEL, line 22, replace article number “1080-72” with “1080-12”.

Page 10-163, Article 1080-83 FIELD PERFORMANCE AND SERVICES, line 25, replace article number “1080-83” with “1080-13”.

Division 17

Page 17-15, Article 1715-4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, lines 42-44, replace the second sentence with the following:

An example is an installation of a single 1.25 inch HDPE conduit would be paid as:

Directional Drill (1)(1.25”) Linear Foot

Page 17-15, Subarticle 1715-3(E) Bore and Jack, line 5, replace article number “1540-4” with “1550-4”.

Page 17-15, Subarticle 1715-3(E) Bore and Jack, lines 10 & 11, replace "*NCDOT Policies and Procedures for Accommodating Utilities on Highway Rights of Way*" with "*NCDOT Utilities Accommodations Manual*".

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**PLANT AND PEST QUARANTINES****(Imported Fire Ant, Gypsy Moth, Witchweed, Emerald Ash Borer, Guava Root Knot Nematode, And Other Noxious Weeds)**

(3-18-03) (Rev. 5-21-19)

Z-04a

Within Quarantined Area

This project may be within a county regulated for plant and/or pests. If the project or any part of the Contractor's operations is located within a quarantined area, thoroughly clean all equipment prior to moving out of the quarantined area. Comply with federal/state regulations by obtaining a certificate or limited permit for any regulated article moving from the quarantined area.

Originating in a Quarantined County

Obtain a certificate or limited permit issued by the N.C. Department of Agriculture/United States Department of Agriculture. Have the certificate or limited permit accompany the article when it arrives at the project site.

Contact

Contact the N.C. Department of Agriculture/United States Department of Agriculture at 1-800-206-9333, 919-707-3730, or <https://www.ncagr.gov/plantindustry/Plant/quaran/table2.htm> to determine those specific project sites located in the quarantined area or for any regulated article used on this project originating in a quarantined county.

Regulated Articles Include

1. Soil, sand, gravel, compost, peat, humus, muck, and decomposed manure, separately or with other articles. This includes movement of articles listed above that may be associated with cut/waste, ditch pulling, and shoulder cutting.
2. Plants with roots including grass sod.
3. Plant crowns and roots.
4. Bulbs, corms, rhizomes, and tubers of ornamental plants.
5. Hay, straw, fodder, and plant litter of any kind.
6. Clearing and grubbing debris.
7. Used agricultural cultivating and harvesting equipment.
8. Used earth-moving equipment.
9. Any other products, articles, or means of conveyance, of any character, if determined by an inspector to present a hazard of spreading imported fire ant, gypsy moth, witchweed, emerald ash borer, guava root knot nematode, or other noxious weeds.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**TITLE VI AND NONDISCRIMINATION:**

(6-28-77)(Rev 6/19/2018)

Z-6

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Replace Article 103-4(B) with the following:

The North Carolina Department of Transportation is committed to carrying out the U.S. Department of Transportation's policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of contracts.

The provisions of this section related to United States Department of Transportation (US DOT) Order 1050.2A, Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) part 21, 23 United States Code (U.S.C.) 140 and 23 CFR part 200 (or 49 CFR 303, 49 U.S.C. 5332 or 49 U.S.C. 47123) are applicable to all North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) contracts and to all related subcontracts, material supply, engineering, architectural and other service contracts, regardless of dollar amount. Any Federal provision that is specifically required not specifically set forth is hereby incorporated by reference.

(1) Title VI Assurances (USDOT Order 1050.2A, Appendix A)

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "contractor") agrees as follows:

(a) Compliance with Regulations

The contractor (hereinafter includes consultants) shall comply with the Acts and the Regulations relative to Nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), as they may be amended from time to time, which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.

(b) Nondiscrimination

The contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall not participate directly or indirectly in the discrimination prohibited by the Acts and the Regulations, including employment practices when the contract covers any activity, project, or program set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR Part 21.

(c) Solicitations for Subcontractors, Including Procurements of Materials and Equipment

In all solicitations, either by competitive bidding, or negotiation made by the contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials, or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier shall be notified by the contractor of the contractor's obligations under this contract and the Acts and the Regulations relative to Nondiscrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin.

(d) Information and Reports

The contractor shall provide all information and reports required by the Acts, the Regulations, and directives issued pursuant thereto and shall permit access to its books,

records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the Recipient or the FHWA to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Acts, Regulations, and instructions. Where any information required of a contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish the information, the contractor shall so certify to the Recipient or the FHWA, as appropriate, and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.

(e) Sanctions for Noncompliance:

In the event of a contractor's noncompliance with the Non-discrimination provisions of this contract, the Recipient will impose such contract sanctions as it and/or the FHWA may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:

- (i) Withholding payments to the contractor under the contract until the contractor complies; and/or
- (ii) Cancelling, terminating, or suspending a contract, in whole or in part.

(f) Incorporation of Provisions

The contractor shall include the provisions of paragraphs (a) through (f) in every subcontract, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Acts, the Regulations and directives issued pursuant thereto. The contractor shall take action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as the Recipient or the FHWA may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for noncompliance. Provided, that if the contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with litigation by a subcontractor, or supplier because of such direction, the contractor may request the Recipient to enter into any litigation to protect the interests of the Recipient. In addition, the contractor may request the United States to enter into the litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

(2) **Title VI Nondiscrimination Program (23 CFR 200.5(p))**

The North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) has assured the USDOT that, as a condition to receiving federal financial assistance, NCDOT will comply with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 and all requirements imposed by Title 49 CFR part 21 and related nondiscrimination authorities to ensure that no person shall, on the ground of race, color, national origin, limited English proficiency, sex, age, or disability (including religion/creed or income-level, where applicable), be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any programs, activities, or services conducted or funded by NCDOT. Contractors and other organizations under contract or agreement with NCDOT must also comply with Title VI and related authorities, therefore:

- (a) During the performance of this contract or agreement, contractors (e.g., subcontractors, consultants, vendors, prime contractors) are responsible for complying with NCDOT's Title VI Program. Contractors are not required to prepare or submit Title VI Programs. To comply with this section, the prime contractor shall:
 - 1. Post NCDOT's Notice of Nondiscrimination and the Contractor's own Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Policy in conspicuous locations accessible to all employees, applicants and subcontractors on the jobsite.
 - 2. Physically incorporate the required Title VI clauses into all subcontracts on federally-assisted and state-funded NCDOT projects, and ensure inclusion by subcontractors into all lower-tier subcontracts.

3. Required Solicitation Language. The Contractor shall include the following notification in all solicitations for bids and requests for work or material, regardless of funding source:

“The North Carolina Department of Transportation, in accordance with the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (78 Stat. 252, 42 U.S.C. §§ 2000d to 2000d-4) and the Regulations, hereby notifies all bidders that it will affirmatively ensure that any contract entered into pursuant to this advertisement, disadvantaged business enterprises will be afforded full and fair opportunity to submit bids in response to this invitation and will not be discriminated against on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in consideration for an award. In accordance with other related nondiscrimination authorities, bidders and contractors will also not be discriminated against on the grounds of sex, age, disability, low-income level, creed/religion, or limited English proficiency in consideration for an award.”
 4. Physically incorporate the FHWA-1273, in its entirety, into all subcontracts and subsequent lower tier subcontracts on Federal-aid highway construction contracts only.
 5. Provide language assistance services (i.e., written translation and oral interpretation), free of charge, to LEP employees and applicants. Contact NCDOT OCR for further assistance, if needed.
 6. For assistance with these Title VI requirements, contact the NCDOT Title VI Nondiscrimination Program at 1-800-522-0453.
- (b) Subrecipients (e.g. cities, counties, LGAs, planning organizations) may be required to prepare and submit a Title VI Plan to NCDOT, including Title VI Assurances and/or agreements. Subrecipients must also ensure compliance by their contractors and subrecipients with Title VI. (23 CFR 200.9(b)(7))
- (c) If reviewed or investigated by NCDOT, the contractor or subrecipient agrees to take affirmative action to correct any deficiencies found within a reasonable time period, not to exceed 90 calendar days, unless additional time is granted by NCDOT. (23 CFR 200.9(b)(15))
- (d) The Contractor is responsible for notifying subcontractors of NCDOT’s External Discrimination Complaints Process.
1. Applicability
Title VI and related laws protect participants and beneficiaries (e.g., members of the public and contractors) from discrimination by NCDOT employees, subrecipients and contractors, regardless of funding source.
 2. Eligibility
Any person—or class of persons—who believes he/she has been subjected to discrimination based on race, color, national origin, Limited English Proficiency (LEP), sex, age, or disability (and religion in the context of employment, aviation, or transit) may file a written complaint. The law also prohibits intimidation or retaliation of any sort.
 3. Time Limits and Filing Options
Complaints may be filed by the affected individual(s) or a representative and must be filed no later than 180 calendar days after the following:
 - (i) The date of the alleged act of discrimination; or

- (ii) The date when the person(s) became aware of the alleged discrimination; or
- (iii) Where there has been a continuing course of conduct, the date on which that conduct was discontinued or the latest instance of the conduct.

Title VI and related discrimination complaints may be submitted to the following entities:

- North Carolina Department of Transportation, Office of Civil Rights, Title VI Program, 1511 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, NC 27699-1511; toll free 1-800-522-0453
 - Federal Highway Administration, North Carolina Division Office, 310 New Bern Avenue, Suite 410, Raleigh, NC 27601, 919-747-7010
 - US Department of Transportation, Departmental Office of Civil Rights, External Civil Rights Programs Division, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590; 202-366-4070
4. Format for Complaints
- Complaints must be in writing and signed by the complainant(s) or a representative, and include the complainant's name, address, and telephone number. Complaints received by fax or e-mail will be acknowledged and processed. Allegations received by telephone will be reduced to writing and provided to the complainant for confirmation or revision before processing. Complaints will be accepted in other languages, including Braille.
5. Discrimination Complaint Form
- Contact NCDOT Civil Rights to receive a full copy of the Discrimination Complaint Form and procedures.
6. Complaint Basis
- Allegations must be based on issues involving race, color, national origin (LEP), sex, age, disability, or religion (in the context of employment, aviation or transit). "Basis" refers to the complainant's membership in a protected group category.

**TABLE 103-1
COMPLAINT BASIS**

Protected Categories	Definition	Examples	Applicable Nondiscrimination Authorities
Race and Ethnicity	An individual belonging to one of the accepted racial groups; or the perception, based usually on physical characteristics that a person is a member of a racial group	Black/African American, Hispanic/Latino, Asian, American Indian/Alaska Native, Native Hawaiian/Pacific Islander, White	Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; 49 CFR Part 21; 23 CFR 200; 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123. (<i>Executive Order 13166</i>)
Color	Color of skin, including shade of skin within a racial group	Black, White, brown, yellow, etc.	
National Origin (<i>Limited English Proficiency</i>)	Place of birth. Citizenship is not a factor. (<i>Discrimination based on language or a person's accent is also covered</i>)	Mexican, Cuban, Japanese, Vietnamese, Chinese	
Sex	Gender. The sex of an individual.	Women and Men	1973 Federal-Aid Highway Act; 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123.

	<i>Note:</i> Sex under this program does not include sexual orientation.		
Age	Persons of any age	21-year-old person	Age Discrimination Act of 1975 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123.
Disability	Physical or mental impairment, permanent or temporary, or perceived.	Blind, alcoholic, para-amputee, epileptic, diabetic, arthritic	Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990
Religion (in the context of employment) <i>(Religion/ Creed in all aspects of any aviation or transit-related construction)</i>	An individual belonging to a religious group; or the perception, based on distinguishable characteristics that a person is a member of a religious group. In practice, actions taken as a result of the moral and ethical beliefs as to what is right and wrong, which are sincerely held with the strength of traditional religious views. <i>Note:</i> Does not have to be associated with a recognized religious group or church; if an individual sincerely holds to the belief, it is a protected religious practice.	Muslim, Christian, Sikh, Hindu, etc.	Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; 23 CFR 230; FHWA-1273 Required Contract Provisions. <i>(49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123)</i>

(3) Pertinent Nondiscrimination Authorities

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest agrees to comply with the following non-discrimination statutes and authorities, including, but not limited to:

- (a) Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000d et seq., 78 stat. 252), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin); and 49 CFR Part 21.
- (b) The Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, (42 U.S.C. § 4601), (prohibits unfair treatment of persons displaced or whose property has been acquired because of Federal or Federal-aid programs and projects);
- (c) Federal-Aid Highway Act of 1973, (23 U.S.C. § 324 et seq.), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of sex);
- (d) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, (29 U.S.C. § 794 et seq.), as amended, (prohibits discrimination on the basis of disability) and 49 CFR Part 27;
- (e) The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, (42 U.S.C. § 6101 et seq.), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of age);
- (f) Airport and Airway Improvement Act of 1982, (49 USC § 471, Section 47123), as amended, (prohibits discrimination based on race, creed, color, national origin, or sex);
- (g) The Civil Rights Restoration Act of 1987, (PL 100-209), (Broadened the scope, coverage and applicability of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, The Age Discrimination Act of 1975 and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, by expanding the definition of the terms "programs or activities" to include all of the programs or activities of the Federal-aid recipients, sub-recipients and contractors, whether such programs or activities are Federally funded or not);

- (h) Titles II and III of the Americans with Disabilities Act, which prohibit discrimination on the basis of disability in the operation of public entities, public and private transportation systems, places of public accommodation, and certain testing entities (42 U.S.C. §§ 12131-12189) as implemented by Department of Transportation regulations at 49 C.F.R. parts 37 and 38;
 - (i) The Federal Aviation Administration's Nondiscrimination statute (49 U.S.C. § 47123) (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, and sex);
 - (j) Executive Order 12898, Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations, which ensures Nondiscrimination against minority populations by discouraging programs, policies, and activities with disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects on minority and low-income populations;
 - (k) Executive Order 13166, Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency, and resulting agency guidance, national origin discrimination includes discrimination because of Limited English proficiency (LEP). To ensure compliance with Title VI, you must take reasonable steps to ensure that LEP persons have meaningful access to your programs (70 Fed. Reg. at 74087 to 74100);
 - (l) Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended, which prohibits you from discriminating because of sex in education programs or activities (20 U.S.C. 1681 et seq).
 - (m) Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000e et seq., Pub. L. 88-352), (prohibits employment discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin).
- (4) **Additional Title VI Assurances**

***The following Title VI Assurances (Appendices B, C and D) shall apply, as applicable*

- (a) Clauses for Deeds Transferring United States Property (1050.2A, Appendix B)
The following clauses will be included in deeds effecting or recording the transfer of real property, structures, or improvements thereon, or granting interest therein from the United States pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 4.

NOW, THEREFORE, the U.S. Department of Transportation as authorized by law and upon the condition that the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) will accept title to the lands and maintain the project constructed thereon in accordance with the North Carolina General Assembly, the Regulations for the Administration of the Federal-Aid Highway Program, and the policies and procedures prescribed by the Federal Highway Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation in accordance and in compliance with all requirements imposed by Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, U.S. Department of Transportation, Subtitle A, Office of the Secretary, Part 21, Nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation pertaining to and effectuating the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. § 2000d to 2000d-4), does hereby remise, release, quitclaim and convey unto the NCDOT all the right, title and interest of the U.S. Department of Transportation in and to said lands described in Exhibit A attached hereto and made a part hereof.

(HABENDUM CLAUSE)

TO HAVE AND TO HOLD said lands and interests therein unto the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) and its successors forever, subject, however, to the covenants, conditions, restrictions and reservations herein contained as follows, which will remain in effect for the period during which the real property or structures are used for a purpose for which Federal financial assistance is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits and will be binding on the NCDOT, its successors and assigns.

The NCDOT, in consideration of the conveyance of said lands and interests in lands, does hereby covenant and agree as a covenant running with the land for itself, its successors and assigns, that (1) no person will on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination with regard to any facility located wholly or in part on, over, or under such lands hereby conveyed [,] [and]* (2) that the NCDOT will use the lands and interests in lands and interests in lands so conveyed, in compliance with all requirements imposed by or pursuant to Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, U.S. Department of Transportation, Subtitle A, Office of the Secretary, Part 21, Non-discrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation, Effectuation of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, and as said Regulations and Acts may be amended [, and (3) that in the event of breach of any of the above-mentioned nondiscrimination conditions, the Department will have a right to enter or re-enter said lands and facilities on said land, and that above described land and facilities will thereon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the U.S. Department of Transportation and its assigns as such interest existed prior to this instruction].*

(*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary in order to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)

(b) Clauses for Transfer of Real Property Acquired or Improved Under the Activity, Facility, or Program (1050.2A, Appendix C)

The following clauses will be included in deeds, licenses, leases, permits, or similar instruments entered into by the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 7(a):

1. The (grantee, lessee, permittee, etc. as appropriate) for himself/herself, his/her heirs, personal representatives, successors in interest, and assigns, as a part of the consideration hereof, does hereby covenant and agree [in the case of deeds and leases add "as a covenant running with the land"] that:

- (i.) In the event facilities are constructed, maintained, or otherwise operated on the property described in this (deed, license, lease, permit, etc.) for a purpose for which a U.S. Department of Transportation activity, facility, or program is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits, the (grantee, licensee, lessee, permittee, etc.) will maintain and operate such facilities and services in compliance with all requirements imposed by the Acts and Regulations (as may be amended) such that no person on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination in the use of said facilities.
2. With respect to licenses, leases, permits, etc., in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to terminate the (lease, license, permit, etc.) and to enter, re-enter, and repossess said lands and facilities thereon, and hold the same as if the (lease, license, permit, etc.) had never been made or issued. *
 3. With respect to a deed, in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to enter or re-enter the lands and facilities thereon, and the above described lands and facilities will there upon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the NCDOT and its assigns. *
- (*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)
- (c) Clauses for Construction/Use/Access to Real Property Acquired Under the Activity, Facility or Program (1050.2A, Appendix D)
- The following clauses will be included in deeds, licenses, permits, or similar instruments/ agreements entered into by the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 7(b):
1. The (grantee, licensee, permittee, etc., as appropriate) for himself/herself, his/her heirs, personal representatives, successors in interest, and assigns, as a part of the consideration hereof, does hereby covenant and agree (in the case of deeds and leases add, "as a covenant running with the land") that (1) no person on the ground of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination in the use of said facilities, (2) that in the construction of any improvements on, over, or under such land, and the furnishing of services thereon, no person on the ground of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination, (3) that the (grantee, licensee, lessee, permittee, etc.) will use the premises in compliance with all other requirements imposed by or pursuant to the Acts and Regulations, as amended, set forth in this Assurance.
 2. With respect to (licenses, leases, permits, etc.), in the event of breach of any of the above Non- discrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to terminate the (license, permit, etc., as appropriate) and to enter or re-enter and repossess said land and the facilities thereon, and hold the same as if said (license, permit, etc., as appropriate) had never been made or issued. *

3. With respect to deeds, in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will there upon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the NCDOT and its assigns. *

(*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**ON-THE-JOB TRAINING**

(10-16-07) (Rev. 4-21-15)

Z-10

Description

The North Carolina Department of Transportation will administer a custom version of the Federal On-the-Job Training (OJT) Program, commonly referred to as the Alternate OJT Program. All contractors (existing and newcomers) will be automatically placed in the Alternate Program. Standard OJT requirements typically associated with individual projects will no longer be applied at the project level. Instead, these requirements will be applicable on an annual basis for each contractor administered by the OJT Program Manager.

On the Job Training shall meet the requirements of 23 CFR 230.107 (b), 23 USC – Section 140, this provision and the On-the-Job Training Program Manual.

The Alternate OJT Program will allow a contractor to train employees on Federal, State and privately funded projects located in North Carolina. However, priority shall be given to training employees on NCDOT Federal-Aid funded projects.

Minorities and Women

Developing, training and upgrading of minorities and women toward journeyman level status is a primary objective of this special training provision. Accordingly, the Contractor shall make every effort to enroll minority and women as trainees to the extent that such persons are available within a reasonable area of recruitment. This training commitment is not intended, and shall not be used, to discriminate against any applicant for training, whether a member of a minority group or not.

Assigning Training Goals

The Department, through the OJT Program Manager, will assign training goals for a calendar year based on the contractors' past three years' activity and the contractors' anticipated upcoming year's activity with the Department. At the beginning of each year, all contractors eligible will be contacted by the Department to determine the number of trainees that will be assigned for the upcoming calendar year. At that time the Contractor shall enter into an agreement with the Department to provide a self-imposed on-the-job training program for the calendar year. This agreement will include a specific number of annual training goals agreed to by both parties. The number of training assignments may range from 1 to 15 per contractor per calendar year. The Contractor shall sign an agreement to fulfill their annual goal for the year.\

Training Classifications

The Contractor shall provide on-the-job training aimed at developing full journeyman level workers in the construction craft/operator positions. Preference shall be given to providing training in the following skilled work classifications:

Equipment Operators	Office Engineers
Truck Drivers	Estimators
Carpenters	Iron / Reinforcing Steel Workers
Concrete Finishers	Mechanics
Pipe Layers	Welders

The Department has established common training classifications and their respective training requirements that may be used by the contractors. However, the classifications established are not all-inclusive. Where the training is oriented toward construction applications, training will be allowed in lower-level management positions such as office engineers and estimators. Contractors shall submit new classifications for specific job functions that their employees are performing. The Department will review and recommend for acceptance to FHWA the new classifications proposed by contractors, if applicable. New classifications shall meet the following requirements:

Proposed training classifications are reasonable and realistic based on the job skill classification needs, and

The number of training hours specified in the training classification is consistent with common practices and provides enough time for the trainee to obtain journeyman level status.

The Contractor may allow trainees to be trained by a subcontractor provided that the Contractor retains primary responsibility for meeting the training and this provision is made applicable to the subcontract. However, only the Contractor will receive credit towards the annual goal for the trainee.

Where feasible, 25 percent of apprentices or trainees in each occupation shall be in their first year of apprenticeship or training. The number of trainees shall be distributed among the work classifications on the basis of the contractor's needs and the availability of journeymen in the various classifications within a reasonable area of recruitment.

No employee shall be employed as a trainee in any classification in which they have successfully completed a training course leading to journeyman level status or in which they have been employed as a journeyman.

Records and Reports

The Contractor shall maintain enrollment, monthly and completion reports documenting company compliance under these contract documents. These documents and any other information as requested shall be submitted to the OJT Program Manager.

Upon completion and graduation of the program, the Contractor shall provide each trainee with a certification Certificate showing the type and length of training satisfactorily completed.

Trainee Interviews

All trainees enrolled in the program will receive an initial and Trainee/Post graduate interview conducted by the OJT program staff.

Trainee Wages

Contractors shall compensate trainees on a graduating pay scale based upon a percentage of the prevailing minimum journeyman wages (Davis-Bacon Act). Minimum pay shall be as follows:

60 percent	of the journeyman wage for the first half of the training period
75 percent	of the journeyman wage for the third quarter of the training period
90 percent	of the journeyman wage for the last quarter of the training period

In no instance shall a trainee be paid less than the local minimum wage. The Contractor shall adhere to the minimum hourly wage rate that will satisfy both the NC Department of Labor (NCDOL) and the Department.

Achieving or Failing to Meet Training Goals

The Contractor will be credited for each trainee employed by him on the contract work who is currently enrolled or becomes enrolled in an approved program and who receives training for at least 50 percent of the specific program requirement. Trainees will be allowed to be transferred between projects if required by the Contractor's scheduled workload to meet training goals.

If a contractor fails to attain their training assignments for the calendar year, they may be taken off the NCDOT's Bidders List.

Measurement and Payment

No compensation will be made for providing required training in accordance with these contract documents.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**MINIMUM WAGES**

(7-21-09)

Z-5

FEDERAL: The Fair Labor Standards Act provides that with certain exceptions every employer shall pay wages at the rate of not less than SEVEN DOLLARS AND TWENTY FIVE CENTS (\$7.25) per hour.

STATE: The North Carolina Minimum Wage Act provides that every employer shall pay to each of his employees, wages at a rate of not less than SEVEN DOLLARS AND TWENTY FIVE CENTS (\$7.25) per hour.

The minimum wage paid to all skilled labor employed on this contract shall be SEVEN DOLLARS AND TWENTY FIVE CENTS (\$7.25) per hour.

The minimum wage paid to all intermediate labor employed on this contract shall be SEVEN DOLLARS AND TWENTY FIVE CENTS (\$7.25) per hour.

The minimum wage paid to all unskilled labor on this contract shall be SEVEN DOLLARS AND TWENTY FIVE CENTS (\$7.25) per hour.

This determination of the intent of the application of this act to the contract on this project is the responsibility of the Contractor.

The Contractor shall have no claim against the Department of Transportation for any changes in the minimum wage laws, Federal or State. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to keep fully informed of all Federal and State Laws affecting his contract.

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**EROSION CONTROL****COIR FIBER MAT:****Description**

Furnish material, install and maintain coir fiber mat in locations shown on the plans or in locations as directed. Work includes providing all materials, excavating and backfilling, and placing and securing coir fiber mat with stakes, steel reinforcement bars or staples as directed.

Materials

Item	Section
Coir Fiber Mat	1060-14

Anchors: Stakes, reinforcement bars, or staples shall be used as anchors.

Wooden Stakes:

Provide hardwood stakes 12"- 24" long with a 2" x 2" nominal square cross section. One end of the stake must be sharpened or beveled to facilitate driving through the coir fiber mat and down into the underlying soil. The other end of the stake needs to have a 1"- 2" long head at the top with a 1"- 2" notch following to catch and secure the coir fiber mat.

Steel Reinforcement Bars:

Provide uncoated #10 steel reinforcement bars 24" nominal length. The bars shall have a 4" diameter bend at one end with a 4" straight section at the tip to catch and secure the coir fiber mat.

Staples:

Provide staples made of 0.125" diameter new steel wire formed into a *u* shape not less than 12" in length with a throat of 1" in width.

Construction Methods

Place the coir fiber mat immediately upon final grading. Provide a smooth soil surface free from stones, clods, or debris that will prevent the contact of the mat with the soil. Unroll the mat and apply without stretching such that it will lie smoothly but loosely on the soil surface.

For stream relocation applications, take care to preserve the required line, grade, and cross section of the area covered. Bury the top slope end of each piece of mat in a narrow trench at least 6 in.

deep and tamp firmly. Where one roll of matting ends and a second roll begins, overlap the end of the upper roll over the buried end of the second roll so there is a 6 in. overlap. Construct check trenches at least 12 in. deep every 50 ft. longitudinally along the edges of the mat or as directed. Fold over and bury mat to the full depth of the trench, close and tamp firmly. Overlap mat at least 6 in. where 2 or more widths of mat are installed side by side.

Place anchors across the mat at the ends approximately 1 ft. apart. Place anchors along the outer edges and down the center of the mat 3 ft. apart.

Adjustments in the trenching or anchoring requirements to fit individual site conditions may be required.

Measurement and Payment

Coir Fiber Mat will be measured and paid for as the actual number of square yards measured along the surface of the ground over which coir fiber mat is installed and accepted.

No measurement will be made for anchor items.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Coir Fiber Mat	Square Yard

CONCRETE WASHOUT STRUCTURE:

(01-03-19)

Description

Concrete washout structures are enclosures above or below grade to contain concrete waste water and associated concrete mix from washing out ready-mix trucks, drums, pumps, or other equipment. Concrete washouts must collect and retain all the concrete washout water and solids, so that this material does not migrate to surface waters or into the ground water. These enclosures are not intended for concrete waste not associated with wash out operations.

The concrete washout structure may include constructed devices above or below ground and or commercially available devices designed specifically to capture concrete wash water.

Materials

Item	Section
Temporary Silt Fence	1605

Safety Fence shall meet the specifications as provided elsewhere in this contract.

Geomembrane basin liner shall meet the following minimum physical properties for low permeability; it shall consist of a polypropylene or polyethylene 10 mil thick geomembrane. If the minimum setback dimensions can be achieved the liner is not required. (5 feet above groundwater, 50 feet from top of bank of perennial stream, other surface water body, or wetland.)

Construction Methods

Build an enclosed earthen berm or excavate to form an enclosure in accordance with the details and as directed.

Install temporary silt fence around the perimeter of the enclosure in accordance with the details and as directed if structure is not located in an area where existing erosion and sedimentation control devices are capable to containing any loss of sediment.

Post a sign with the words “Concrete Washout” in close proximity of the concrete washout area, so it is clearly visible to site personnel. Install safety fence as directed for visibility to construction traffic.

The construction details for the above grade and below grade concrete washout structures can be found on the following web page link:

<https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/roadside/SoilWaterDocuments/ConcreteWashoutStructureDetail.pdf>

[Alternate details for accommodating concrete washout may be submitted for review and approval.](#)

[The alternate details shall include the method used to retain and dispose of the concrete waste water within the project limits and in accordance with the minimum setback requirements.](#) (5 feet above groundwater, 50 feet from top of bank of perennial stream, other surface water body, or wetland.)

Maintenance and Removal

Maintain the concrete washout structure(s) to provide adequate holding capacity plus a minimum freeboard of 12 inches. Remove and dispose of hardened concrete and return the structure to a functional condition after reaching 75% capacity.

Inspect concrete washout structures for damage and maintain for effectiveness.

Remove the concrete washout structures and sign upon project completion. Grade the earth material to match the existing contours and permanently seed and mulch area.

Measurement and Payment

Concrete Washout Structure will be paid for per each enclosure installed in accordance with the details. If alternate details are approved then those details will also be paid for per each approved and installed device.

Temporary Silt Fence will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1605-5 of the *Standard Specifications*.

No measurement will be made for other items or for over excavation or stockpiling.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Concrete Washout Structure	Each

ENVIRONMENTALLY SENSITIVE AREAS:

Description

This project is located in an *Environmentally Sensitive Area*. This designation requires special procedures to be used for clearing and grubbing, temporary stream crossings, and grading operations within the Environmentally Sensitive Areas identified on the plans and as designated by the Engineer. This also requires special procedures to be used for seeding and mulching and staged seeding within the project.

The Environmentally Sensitive Area shall be defined as a 50-foot buffer zone on both sides of the stream or depression measured from top of streambank or center of depression.

Construction Methods

(A) Clearing and Grubbing

In areas identified as Environmentally Sensitive Areas, the Contractor may perform clearing operations, but not grubbing operations until immediately prior to beginning grading operations as described in Article 200-1 of the *Standard Specifications*. Only clearing operations (not grubbing) shall be allowed in this buffer zone until immediately prior to beginning grading operations. Erosion control devices shall be installed immediately following the clearing operation.

(B) Grading

Once grading operations begin in identified Environmentally Sensitive Areas, work shall progress in a continuous manner until complete. All construction within these areas shall progress in a continuous manner such that each phase is complete and areas are permanently stabilized prior to beginning of next phase. Failure on the part of the Contractor to complete any phase of construction in a continuous manner in

Environmentally Sensitive Areas will be just cause for the Engineer to direct the suspension of work in accordance with Article 108-7 of the *Standard Specifications*.

(C) Temporary Stream Crossings

Any crossing of streams within the limits of this project shall be accomplished in accordance with the requirements of Subarticle 107-12 of the *Standard Specifications*.

(D) Seeding and Mulching

Seeding and mulching shall be performed in accordance with Section 1660 of the *Standard Specifications* and vegetative cover sufficient to restrain erosion shall be installed immediately following grade establishment.

Seeding and mulching shall be performed on the areas disturbed by construction immediately following final grade establishment. No appreciable time shall lapse into the contract time without stabilization of slopes, ditches and other areas within the Environmentally Sensitive Areas.

(E) Stage Seeding

The work covered by this section shall consist of the establishment of a vegetative cover on cut and fill slopes as grading progresses. Seeding and mulching shall be done in stages on cut and fill slopes that are greater than 20 feet in height measured along the slope, or greater than 2 acres in area. Each stage shall not exceed the limits stated above.

Additional payments will not be made for the requirements of this section, as the cost for this work shall be included in the contract unit prices for the work involved.

MINIMIZE REMOVAL OF VEGETATION:

The Contractor shall minimize removal of vegetation within project limits to the maximum extent practicable. Vegetation along stream banks and adjacent to other jurisdictional resources outside the construction limits shall only be removed upon approval of Engineer. No additional payment will be made for this minimization work.

NATIVE GRASS SEEDING AND MULCHING

(East)

Native Grass Seeding and Mulching shall be performed on the disturbed areas of wetlands and riparian areas, and adjacent to Stream Relocation construction within a 50 foot zone on both sides of the stream or depression, measured from top of stream bank or center of depression. The stream bank of the stream relocation shall be seeded by a method that does not alter the typical cross section of the stream bank. Native Grass Seeding and Mulching shall also be performed in the permanent soil reinforcement mat section of preformed scour holes, and in other areas as directed.

The kinds of seed and fertilizer, and the rates of application of seed, fertilizer, and limestone, shall be as stated below. During periods of overlapping dates, the kind of seed to be used shall be determined. All rates are in pounds per acre.

March 1 - August 31		September 1 - February 28	
18#	Creeping Red Fescue	18#	Creeping Red Fescue
6#	Indiangrass	6#	Indiangrass
8#	Little Bluestem	8#	Little Bluestem
4#	Switchgrass	4#	Switchgrass
25#	Browntop Millet	35#	Rye Grain
500#	Fertilizer	500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone	4000#	Limestone

Approved Creeping Red Fescue Cultivars:

Aberdeen Boreal Epic Cindy Lou

Fertilizer shall be 10-20-20 analysis. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 1-2-2 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as a 10-20-20 analysis and as directed.

Native Grass Seeding and Mulching shall be performed in accordance with Section 1660 of the *Standard Specifications* and vegetative cover sufficient to restrain erosion shall be installed immediately following grade establishment.

Measurement and Payment

Native Grass *Seeding and Mulching* will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1660-8 of the *Standard Specifications*.

PERMANENT VEGETATION ESTABLISHMENT:

(2-16-12) (Rev. 10-15-13)

Establish a permanent stand of the vegetation mixture shown in the contract. During the period between initial vegetation planting and final project acceptance, perform all work necessary to establish permanent vegetation on all erodible areas within the project limits, as well as, in borrow and waste pits. This work shall include erosion control device maintenance and installation, repair seeding and mulching, supplemental seeding and mulching, mowing, and fertilizer topdressing, as directed. All work shall be performed in accordance with the applicable section of the *2012 Standard Specifications*. All work required for initial vegetation planting shall be performed as a part of the work necessary for the completion and acceptance of the Intermediate Contract Time (ICT). Between the time of ICT and Final Project acceptance, or otherwise referred to as the vegetation establishment period, the Department will be responsible for preparing the required National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) inspection records.

Once the Engineer has determined that the permanent vegetation establishment requirement has been achieved at an 80% vegetation density (the amount of established vegetation per given area to stabilize the soil) and no erodible areas exist within the project limits, the Contractor will be notified to remove the remaining erosion control devices that are no longer needed. The Contractor will be responsible for, and shall correct any areas disturbed by operations performed in permanent vegetation establishment and the removal of temporary erosion control measures, whether occurring prior to or after placing traffic on the project.

Payment for *Response for Erosion Control, Seeding and Mulching, Repair Seeding, Supplemental Seeding, Mowing, Fertilizer Topdressing, Silt Excavation, and Stone for Erosion Control* will be made at contract unit prices for the affected items. Work required that is not represented by contract line items will be paid in accordance with Articles 104-7 or 104-3 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*. No additional compensation will be made for maintenance and removal of temporary erosion control items.

REFORESTATION:

Description

Reforestation will be planted within interchanges and along the outside borders of the road, and in other areas as directed. *Reforestation* is not shown on the plan sheets. See the Reforestation Detail Sheet.

All non-maintained riparian buffers impacted by the placement of temporary fill or clearing activities shall be restored to the preconstruction contours and revegetated with native woody species.

The entire *Reforestation* operation shall comply with the requirements of Section 1670 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Materials

Reforestation shall be bare root seedlings 12"-18" tall.

Construction Methods

Reforestation shall be planted as soon as practical following permanent *Seeding and Mulching*. The seedlings shall be planted in a 16-foot wide swath adjacent to mowing pattern line, or as directed.

Root dip: The roots of reforestation seedlings shall be coated with a slurry of water, and either a fine clay (kaolin) or a superabsorbent that is designated as a bare root dip. The type, mixture ratio, method of application, and the time of application shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

With the approval of the Engineer, seedlings may be coated before delivery to the job or at the time of planting, but at no time shall the roots of the seedlings be allowed to dry out. The roots shall be moistened immediately prior to planting.

Seasonal Limitations: *Reforestation* shall be planted from November 15 through March 15.

Measurement and Payment

Reforestation will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1670-17 of the *Standard Specifications*.

RESPONSE FOR EROSION CONTROL:

Description

Furnish the labor, materials, tools and equipment necessary to move personnel, equipment, and supplies to the project necessary for the pursuit of any or all of the following work as shown herein, by an approved subcontractor.

Section	Erosion Control Item	Unit
1605	Temporary Silt Fence	LF
1606	Special Sediment Control Fence	LF/TON
1615	Temporary Mulching	ACR
1620	Seed - Temporary Seeding	LB
1620	Fertilizer - Temporary Seeding	TN
1631	Matting for Erosion Control	SY
SP	Coir Fiber Mat	SY
1640	Coir Fiber Baffles	LF
SP	Permanent Soil Reinforcement Mat	SY
1660	Seeding and Mulching	ACR
1661	Seed - Repair Seeding	LB
1661	Fertilizer - Repair Seeding	TON
1662	Seed - Supplemental Seeding	LB
1665	Fertilizer Topdressing	TON
SP	Safety/Highly Visible Fencing	LF
SP	Response for Erosion Control	EA

Construction Methods

Provide an approved subcontractor who performs an erosion control action as described in the NPDES Inspection Form SPPP30. Each erosion control action may include one or more of the above work items.

Measurement and Payment

Response for Erosion Control will be measured and paid for by counting the actual number of times the subcontractor moves onto the project, including borrow and waste sites, and satisfactorily completes an erosion control action described in Form 1675. The provisions of Article 104-5 of the *Standard Specifications* will not apply to this item of work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Response for Erosion Control	Each

SAFETY FENCE AND JURISDICTIONAL FLAGGING:

Description

Safety Fence shall consist of furnishing materials, installing and maintaining polyethylene or polypropylene fence along the outside riparian buffer, wetland, or water boundary, or other boundaries located within the construction corridor to mark the areas that have been approved to infringe within the buffer, wetland, endangered vegetation, culturally sensitive areas or water. The fence shall be installed prior to any land disturbing activities.

Interior boundaries for jurisdictional areas noted above shall be delineated by stakes and highly visible flagging.

Jurisdictional boundaries at staging areas, waste sites, or borrow pits, whether considered outside or interior boundaries shall be delineated by stakes and highly visible flagging.

Materials

(A) Safety Fencing

Polyethylene or polypropylene fence shall be a highly visible preconstructed safety fence approved by the Engineer. The fence material shall have an ultraviolet coating.

Either wood posts or steel posts may be used. Wood posts shall be hardwood with a wedge or pencil tip at one end, and shall be at least 5 ft. in length with a minimum nominal 2" x 2" cross section. Steel posts shall be at least 5 ft. in length, and have a minimum weight of 0.85 lb/ft of length.

(B) Boundary Flagging

Wooden stakes shall be 4 feet in length with a minimum nominal 3/4" x 1-3/4" cross section. The flagging shall be at least 1" in width. The flagging material shall be vinyl and shall be orange in color and highly visible.

Construction Methods

No additional clearing and grubbing is anticipated for the installation of this fence. The fence shall be erected to conform to the general contour of the ground.

(A) Safety Fencing

Posts shall be set at a maximum spacing of 10 ft., maintained in a vertical position and hand set or set with a post driver. Posts shall be installed a minimum of 2 ft. into the ground. If hand set, all backfill material shall be thoroughly tamped. Wood posts may be sharpened to a dull point if power driven. Posts damaged by power driving shall be removed and replaced prior to final acceptance. The tops of all wood posts shall be cut at a 30-degree angle. The wood posts may, at the option of the Contractor, be cut at this angle either before or after the posts are erected.

The fence geotextile shall be attached to the wood posts with one 2" galvanized wire staple across each cable or to the steel posts with wire or other acceptable means.

Place construction stakes to establish the location of the safety fence in accordance with Article 105-9 or Article 801-1 of the *Standard Specifications*. No direct pay will be made for the staking of the safety fence. All stakeouts for safety fence shall be considered incidental to the work being paid for as "Construction Surveying", except that where there is no pay item for construction surveying, all safety fence stakeout will be performed by state forces.

The Contractor shall be required to maintain the safety fence in a satisfactory condition for the duration of the project as determined by the Engineer.

(B) Boundary Flagging

Boundary flagging delineation of interior boundaries shall consist of wooden stakes on 25 feet maximum intervals with highly visible orange flagging attached. Stakes shall be installed a minimum of 6" into the ground. Interior boundaries may be staked on a tangent that runs parallel to buffer but must not encroach on the buffer at any location. Interior boundaries of hand clearing shall be identified with a different colored flagging to distinguish it from mechanized clearing.

Boundary flagging delineation of interior boundaries will be placed in accordance with Article 105-9 or Article 801-1 of the *Standard Specifications*. No direct pay will be made for delineation of the interior boundaries. This delineation will be considered incidental to the work being paid for as *Construction Surveying*, except that where there is no pay item or construction surveying the cost of boundary flagging delineation shall be included in the unit prices bid for the various

items in the contract. Installation for delineation of all jurisdictional boundaries at staging areas, waste sites, or borrow pits shall consist of wooden stakes on 25 feet maximum intervals with highly visible orange flagging attached. Stakes shall be installed a minimum of 6” into the ground. Additional flagging may be placed on overhanging vegetation to enhance visibility but does not substitute for installation of stakes.

Installation of boundary flagging for delineation of all jurisdictional boundaries at staging areas, waste sites, or borrow pits shall be performed in accordance with Subarticle 230-4(B)(5) or Subarticle 802-2(F) of the *Standard Specifications*. No direct pay will be made for this delineation, as the cost of same shall be included in the unit prices bid for the various items in the contract.

The Contractor shall be required to maintain alternative stakes and highly visible flagging in a satisfactory condition for the duration of the project as determined by the Engineer.

Measurement and Payment

Safety Fence will be measured and paid as the actual number of linear feet of polyethylene or polypropylene fence installed in place and accepted. Such payment will be full compensation including but not limited to furnishing and installing fence geotextile with necessary posts and post bracing, staples, tie wires, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete this work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item
Safety Fence

Pay Unit
Linear Foot

STABILIZATION REQUIREMENTS:

(3-11-2016)

Stabilization for this project shall comply with the time frame guidelines as specified by the NCG-010000 general construction permit effective August 1, 2016 issued by the North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality Division of Water Resources. Temporary or permanent ground cover stabilization shall occur within 7 calendar days from the last land-disturbing activity, with the following exceptions in which temporary or permanent ground cover shall be provided in 14 calendar days from the last land-disturbing activity:

- Slopes between 2:1 and 3:1, with a slope length of 10 ft. or less
- Slopes 3:1 or flatter, with a slope of length of 50 ft. or less
- Slopes 4:1 or flatter

The stabilization timeframe for High Quality Water (HQP) Zones shall be 7 calendar days with no exceptions for slope grades or lengths. High Quality Water Zones (HQP) Zones are defined by North Carolina Administrative Code 15A NCAC 04A.0105 (25). Temporary and permanent ground cover stabilization shall be achieved in accordance with the provisions in this contract and as directed.

SEEDING AND MULCHING:

(East)

The kinds of seed and fertilizer, and the rates of application of seed, fertilizer, and limestone, shall be as stated below. During periods of overlapping dates, the kind of seed to be used shall be determined. All rates are in pounds per acre.

All Roadway Areas

March 1 - August 31		September 1 - February 28	
50#	Tall Fescue	50#	Tall Fescue
10#	Centipede	10#	Centipede
25#	Bermudagrass (hulled)	35#	Bermudagrass (unhulled)
500#	Fertilizer	500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone	4000#	Limestone

Waste and Borrow Locations

March 1 - August 31		September 1 - February 28	
75#	Tall Fescue	75#	Tall Fescue
25#	Bermudagrass (hulled)	35#	Bermudagrass (unhulled)
500#	Fertilizer	500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone	4000#	Limestone

Note: 50# of Bahiagrass may be substituted for either Centipede or Bermudagrass only upon Engineer's request.

Approved Tall Fescue Cultivars

06 Dust	Escalade	Justice	Serengeti
2 nd Millennium	Essential	Kalahari	Shelby
3 rd Millennium	Evergreen 2	Kitty Hawk 2000	Sheridan
Apache III	Falcon IV	Legitimate	Signia
Avenger	Falcon NG	Lexington	Silver Hawk
Barlexas	Falcon V	LSD	Sliverstar
Barlexas II	Faith	Magellan	Shenandoah Elite
Bar Fa	Fat Cat	Matador	Sidewinder
Barrera	Festnova	Millennium SRP	Skyline
Barrington	Fidelity	Monet	Solara
Barrobusto	Finelawn Elite	Mustang 4	Southern Choice II
Barvado	Finelawn Xpress	Ninja 2	Speedway
Biltmore	Finesse II	Ol' Glory	Spyder LS
Bingo	Firebird	Olympic Gold	Sunset Gold
Bizem	Firecracker LS	Padre	Taccoa
Blackwatch	Firenza	Patagonia	Tanzania
Blade Runner II	Five Point	Pedigree	Trio
Bonsai	Focus	Picasso	Tahoe II
Braveheart	Forte	Piedmont	Talladega

Bravo	Garrison	Plantation	Tarheel
Bullseye	Gazelle II	Proseeds 5301	Terrano
Cannavaro	Gold Medallion	Prospect	Titan ltd
Catalyst	Grande 3	Pure Gold	Titanium LS
Cayenne	Greenbrooks	Quest	Tracer
Cessane Rz	Greenkeeper	Raptor II	Traverse SRP
Chipper	Gremlin	Rebel Exeda	Tulsa Time
Cochise IV	Greystone	Rebel Sentry	Turbo
Constitution	Guardian 21	Rebel IV	Turbo RZ
Corgi	Guardian 41	Regiment II	Tuxedo RZ
Corona	Hemi	Regenerate	Ultimate
Coyote	Honky Tonk	Rendition	Venture
Darlington	Hot Rod	Rhambler 2 SRP	Umbrella
Davinci	Hunter	Rembrandt	Van Gogh
Desire	Inferno	Reunion	Watchdog
Dominion	Innovator	Riverside	Wolfpack II
Dynamic	Integrity	RNP	Xtremegreen
Dynasty	Jaguar 3	Rocket	
Endeavor	Jamboree	Scorpion	

On cut and fill slopes 2:1 or steeper Centipede shall be applied at the rate of 5 pounds per acre and add 20# of Sericea Lespedeza from January 1 - December 31.

Fertilizer shall be 10-20-20 analysis. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 1-2-2 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as a 10-20-20 analysis and as directed.

TEMPORARY SEEDING:

Fertilizer shall be the same analysis as specified for *Seeding and Mulching* and applied at the rate of 400 pounds and seeded at the rate of 50 pounds per acre. Sweet Sudan Grass, German Millet or Browntop Millet shall be used in summer months and Rye Grain during the remainder of the year. The Engineer will determine the exact dates for using each kind of seed.

FERTILIZER TOPDRESSING:

Fertilizer used for topdressing on all roadway areas except slopes 2:1 and steeper shall be 10-20-20 grade and shall be applied at the rate of 500 pounds per acre. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 1-2-2 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as 10-20-20 analysis and as directed.

Fertilizer used for topdressing on slopes 2:1 and steeper and waste and borrow areas shall be 16-8-8 grade and shall be applied at the rate of 500 pounds per acre. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 2-1-1 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as 16-8-8 analysis and as directed.

SUPPLEMENTAL SEEDING:

The kinds of seed and proportions shall be the same as specified for *Seeding and Mulching*, with the exception that no centipede seed will be used in the seed mix for supplemental seeding. The rate of application for supplemental seeding may vary from 25# to 75# per acre. The actual rate per acre will be determined prior to the time of topdressing and the Contractor will be notified in writing of the rate per acre, total quantity needed, and areas on which to apply the supplemental seed. Minimum tillage equipment, consisting of a sod seeder shall be used for incorporating seed into the soil as to prevent disturbance of existing vegetation. A clodbuster (ball and chain) may be used where degree of slope prevents the use of a sod seeder.

MOWING:

The minimum mowing height on this project shall be 4 inches.

TEMPORARY ROCK SILT CHECK TYPE A WITH EXCELSIOR MATTING AND POLYACRYLAMIDE (PAM):**Description**

Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and Polyacrylamide (PAM) are devices utilized in temporary and permanent ditches to reduce runoff velocity and incorporate PAM into the construction runoff to increase settling of sediment particles and reduce turbidity of runoff. Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM are to be placed at locations shown on the plans or as directed. Installation shall follow the detail provided in the plans and as directed. Work includes furnishing materials, installation of Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A, matting installation, PAM application, and removing Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM.

Materials

Structural stone shall be class B stone that meets the requirements of Section 1042 of the *Standard Specifications* for Stone for Erosion Control, Class B.

Sediment control stone shall be #5 or #57 stone, which meets the requirements of Section 1005 of the *Standard Specifications* for these stone sizes.

Matting shall meet the requirements of Excelsior Matting in Subarticle 1060-8(B) of the *Standard Specifications*, or shall meet specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Polyacrylamide (PAM) shall be applied in powder form and shall be anionic or neutrally charged. Soil samples shall be obtained in areas where the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM will be placed, and from offsite material used to construct the roadway, and analyzed for the appropriate PAM flocculant to be utilized with each Temporary Rock Silt Check Type A. The PAM product used shall be listed on the North Carolina Department

of Environmental Quality Division of Water Resources web site as an approved PAM product for use in North Carolina.

Construction Methods

Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A shall be installed in accordance with Subarticle 1633-3(A) of the *Standard Specifications*, Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1633.01 and the detail provided in the plans.

Installation of matting shall be in accordance with the detail provided in the plans, and anchored by placing Class B stone on top of the matting at the upper and lower ends.

Apply PAM at a rate of 4 ounces over the center portion of the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A and matting where the water is going to flow over. PAM applications shall be done during construction activities and after every rainfall event that is equal to or exceeds 0.50 in.

The Contractor shall maintain the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM until the project is accepted or until the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM are removed, and shall remove and dispose of silt accumulations at the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A with Excelsior Matting and PAM when so directed in accordance with the requirements of Section 1630 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Measurement and Payment

Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1633-5 of the *Standard Specifications*, or in accordance with specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Matting will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1631-4 of the *Standard Specifications*, or in accordance with specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Polyacrylamide(PAM) will be measured and paid for by the actual weight in pounds of PAM applied to the Temporary Rock Silt Checks Type A. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this section, including, but not limited to, furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and incidentals necessary to apply the *Polyacrylamide(PAM)*.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Polyacrylamide(PAM)	Pound

STOCKPILE AREAS:

The Contractor shall install and maintain erosion control devices sufficient to contain sediment around any erodible material stockpile areas as directed.

ACCESS AND HAUL ROADS:

At the end of each working day, the Contractor shall install or re-establish temporary diversions or earth berms across access/haul roads to direct runoff into sediment devices. Silt fence sections that are temporarily removed shall be reinstalled across access/haul roads at the end of each working day.

WASTE AND BORROW SOURCES:

Payment for temporary erosion control measures, except those made necessary by the Contractor's own negligence or for his own convenience, will be paid for at the appropriate contract unit price for the devices or measures utilized in borrow sources and waste areas.

No additional payment will be made for erosion control devices or permanent seeding and mulching in any commercial borrow or waste pit. All erosion and sediment control practices that may be required on a commercial borrow or waste site will be done at the Contractor's expense.

All offsite Staging Areas, Borrow and Waste sites shall be in accordance with "Borrow and Waste Site Reclamation Procedures for Contracted Projects" located at:

<https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/roadside/FieldOperationsDocuments/ContractedReclamationProcedures.pdf>

All forms and documents referenced in the "Borrow and Waste Site Reclamation Procedures for Contracted Projects" shall be included with the reclamation plans for offsite staging areas, and borrow and waste sites.

CONCRETE COMPOSITE GEOTEXTILE MATTING:

(02-01-2022)

Description

Furnish, place and maintain concrete composite geotextile matting (CCGM) that consists of a flexible three dimensional concrete impregnated matrix that hardens when hydrated to form a durable concrete surface layer for the protection of slopes, drainage ditches or other areas at locations shown in the plans or as directed. Work includes providing all materials, any excavation and backfilling, placing and securing the concrete composite geotextile matting in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The conditions which occur during the construction of the project will determine the final quantity of the concrete composite geotextile matting placed. The quantity may be increased, decreased or eliminated entirely as directed. Such variations in quantity will not be considered as alterations in the details of construction or a change in the character of the work.

Materials

(A) Concrete Composite Geotextile Matting

The CCGM shall be a shall be a polyester fiber matrix impregnated with cement and PVC backed, manufactured in rolls that hardens when hydrated and conforms to the shape of the channel or slope offering protection from hydraulic forces and debris. The material shall be of the thickness specified in the plans with the following minimum properties:

TYPE	Thickness (inch) ASTM 5199	Roll Width (ft)	Dry Weight (lb/ft²) ASTM 5933	Compressive Strength (psi) ASTM C773	Tensile Strength (MD) (lb/in) ASTM D5035
1	0.2	3.25	1.40	5800	40
2	0.3	3.5	2.40	5800	49
3	0.5	3.5	3.80	5800	110

(B) Anchors

The CCGM shall be secured in place using heavy-duty wire staples or metal spikes or as per manufacturer's recommendations.

- (i) Wire Staples shall be machine made of No. 9 gauge new steel wire formed into a U-shape. The size when formed shall be a minimum of 6 inch in length with a throat of not less than 1-1/2 inches in width.
- (ii) Metal Spikes shall be fabricated of No. 9 gauge new steel wire 10 inches in length with a minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter metal washer specifically designed to pin the CCGM to the soil.

Construction Methods

Provide a smooth soil surface free from stones, clods or debris that will prevent the contact of the CCGM with the soil. Preserve the required line, grade and cross section of the area covered. Cut trenches for initial anchoring and termination and longitudinal anchoring and bury edges per manufacturer's requirements. Unroll CCGM in the direction of the flow of water apply without stretching so that it will lie smoothly but loosely on the soil surface. Successive panels should be installed with the upstream panel overlapping the downstream panel. Overlap CCGM panels 4 inches to seal additional panels or per manufacturer's recommendation and screw or seal seams per manufacturer's recommendation. Install anchors at a minimum 4 feet on center or per manufacturer's recommended spacing to adequately secure the panel to the soil.

Prior to hydration, inspect panels for damage and repair according to manufacturer's requirements. Panels that connect be repaired shall be replaced.

In areas adjacent to streams or wetlands, install silt fence, temporary diversions or earth berms to prevent potential hydration runoff from entering streams or wetlands or drainage conveyances that

would carry the runoff to these jurisdictional resources as directed by the Engineer. Payment for containment will be made as provided elsewhere in the contract.

Hydrate the CCGM panel by spraying water in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements. Spraying should occur in multiple applications to fully saturate the material without creating water runoff. Do not hydrate the panels if temperatures are expected to be below 32 degrees within 8 hours of completion of hydration process unless approved by the Engineer.

Measurement and Payment

Concrete Composite Geotextile Matting will be measured and paid in square yards as measured along the surface of the ground, properly installed and accepted. Such payment will be full compensation including but not limited to furnishing and installing the Concrete Composite Geotextile and necessary anchors, tools, equipment, labor and incidentals necessary to complete this work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Concrete Composite Geotextile Matting

Pay Unit

Square Yard

ST-1

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

Project Special Provisions Structure

Table of Contents

<u>Special Provisions</u>	<u>Page</u>
Precast Reinforced Concrete Three-Sided Culvert at Station 12+35.00 -L- (12-12-13)	ST-2
Crane Safety (6-20-19)	ST-9
Falsework and Formwork (4-5-12)	ST-10
Submittal of Working Drawings (1-29-21)	ST-17
Grout for Structures (12-1-17)	ST-23
Asbestos Assessment (12-30-15)	ST-24
Concrete Slab Below Guardrail (SPECIAL)	ST-27



ST-2

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

PRECAST REINFORCED CONCRETE THREE SIDED CULVERT AT STATION 12+35.00 -L-

(12-12-13)

1.0 GENERAL

This Special Provision covers the design, fabrication and installation of precast reinforced concrete three sided culverts intended for the conveyance of storm water.

Provide a precast reinforced concrete three sided culvert that meets the requirements of Section 1077 and any other applicable sections of the Standard Specifications. Design the precast reinforced concrete three sided culvert in accordance with the current edition of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications. Rate all sizes of precast reinforced concrete three sided culverts in accordance with the current edition of the AASHTO Manual for Bridge Evaluation. Ensure the culvert rates for the AASHTO design loads and North Carolina's legal loads (see Section 2.0 for North Carolina's legal loads). Detail the culvert with cast-in-place footings, wings walls and headwalls. Precast wing walls and headwalls will be allowed. Precast footings will not be allowed.

The design and rating of the precast and cast-in-place members is the responsibility of the Contractor and is subject to review, comments and approval. Submit two sets of detailed plans and rating sheets for review. Include all details in the plans, including the size and spacing of the required reinforcement necessary to build the precast and cast-in-place members. Include wing wall, footing and headwall connection details in the plans. Have a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer check and seal the plans, rating sheets and design calculations. After the plans, rating sheets and design calculations are reviewed and, if necessary, the corrections made, submit one set of plans and rating sheets on 22" x 34" sheets to become part of the contract plans.

A pre-installation meeting is required. Representatives from the Contractor, the precast manufacturer, and the Department should attend this meeting. The precast manufacturer's representative shall be on site during installation.

ST-3

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

2.0 NORTH CAROLINA'S LEGAL LOADS

Apply the following legal loads to all structures carrying interstate traffic:

SINGLE VEHICLE(SV)		TRUCK TRACTOR SEMI-TRAILER(TTST)	
REF. #	SCHEMATIC	REF. #	SCHEMATIC
SH		T4A	
S3A		T5B	
S3C		T6A	
S4A		T7A	
S5A		T7B	
S6A			
S7A			
S7B			

ST-4

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

Apply the following legal loads to all structures carrying non-interstate traffic:

SINGLE VEHICLE (SV)			TRUCK TRACTOR SEMI-TRAILER (TTS T)		
REF. #	SCHEMATIC		REF. #	SCHEMATIC	
SNSH		27K 13.5 TON	TNAGRIT3		33 Ton
SNGARBS2		40K 20 TON	TNT4A		66.15K 33.075 TON
SNAGRIS2		44K 22 Ton	TNAGRIT4		86K 43 TON
SNCOTTS3		54.5K 27.25 TON	TNAGT5A		90K 45 TON
SNAGGRS4		69.85K 34.925 TON	TNAGT5B		90K 45 TON
SNS5A		71.1K 35.55 TON	TNT6A		83.2K 41.6 TON
SNS6A		79.9K 39.95 TON	TNT7A		84K 42 TON
SNS7B		84K 42 TON	TNT7B		84K 42 TON

3.0 PRECAST REINFORCED CONCRETE THREE SIDED CULVERT SECTIONS

The precast reinforced concrete three sided culvert sections shall match the size and hydraulic opening indicated in the contract plans. The invert and footings shall be constructed in accordance with the design plans.

A. Design Details

1. Design Fill – The design earth cover is reported on the plans as the elevation difference between the point of maximum fill and the bottom of the top slab.
2. Placement of Reinforcement – Provide 1” of concrete cover over the reinforcement subject to the provisions of Section E. Detail the clear distance of the end wires to be not less than ½” or more than 2” from the ends of the precast unit. The exposure of the ends of the wires used to position the reinforcement is not a cause for rejection.
3. Laps and Spacing – Use lap splices for the transverse reinforcement. Detail the transverse wires so that the center to center spacing is not less than 2 inches or more than 4 inches. Do not detail the longitudinal wires with a center to center spacing of more than 8 inches.

B. Joints

The precast reinforced concrete three-sided culvert sections shall be produced with flat-butt ends. Design and form the ends of the precast sections in a manner that produces a continuous line with a smooth interior when the sections are laid together. The precast sections shall be free of appreciable irregularities along the length and compatible with the permissible variations given in Section E.

C. Manufacture

Manufacture precast reinforced concrete three sided culvert sections by either the wet cast method or dry cast method.

1. Mixture – In addition to the requirements of Section 1077 of the Standard Specifications, do not proportion the mix with less than 564 lb/yd³ of portland cement.
2. Strength – Concrete shall develop a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 5000 psi. Movement of the precast sections should be minimized during the initial curing period. Any damage caused by moving or handling will be grounds for rejection of that precast section.
3. Air Entrainment – Air entrain the concrete in accordance with Section 1077 - 5(A) of the Standard Specifications. For dry cast manufacturing, air entrainment is not required.

ST-6

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

4. Testing – Test the concrete in accordance with the requirements of Section 1077 - 5(B).
5. Handling – Handling devices or holes are permitted in each section for the purpose of handling and placing. Submit details of handling devices or holes for approval and do not cast any concrete until approval is granted. Remove all handling devices flush with concrete surfaces as directed. Fill holes in a neat and workmanlike manner with an approved non-metallic non-shrink grout, concrete, or hole plug.

D. Physical Requirements

Acceptability of precast sections is based on concrete cylinders made and tested in accordance with ASTM C31 and ASTM C39.

E. Permissible Variations

Produce sections that meet the requirements of ASTM C1504 Section 11. All external surfaces shall be flat, true, and plumb. Irregularities, depressions, or high spots on all external surfaces shall not exceed ½” in 8 feet.

F. Marking

Mark each section in accordance with ASTM C1504 Section 15. Each section shall be clearly marked on the inner surface.

G. Installation

1. Excavation – Unclassified Structure Excavation shall be performed in accordance with the Standard Specifications. Remove all material necessary to construct the precast reinforced concrete three sided culvert.
2. Footings – Install precast culvert sections and, when applicable, precast wing walls on cast-in-place reinforced concrete footings. The footings shall have a smooth float finish and shall conform to the lines and grades shown on the plans.
3. Placement – Arrange for a manufacturer’s representative to be on site during installation of all precast culvert sections. Place the precast culvert sections as shown on the design plans. Set sections on 6” x 6” masonite or steel shims located at support points and as recommended by the manufacturer. Provide 2” of stacked shims between the footing and the bottom of the vertical walls. In case of irregularities between the two surfaces, provide a minimum of ½” of shims under any point to assure a minimum of ½” gap between the two surfaces. Fill the gap with non-shrink grout.
4. Joints – Cover the flat-butt joints with a joint wrap not less than 12” in width. Thoroughly clean the surface of the section from all dirt and dust before applying the joint wrap. Provide an external wrap that meets the criteria of ASTM C877 or an

approved equal. Cover the joint by starting at the bottom of one precast section leg, crossing the top of the precast section, and stopping at the bottom of the opposite precast section leg. Minimize the number of laps. When laps are necessary, provide a 6" minimum lap length and place the overlap in the downward direction. Prime the section ends prior to placing the wrap material when the air temperature is below 50° F. Provide primer that meets the joint wrap manufacturer's recommendations and is approved by the Engineer. During backfilling operations, keep the joint wrap material in its proper location.

5. Select Backfill – Backfilling operations shall be performed in accordance with the Standard Specifications. Provide select backfill that meets the requirements of the Standard Specifications and the manufacturer's recommendations. Compact backfill in loose eight inch or less lifts and to a density that is greater than or equal to 95 percent of the maximum dry density as determined by AASHTO T99 or ASTM D698.

4.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

The Precast Reinforced Concrete Three Sided Culvert as described on the plans and in this Special Provision will be paid for at the contract lump sum price for "Precast Reinforced Concrete Three Sided Culvert at Station _____". Such price and payment (excluding the cast-in-place footings, wing walls and headwalls) will be full compensation for all work covered by this Special Provision, the plans and applicable parts of the Standard Specifications and will include, but not be limited to, furnishing all labor, materials, equipment and other incidentals necessary to complete this work. Such price and payment will also be full compensation for concrete, reinforcing steel, labor, equipment and all other related materials necessary for the completion of the precast reinforced concrete three sided sections.

No separate payment will be made for select backfill material. The entire cost of providing select backfill, including hauling, furnishing, and placing backfill material shall be included in the lump sum price for "Precast Reinforced Concrete Three Sided Culvert at Station _____".

Design and construction of the footings, wing walls, and headwalls will be paid for at the contract unit price per cubic yard for "Class A Concrete". This price shall include, but not be limited to, furnishing all concrete, reinforcing steel, labor, equipment and all other related materials necessary to complete the work.

Unclassified Structure Excavation required for constructing the precast reinforced concrete three sided culvert will be paid for in accordance with the Standard Specifications and will not be a part of these pay items.

Payment will be made under:

ST-8

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

Precast Reinforced Concrete Three Sided Culvert at Station _____ Lump Sum

Class A Concrete _____ Cubic Yards

ST-9

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

CRANE SAFETY

(6-20-19)

Comply with the manufacturer specifications and limitations applicable to the operation of any and all cranes and derricks. Prime contractors, sub-contractors, and fully operated rental companies shall comply with the current Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) regulations.

Submit all items listed below to the Engineer prior to beginning crane operations. Changes in personnel or equipment must be reported to the Engineer and all applicable items listed below must be updated and submitted prior to continuing with crane operations.

CRANE SAFETY SUBMITTAL LIST

- A. **Competent Person:** Provide the name and qualifications of the “Competent Person” responsible for crane safety and lifting operations. The named competent person will have the responsibility and authority to stop any work activity due to safety concerns.
- B. **Riggers:** Provide the qualifications and experience of the persons responsible for rigging operations. Qualifications and experience should include, but not be limited to, weight calculations, center of gravity determinations, selection and inspection of sling and rigging equipment, and safe rigging practices.
- C. **Crane Inspections:** Inspection records for all cranes shall be current and readily accessible for review upon request.
- D. **Certifications:** Crane operators shall be certified by the National Commission for the Certification of Crane Operators (NCCCO) or the National Center for Construction Education and Research (NCCER). Other approved nationally accredited programs will be considered upon request. In addition, crane operators shall have a current CDL medical card. Submit a list of crane operator(s) and include current certification for each type of crane operated (small hydraulic, large hydraulic, small lattice, large lattice) and medical evaluations for each operator.

FALSEWORK AND FORMWORK

(4-5-12)

1.0 DESCRIPTION

Use this Special Provision as a guide to develop temporary works submittals required by the Standard Specifications or other provisions; no additional submittals are required herein. Such temporary works include, but are not limited to, falsework and formwork.

Falsework is any temporary construction used to support the permanent structure until it becomes self-supporting. Formwork is the temporary structure or mold used to retain plastic or fluid concrete in its designated shape until it hardens. Access scaffolding is a temporary structure that functions as a work platform that supports construction personnel, materials, and tools, but is not intended to support the structure. Scaffolding systems that are used to temporarily support permanent structures (as opposed to functioning as work platforms) are considered to be falsework under the definitions given. Shoring is a component of falsework such as horizontal, vertical, or inclined support members. Where the term “temporary works” is used, it includes all of the temporary facilities used in bridge construction that do not become part of the permanent structure.

Design and construct safe and adequate temporary works that will support all loads imposed and provide the necessary rigidity to achieve the lines and grades shown on the plans in the final structure.

2.0 MATERIALS

Select materials suitable for temporary works; however, select materials that also ensure the safety and quality required by the design assumptions. The Engineer has authority to reject material on the basis of its condition, inappropriate use, safety, or nonconformance with the plans. Clearly identify allowable loads or stresses for all materials or manufactured devices on the plans. Revise the plan and notify the Engineer if any change to materials or material strengths is required.

3.0 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Working Drawings

Provide working drawings for items as specified in the contract, or as required by the Engineer, with design calculations and supporting data in sufficient detail to permit a structural and safety review of the proposed design of the temporary work.

On the drawings, show all information necessary to allow the design of any component to be checked independently as determined by the Engineer.

When concrete placement is involved, include data such as the drawings of proposed sequence, rate of placement, direction of placement, and location of all construction joints. Submit the number of copies as called for by the contract.

ST-11

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

When required, have the drawings and calculations prepared under the guidance of, and sealed by, a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer who is knowledgeable in temporary works design.

If requested by the Engineer, submit with the working drawings manufacturer's catalog data listing the weight of all construction equipment that will be supported on the temporary work. Show anticipated total settlements and/or deflections of falsework and forms on the working drawings. Include falsework footing settlements, joint take-up, and deflection of beams or girders.

As an option for the Contractor, overhang falsework hangers may be uniformly spaced, at a maximum of 36 inches, provided the following conditions are met:

Member Type (PCG)	Member Depth, (inches)	Max. Overhang Width, (inches)	Max. Slab Edge Thickness, (inches)	Max. Screenshot Wheel Weight, (lbs.)	Bracket Min. Vertical Leg Extension, (inches)
II	36	39	14	2000	26
III	45	42	14	2000	35
IV	54	45	14	2000	44
MBT	63	51	12	2000	50
MBT	72	55	12	1700	48

Overhang width is measured from the centerline of the girder to the edge of the deck slab.

For Type II, III & IV prestressed concrete girders (PCG), 45-degree cast-in-place half hangers and rods must have a minimum safe working load of 6,000 lbs.

For MBT prestressed concrete girders, 45-degree angle holes for falsework hanger rods shall be cast through the girder top flange and located, measuring along the top of the member, 1'-2 1/2" from the edge of the top flange. Hanger hardware and rods must have a minimum safe working load of 6,000 lbs.

The overhang bracket provided for the diagonal leg shall have a minimum safe working load of 3,750 lbs. The vertical leg of the bracket shall extend to the point that the heel bears on the girder bottom flange, no closer than 4 inches from the bottom of the member. However, for 72-inch members, the heel of the bracket shall bear on the web, near the bottom flange transition.

Provide adequate overhang falsework and determine the appropriate adjustments for deck geometry, equipment, casting procedures and casting conditions.

If the optional overhang falsework spacing is used, indicate this on the falsework submittal and advise the girder producer of the proposed details. Failure to notify the Engineer of hanger type and hanger spacing on prestressed concrete girder casting drawings may delay the approval of those drawings.

ST-12

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

Falsework hangers that support concentrated loads and are installed at the edge of thin top flange concrete girders (such as bulb tee girders) shall be spaced so as not to exceed 75% of the manufacturer's stated safe working load. Use of dual leg hangers (such as Meadow Burke HF-42 and HF-43) are not allowed on concrete girders with thin top flanges. Design the falsework and forms supporting deck slabs and overhangs on girder bridges so that there will be no differential settlement between the girders and the deck forms during placement of deck concrete.

When staged construction of the bridge deck is required, detail falsework and forms for screed and fluid concrete loads to be independent of any previous deck pour components when the mid-span girder deflection due to deck weight is greater than $\frac{3}{4}$ ".

Note on the working drawings any anchorages, connectors, inserts, steel sleeves or other such devices used as part of the falsework or formwork that remains in the permanent structure. If the plan notes indicate that the structure contains the necessary corrosion protection required for a Corrosive Site, epoxy coat, galvanize or metalize these devices. Electroplating will not be allowed. Any coating required by the Engineer will be considered incidental to the various pay items requiring temporary works.

ST-13

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

Design falsework and formwork requiring submittals in accordance with the 1995 AASHTO *Guide Design Specifications for Bridge Temporary Works* except as noted herein.

1. Wind Loads

Table 2.2 of Article 2.2.5.1 is modified to include wind velocities up to 110 mph. In addition, Table 2.2A is included to provide the maximum wind speeds by county in North Carolina.

Table 2.2 - Wind Pressure Values

Height Zone feet above ground	Pressure, lb/ft ² for Indicated Wind Velocity, mph				
	70	80	90	100	110
0 to 30	15	20	25	30	35
30 to 50	20	25	30	35	40
50 to 100	25	30	35	40	45
over 100	30	35	40	45	50

2. Time of Removal

The following requirements replace those of Article 3.4.8.2.

Do not remove forms until the concrete has attained strengths required in Article 420-16 of the Standard Specifications and these Special Provisions.

Do not remove forms until the concrete has sufficient strength to prevent damage to the surface.

ST-14

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

Table 2.2A - Steady State Maximum Wind Speeds by Counties in North Carolina

COUNTY	25 YR (mph)	COUNTY	25 YR (mph)	COUNTY	25 YR (mph)
Alamance	70	Franklin	70	Pamlico	100
Alexander	70	Gaston	70	Pasquotank	100
Alleghany	70	Gates	90	Pender	100
Anson	70	Graham	80	Perquimans	100
Ashe	70	Granville	70	Person	70
Avery	70	Greene	80	Pitt	90
Beaufort	100	Guilford	70	Polk	80
Bertie	90	Halifax	80	Randolph	70
Bladen	90	Harnett	70	Richmond	70
Brunswick	100	Haywood	80	Robeson	80
Buncombe	80	Henderson	80	Rockingham	70
Burke	70	Hertford	90	Rowan	70
Cabarrus	70	Hoke	70	Rutherford	70
Caldwell	70	Hyde	110	Sampson	90
Camden	100	Iredell	70	Scotland	70
Carteret	110	Jackson	80	Stanley	70
Caswell	70	Johnston	80	Stokes	70
Catawba	70	Jones	100	Surry	70
Cherokee	80	Lee	70	Swain	80
Chatham	70	Lenoir	90	Transylvania	80
Chowan	90	Lincoln	70	Tyrell	100
Clay	80	Macon	80	Union	70
Cleveland	70	Madison	80	Vance	70
Columbus	90	Martin	90	Wake	70
Craven	100	McDowell	70	Warren	70
Cumberland	80	Mecklenburg	70	Washington	100
Currituck	100	Mitchell	70	Watauga	70
Dare	110	Montgomery	70	Wayne	80
Davidson	70	Moore	70	Wilkes	70
Davie	70	Nash	80	Wilson	80
Duplin	90	New Hanover	100	Yadkin	70
Durham	70	Northampton	80	Yancey	70
Edgecombe	80	Onslow	100		
Forsyth	70	Orange	70		

B. Review and Approval

The Engineer is responsible for the review and approval of temporary works' drawings.

Submit the working drawings sufficiently in advance of proposed use to allow for their review, revision (if needed), and approval without delay to the work.

The time period for review of the working drawings does not begin until complete drawings and design calculations, when required, are received by the Engineer.

Do not start construction of any temporary work for which working drawings are required until the drawings have been approved. Such approval does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for the accuracy and adequacy of the working drawings.

4.0 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

All requirements of Section 420 of the Standard Specifications apply.

Construct temporary works in conformance with the approved working drawings. Ensure that the quality of materials and workmanship employed is consistent with that assumed in the design of the temporary works. Do not weld falsework members to any portion of the permanent structure unless approved. Show any welding to the permanent structure on the approved construction drawings.

Provide tell-tales attached to the forms and extending to the ground, or other means, for accurate measurement of falsework settlement. Make sure that the anticipated compressive settlement and/or deflection of falsework does not exceed 1 inch. For cast-in-place concrete structures, make sure that the calculated deflection of falsework flexural members does not exceed 1/240 of their span regardless of whether or not the deflection is compensated by camber strips.

A. Maintenance and Inspection

Inspect and maintain the temporary work in an acceptable condition throughout the period of its use. Certify that the manufactured devices have been maintained in a condition to allow them to safely carry their rated loads. Clearly mark each piece so that its capacity can be readily determined at the job site.

Perform an in-depth inspection of an applicable portion(s) of the temporary works, in the presence of the Engineer, not more than 24 hours prior to the beginning of each concrete placement. Inspect other temporary works at least once a month to ensure that they are functioning properly. Have a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer inspect the cofferdams, shoring, sheathing, support of excavation structures, and support systems for load tests prior to loading.

B. Foundations

Determine the safe bearing capacity of the foundation material on which the supports for temporary works rest. If required by the Engineer, conduct load tests to verify proposed bearing capacity values that are marginal or in other high-risk situations.

The use of the foundation support values shown on the contract plans of the permanent structure is permitted if the foundations are on the same level and on the same soil as those of the permanent structure.

Allow for adequate site drainage or soil protection to prevent soil saturation and washout of the soil supporting the temporary works supports.

If piles are used, the estimation of capacities and later confirmation during construction using standard procedures based on the driving characteristics of the pile is permitted. If preferred, use load tests to confirm the estimated capacities; or, if required by the Engineer conduct load tests to verify bearing capacity values that are marginal or in other high risk situations.

The Engineer reviews and approves the proposed pile and soil bearing capacities.

5.0 REMOVAL

Unless otherwise permitted, remove and keep all temporary works upon completion of the work. Do not disturb or otherwise damage the finished work.

Remove temporary works in conformance with the contract documents. Remove them in such a manner as to permit the structure to uniformly and gradually take the stresses due to its own weight.

6.0 METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

Unless otherwise specified, temporary works will not be directly measured.

7.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment at the contract unit prices for the various pay items requiring temporary works will be full compensation for the above falsework and formwork.

SUBMITTAL OF WORKING DRAWINGS

(1-29-21)

8.0 GENERAL

Submit working drawings in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *Standard Specifications* and this provision. For this provision, “submittals” refers to only those listed in this provision. The list of submittals contained herein does not represent a list of required submittals for the project. Submittals are only necessary for those items as required by the contract. Make submittals that are not specifically noted in this provision directly to the Engineer. Either the Structures Management Unit or the Geotechnical Engineering Unit or both units will jointly review submittals.

If a submittal contains variations from plan details or specifications or significantly affects project cost, field construction or operations, discuss the submittal with and submit all copies to the Engineer. State the reason for the proposed variation in the submittal. To minimize review time, make sure all submittals are complete when initially submitted. Provide a contact name and information with each submittal. Direct any questions regarding submittal requirements to the Engineer, Structures Management Unit contacts or the Geotechnical Engineering Unit contacts noted below.

In order to facilitate in-plant inspection by NCDOT and approval of working drawings, provide the name, address and telephone number of the facility where fabrication will actually be done if different than shown on the title block of the submitted working drawings. This includes, but is not limited to, precast concrete items, prestressed concrete items and fabricated steel or aluminum items.

9.0 ADDRESSES AND CONTACTS

For submittals to the Structures Management Unit, use the following addresses:

Via US mail:

Mr. B. C. Hanks, P. E.
State Structures Engineer
North Carolina Department
of Transportation
Structures Management Unit
1581 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1581

Attention: Mr. J. L. Bolden, P. E.

Via other delivery service:

Mr. B. C. Hanks, P. E.
State Structures Engineer
North Carolina Department
of Transportation
Structures Management Unit
1000 Birch Ridge Drive
Raleigh, NC 27610

Attention: Mr. J. L. Bolden, P. E.

Submittals may also be made via email.

Send submittals to:

jlbolden@ncdot.gov (James Bolden)

Send an additional e-copy of the submittal to the following address:

eomile@ncdot.gov (Emmanuel Omile)

ST-18

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

mrorie@ncdot.gov (Madonna Rorie)

For submittals to the Geotechnical Engineering Unit, use the following addresses:

For projects in Divisions 1-7, use the following Eastern Regional Office address:

Via US mail:

Mr. David Hering, L. G., P. E.
Eastern Regional Geotechnical
Manager
North Carolina Department
of Transportation
Geotechnical Engineering Unit
Eastern Regional Office
1570 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1570

Via other delivery service:

Mr. David Hering, L. G., P. E.
Eastern Regional Geotechnical
Manager
North Carolina Department
of Transportation
Geotechnical Engineering Unit
Eastern Regional Office
3301 Jones Sausage Road, Suite 100
Garner, NC 27529

Via Email: EastGeotechnicalSubmittal@ncdot.gov

For projects in Divisions 8-14, use the following Western Regional Office address:

Via US mail or other delivery service:

Mr. Eric Williams, P. E.
Western Regional Geotechnical
Manager
North Carolina Department
of Transportation
Geotechnical Engineering Unit
Western Regional Office
5253 Z Max Boulevard
Harrisburg, NC 28075

Via Email: WestGeotechnicalSubmittal@ncdot.gov

The status of the review of structure-related submittals sent to the Structures Management Unit can be viewed from the Unit's website, via the "Drawing Submittal Status" link.

The status of the review of geotechnical-related submittals sent to the Geotechnical Engineering Unit can be viewed from the Unit's website, via the "Geotechnical Construction Submittals" link.

Direct any questions concerning submittal review status, review comments or drawing markups to the following contacts:

Primary Structures Contact: James Bolden (919) 707 – 6408
(919) 250 – 4082 facsimile
jlbolden@ncdot.gov

ST-19

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

Secondary Structures Contacts: Emmanuel Omile (919) 707 – 6451
Madonna Rorie (919) 707 – 6508

Eastern Regional Geotechnical Contact (Divisions 1-7):
David Hering (919) 662 – 4710
dthering@ncdot.gov

Western Regional Geotechnical Contact (Divisions 8-14):
Eric Williams (704) 455 – 8902
ewilliams3@ncdot.gov

10.0 SUBMITTAL COPIES

Furnish one complete copy of each submittal, including all attachments, to the Engineer. At the same time, submit the number of hard copies shown below of the same complete submittal directly to the Structures Management Unit and/or the Geotechnical Engineering Unit.

The first table below covers “Structure Submittals”. The Engineer will receive review comments and drawing markups for these submittals from the Structures Management Unit. The second table in this section covers “Geotechnical Submittals”. The Engineer will receive review comments and drawing markups for these submittals from the Geotechnical Engineering Unit.

Unless otherwise required, submit one set of supporting calculations to either the Structures Management Unit or the Geotechnical Engineering Unit unless both units require submittal copies in which case submit a set of supporting calculations to each unit. Provide additional copies of any submittal as directed.

STRUCTURE SUBMITTALS

Submittal	Copies Required by Structures Management Unit	Copies Required by Geotechnical Engineering Unit	Contract Reference Requiring Submittal ¹
Arch Culvert Falsework	5	0	Plan Note, SN Sheet & “Falsework and Formwork”
Box Culvert Falsework ⁷	5	0	Plan Note, SN Sheet & “Falsework and Formwork”
Cofferdams	6	2	Article 410-4
Foam Joint Seals ⁶	9	0	“Foam Joint Seals”

ST-20

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

Expansion Joint Seals (hold down plate type with base angle)	9	0	“Expansion Joint Seals”
Expansion Joint Seals (modular)	2, then 9	0	“Modular Expansion Joint Seals”
Expansion Joint Seals (strip seals)	9	0	“Strip Seals”
Falsework & Forms ² (substructure)	8	0	Article 420-3 & “Falsework and Formwork”
Falsework & Forms (superstructure)	8	0	Article 420-3 & “Falsework and Formwork”
Girder Erection over Railroad	5	0	Railroad Provisions
Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Beneath Proposed Structure	8	0	“Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Beneath Proposed Structure at Station ____”
Metal Bridge Railing	8	0	Plan Note
Metal Stay-in-Place Forms	8	0	Article 420-3
Metalwork for Elastomeric Bearings ^{4,5}	7	0	Article 1072-8
Miscellaneous Metalwork ^{4,5}	7	0	Article 1072-8
Disc Bearings ⁴	8	0	“Disc Bearings”
Overhead and Digital Message Signs (DMS) (metalwork and foundations)	13	0	Applicable Provisions
Placement of Equipment on Structures (cranes, etc.)	7	0	Article 420-20
Precast Concrete Box Culverts	2, then 1 reproducible	0	“Optional Precast Reinforced Concrete Box Culvert at Station ____”
Prestressed Concrete Cored Slab (detensioning sequences) ³	6	0	Article 1078-11
Prestressed Concrete Deck Panels	6 and 1 reproducible	0	Article 420-3

ST-21

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

Prestressed Concrete Girder (strand elongation and detensioning sequences)	6	0	Articles 1078-8 and 1078- 11
Removal of Existing Structure over Railroad	5	0	Railroad Provisions
Revised Bridge Deck Plans (adaptation to prestressed deck panels)	2, then 1 reproducible	0	Article 420-3
Revised Bridge Deck Plans (adaptation to modular expansion joint seals)	2, then 1 reproducible	0	“Modular Expansion Joint Seals”
Sound Barrier Wall (precast items)	10	0	Article 1077-2 & “Sound Barrier Wall”
Sound Barrier Wall Steel Fabrication Plans ⁵	7	0	Article 1072-8 & “Sound Barrier Wall”
Structural Steel ⁴	2, then 7	0	Article 1072-8
Temporary Detour Structures	10	2	Article 400-3 & “Construction, Maintenance and Removal of Temporary Structure at Station _____”
TFE Expansion Bearings ⁴	8	0	Article 1072-8

FOOTNOTES

1. References are provided to help locate the part of the contract where the submittals are required. References in quotes refer to the provision by that name. Articles refer to the *Standard Specifications*.
2. Submittals for these items are necessary only when required by a note on plans.
3. Submittals for these items may not be required. A list of pre-approved sequences is available from the producer or the Materials & Tests Unit.
4. The fabricator may submit these items directly to the Structures Management Unit.
5. The two sets of preliminary submittals required by Article 1072-8 of the *Standard Specifications* are not required for these items.
6. Submittals for Fabrication Drawings are not required. Submittals for Catalogue Cuts of Proposed Material are required. See Section 5.A of the referenced provision.
7. Submittals are necessary only when the top slab thickness is 18” or greater.

ST-22

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

GEOTECHNICAL SUBMITTALS

Submittal	Copies Required by Geotechnical Engineering Unit	Copies Required by Structures Management Unit	Contract Reference Requiring Submittal ¹
Drilled Pier Construction Plans ²	1	0	Subarticle 411-3(A)
Crosshole Sonic Logging (CSL) Reports ²	1	0	Subarticle 411-5(A)(2)
Pile Driving Equipment Data Forms ^{2,3}	1	0	Subarticle 450-3(D)(2)
Pile Driving Analyzer (PDA) Reports ²	1	0	Subarticle 450-3(F)(3)
Retaining Walls ⁴	1 drawings, 1 calculations	2 drawings	Applicable Provisions
Temporary Shoring ⁴	1 drawings, 1 calculations	2 drawings	“Temporary Shoring” & “Temporary Soil Nail Walls”

FOOTNOTES

1. References are provided to help locate the part of the contract where the submittals are required. References in quotes refer to the provision by that name. Subarticles refer to the *Standard Specifications*.
2. Submit one hard copy of submittal to the Engineer. Submit a second copy of submittal electronically (PDF via email), US mail or other delivery service to the appropriate Geotechnical Engineering Unit regional office. Electronic submission is preferred.
3. The Pile Driving Equipment Data Form is available from:
https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Geological/Pages/Geotech_Forms_Details.aspx
See second page of form for submittal instructions.
4. Electronic copy of submittal is required. See referenced provision.

ST-23

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

GROUT FOR STRUCTURES

(12-1-17)

11.0 DESCRIPTION

This special provision addresses grout for use in pile blockouts, grout pockets, shear keys, dowel holes and recesses for structures. This provision does not apply to grout placed in post-tensioning ducts for bridge beams, girders, decks, end bent caps, or bent caps. Mix and place grout in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, the applicable sections of the Standard Specifications and this provision.

12.0 MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Unless otherwise noted on the plans, use a Type 3 Grout in accordance with Section 1003 of the Standard Specifications.

Initial setting time shall not be less than 10 minutes when tested in accordance with ASTM C266.

Construction loading and traffic loading shall not be allowed until the 3 day compressive strength is achieved.

13.0 SAMPLING AND PLACEMENT

Place and maintain components in final position until grout placement is complete and accepted. Concrete surfaces to receive grout shall be free of defective concrete, laitance, oil, grease and other foreign matter. Saturate concrete surfaces with clean water and remove excess water prior to placing grout.

14.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for "Grout for Structures". The cost of the material, equipment, labor, placement, and any incidentals necessary to complete the work shall be considered incidental to the structure item requiring grout.

ASBESTOS ASSESSMENT FOR BRIDGE DEMOLITION AND RENOVATION ACTIVITIES

(12-30-15)

1.0 INSPECTION FOR ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL

Prior to conducting bridge demolition or renovation activities, the Contractor shall thoroughly inspect the bridge or affected components for the presence of asbestos containing material (ACM) using a firm prequalified by NCDOT to perform asbestos surveys. The inspection must be performed by a N.C. accredited asbestos inspector with experience inspecting bridges or other industrial structures. The N.C. accredited asbestos inspector must conduct a thorough inspection, identifying all asbestos-containing material as required by the Environmental Protection Agency National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAP) Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 40 CFR, Part 61, Subpart M.

The Contractor shall submit an inspection report to the Engineer, which at a minimum must include information required in 40 CFR 763.85 (a)(4) vi)(A)-(E), as well as a project location map, photos of existing structure, the date of inspection and the name, N.C. accreditation number, and signature of the N.C. accredited asbestos inspector who performed the inspection and completed the report. The cover sheet of the report shall include project identification information. Place the following notes on the cover sheet of the report and check the appropriate box:

- ACM was found
 ACM was not found

2.0 REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL

If ACM is found, notify the Engineer. Compensation for removal and disposal of ACM is considered extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the Standard Specifications.

An Asbestos Removal Permit must be obtained from the Health Hazards Control Unit (HHCU) of the N.C. Department of Health & Human Services, Division of Public Health, if more than 35 cubic feet, 160 square feet, or 260 linear feet of regulated ACM (RACM) is to be removed from a structure and this work must be completed by a contractor prequalified by NCDOT to perform asbestos abatement. RACM is defined in 40 CFR, Part 61, Subpart M. Note: 40 CFR 763.85 (a)(4) vi)(D) defines ACM as surfacing, TSI and Miscellaneous which does not meet the NESHAP RACM.

3.0 DEMOLITION NOTIFICATION

Even if no ACM is found (or if quantities are less than those required for a permit), a Demolition Notification (DHHS-3768) must be submitted to the HHCU. Notifications and Asbestos Permit applications require an original signature and must be submitted to the HHCU 10 working days prior to beginning demolition activities. The 10 working day period starts based on the post-marked date or date of hand delivery. Demolition that does not begin as originally notified requires submission of a separate revision form HHCU 3768-R to

ST-25

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

HHCU. Reference the North Carolina Administrative Code, Chapter 10A, Subchapter 41C, Article .0605 for directives on revision submissions.

Contact Information

Health Hazards Control Unit (HHCU)
N.C. Department of Health and Human Services
1912 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1912
Telephone: (919) 707-5950
Fax: (919) 870-4808

4.0 SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

Buncombe, Forsyth, and Mecklenburg counties also have asbestos permitting and NESHAP requirements must be followed. For projects involving permitted RACM removals, both the applicable county and the state (HHCU) must be notified.

For demolitions with no RACM, only the local environmental agencies must be notified. Contact information is as follows:

Buncombe County

WNC Regional Air Pollution Control Agency
49 Mt. Carmel Road
Asheville, NC 28806
(828) 250-6777

Forsyth County

Environmental Affairs Department
537 N. Spruce Street
Winston-Salem, NC 27101
(336) 703-2440

Mecklenburg County

Land Use and Environmental Services Agency
Mecklenburg Air Quality
700 N. Tryon Street
Charlotte, NC 28202
(704) 336-5430

5.0 ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Additional information may be found on N.C. asbestos rules, regulations, procedures and N.C. accredited inspectors, as well as associated forms for demolition notifications and asbestos permit applications at the N.C. Asbestos Hazard Management Program website:

www.epi.state.nc.us/epi/asbestos/ahmp.html

6.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment for the work required in this provision will be at the lump sum contract unit price for “Asbestos Assessment”. Such payment will be full compensation for all asbestos inspections, reports, permitting and notifications.

ST-27

17BP.5.R.88

Warren County

CONCRETE SLAB BELOW GUARDRAIL

(SPECIAL)

1.0 GENERAL

This Special Provision covers the cast in place concrete slab below the guardrail. Provide a concrete slab with smooth finish on top in accordance with plans and Standard Specifications. Guardrail posts shall be set in place and secured by formwork and bracing prior to making concrete pour. Concrete slab elevation and dimensions shall be as per plans. Bottom of concrete slab shall be at least three inches above top of precast concrete culvert at its highest point.

2.0 BASIS OF PAYMENT

The Concrete Slab below guardrail shall be paid for at the contract price per cubic yard for "Class A Concrete" and the contract price per pound for "Reinforcing Steel". Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this Special Provision, the plans and applicable parts of the Standard Specifications and will include, but not be limited to, furnishing all labor, materials, equipment, and other incidentals necessary to complete this work. No additional payment will be made for labor, equipment, excavation, forming, compaction of soil, temporary bracing of guardrail posts and all other related materials necessary for the completion of the concrete slab below guardrail. The entire cost of this work is to be distributed among the various pay items.



North Carolina Department of Transportation

Highway Stormwater Program
STORMWATER MANAGEMENT PLAN
FOR NCDOT PROJECTS



(Version 2.08; Released April 2018)

WBS Element: SF-920135 TIP No.: 17BP.5.R.88 County(ies): Warren Page 1 of 1

General Project Information

WBS Element:	SF-920135	TIP Number:	17BP.5.R.88	Project Type:	Bridge Replacement	Date:	1/13/2019
NCDOT Contact:	Galen Cail		Contractor / Designer:	Reid B. Robol, PE - VHB			
	Address:	1000 Birch Ridge Drive Raleigh, NC 27610			Address:	940 Main Campus Drive Suite 500 Raleigh, NC 27606	
	Phone:	919-707-6711			Phone:	919-754-5005	
	Email:	gcail@ncdot.gov			Email:	rrobol@vhb.com	
City/Town:			County(ies):	Warren			
River Basin(s):	Tar-Pamlico		CAMA County?	No			
Wetlands within Project Limits?	Yes						

Project Description

Project Length (lin. miles or feet):	0.081 Miles	Surrounding Land Use:	Forest, agricultural, and rural residential					
	Proposed Project			Existing Site				
Project Built-Upon Area (ac.)	1.4	ac.	1.2	ac.				
Typical Cross Section Description:	2 @ 9' lanes with 3' paved shoulders			2 @ 9' lanes with 0.5' paved shoulders				
Annual Avg Daily Traffic (veh/hr/day):	Design/Future:	160	Year:	2025	Existing:	80	Year:	2000
General Project Narrative: (Description of Minimization of Water Quality Impacts)	State project 17BP.5.R.88 involves the replacement of the existing NCDOT Bridge #920135 on SR 1609 over Fishing Creek. Bridge #920135 consists of 1@20'-8" timber floor on I-Beams with timber caps on rubble masonry abutments. The existing bridge is to be replaced with a proposed culvert which consists of a 42'x10' bottomless RCBC on footings. The proposed crossing is located in Zone AE of FIRM Map number 3720294400J and was studied by Limited Detailed methods. There are steep ditches within the project limits that need rip rap to maintain stability. Also, existing ditches are being covered up by the proposed roadway and in order to maintain stability, proposed ditches run through the buffer zones.							

Waterbody Information

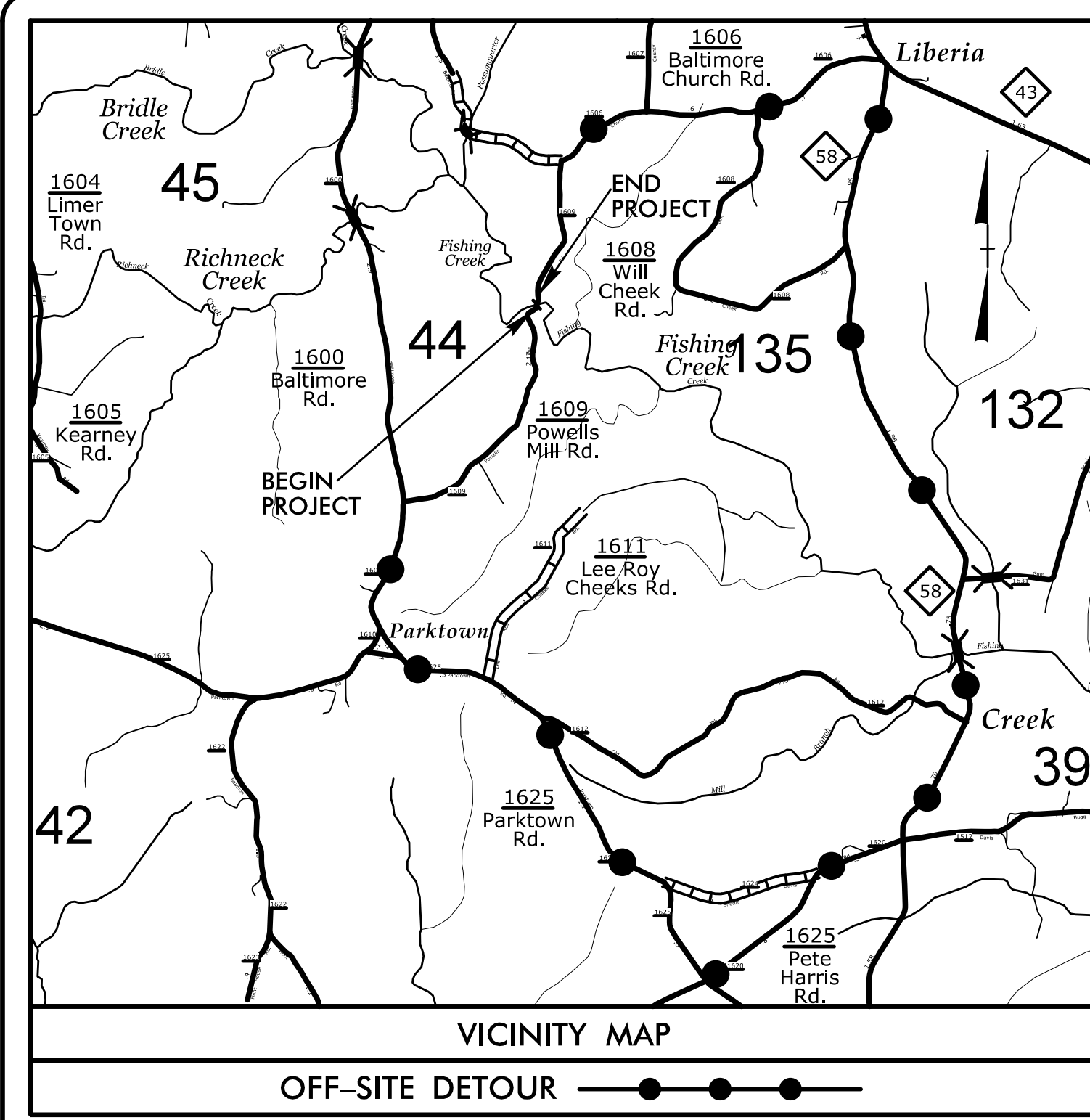
Surface Water Body (1):	Fishing Creek		NCDWR Stream Index No.:	28-79-(1)			
NCDWR Surface Water Classification for Water Body	Primary Classification:		Class C				
	Supplemental Classification:		Nutrient Sensitive Waters (NSW)				
Other Stream Classification:							
Impairments:							
Aquatic T&E Species?	Comments:						
NRTR Stream ID:	Fishing Creek		Buffer Rules in Effect:	Tar-Pamlico			
Project Includes Bridge Spanning Water Body?	Yes	Deck Drains Discharge Over Buffer?	No	Dissipator Pads Provided in Buffer?	N/A		
Deck Drains Discharge Over Water Body?	No	(If yes, provide justification in the General Project Narrative)		(If yes, describe in the General Project Narrative; if no, justify in the General Project Narrative)			
	(If yes, provide justification in the General Project Narrative)						

09/28/2019

8:17:47 AM R:\Hydraulics\PERMITS_Environmental\Drawings\920135_PRM_WET_TSH.dgn eberger

TIP PROJECT: 17BP.5.R.88

CONTRACT:



See Sheet 1A For Index of Sheets
See Sheet 1B For Conventional Symbols

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
DIVISION OF HIGHWAYS

WARREN COUNTY

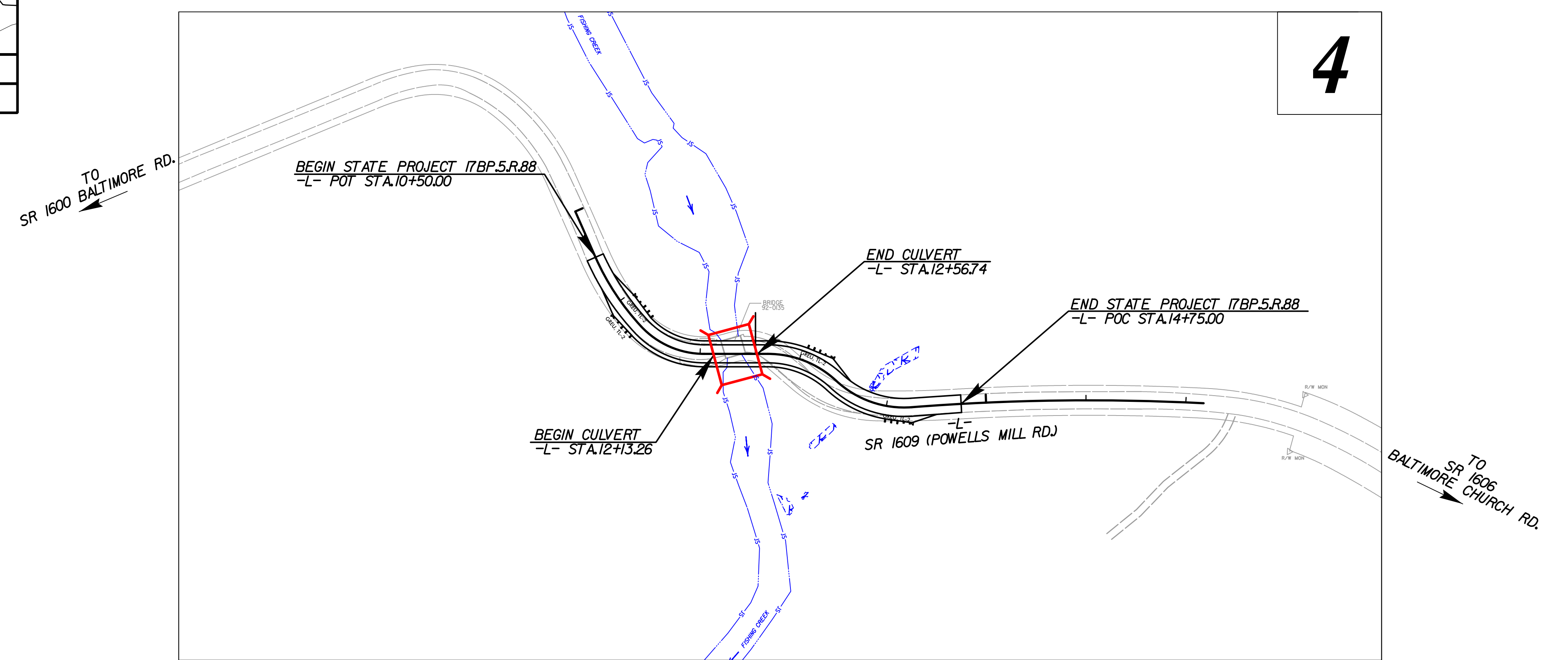
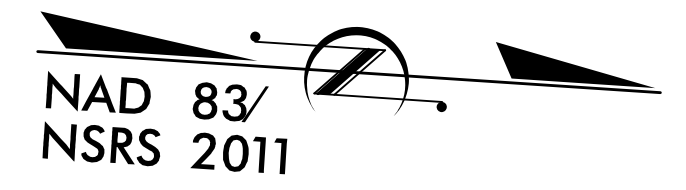
**LOCATION: BRIDGE NO. 135 OVER FISHING CREEK
ON SR 1609 (POWELLS MILL RD.)**

TYPE OF WORK: GRADING, DRAINAGE, PAVING, AND CULVERT

WETLAND AND SURFACE WATER IMPACTS PERMIT

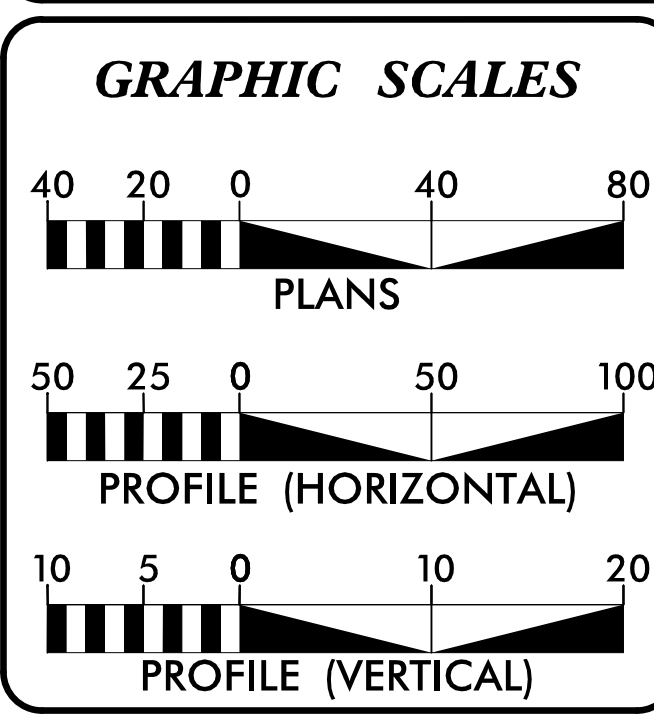
STATE	STATE PROJECT REFERENCE NO.	SHEET NO.	TOTAL SHEETS
N.C.	17BP.5.R.88	1	
STATE PROJ. NO.	F.A. PROJ. NO.	DESCRIPTION	
17BP.5.R.88	N/A	PE	
17BP.5.R.88	N/A	ROW	
17BP.5.R.88	N/A	UTILITIES	

**PERMIT DRAWING
SHEET 1 OF 6**



CLEARING ON THIS PROJECT SHALL BE TO LIMITS ESTABLISHED USING METHOD III.
THIS PROJECT IS NOT WITHIN MUNICIPAL BOUNDARIES.

DOCUMENT NOT CONSIDERED FINAL
UNLESS ALL SIGNATURES COMPLETED



DESIGN DATA

ADT = 80 VPD
V = 20 MPH
CLASS = RURAL LOCAL
SUBREGIONAL TIER

PROJECT LENGTH

LENGTH ROADWAY STATE PROJECT 17BP.5.R.88 = 0.072 mi.
LENGTH STRUCTURES STATE PROJECT 17BP.5.R.88 = 0.008 mi.
TOTAL LENGTH STATE PROJECT 17BP.5.R.88 = 0.080 mi.

Prepared in the Offices of:

223 S. WEST ST., STE 1100
RALEIGH, NC 27603
T 919.380.8750

VHB Engineering NC, P.C. (C-3705)
940 Main Campus Drive, Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27606

2018 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

RIGHT OF WAY DATE:
AUGUST 15, 2018

RIGHT OF WAY COMPLETE:

LETTING DATE:
MAY 17, 2019

ANDY YOUNG, PE
PROJECT ENGINEER

JOSHUA ROEMER
PROJECT DESIGN ENGINEER

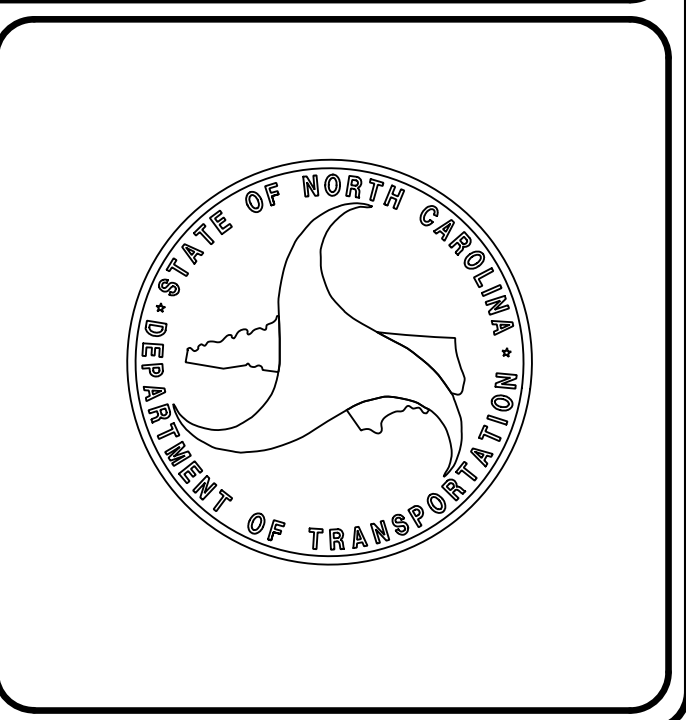
LISA GILCHRIST, EI
NCDOT CONTACT

HYDRAULICS ENGINEER

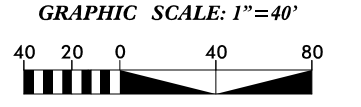
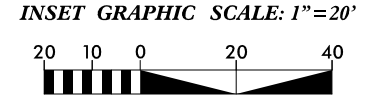
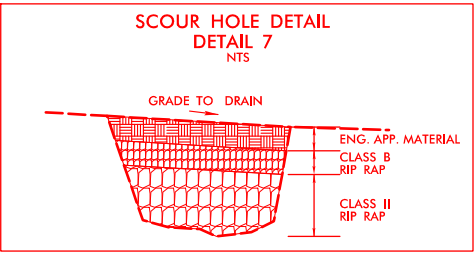
SIGNATURE: _____ P.E.

ROADWAY DESIGN ENGINEER

SIGNATURE: _____ P.E.



PI Sta 10+92.05 Δ = 19° 05' 44.2" (LT) D = 22° 55' 05.9" L = 83.32' T = 42.05' R = 250.00' Se = EXIST.	PI Sta 11+70.75 Δ = 47° 02' 10.4" (LT) D = 66° 37' 22.8" L = 70.60' T = 37.43' R = 86.00' Runoff = 90' Se = 4%	PI Sta 13+07.18 Δ = 42° 58' 35.2" (RT) D = 57° 17' 44.8" L = 75.01' T = 39.37' R = 100.00' Runoff = 90' Se = 4%
PI Sta 13+86.74 Δ = 47° 25' 32.9" (LT) D = 57° 17' 44.8" L = 82.77' T = 43.92' R = 100.00' Runoff = 90' Se = 4%	PI Sta 15+71.91 Δ = 7° 19' 41.2" (RT) D = 2° 30' 27.3" L = 292.24' T = 146.32' R = 2,284.89' Runoff = 90' Se = EXIST.	

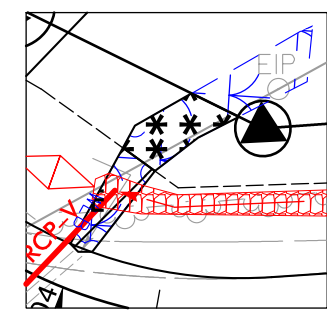


NOTE:
ARMOR SHOULDERS AND SIDE SLOPES
ALONG STRUCTURE WITH ENGINEER APPROVED
MATERIAL FROM STA. 12+00 TO 12+53 LT AND
STA. 12+17 TO 12+73 RT.

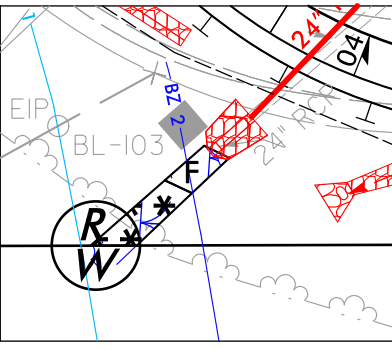
NAD 83/NA 2011

PERMIT DRAWING
SHEET 2 OF 6

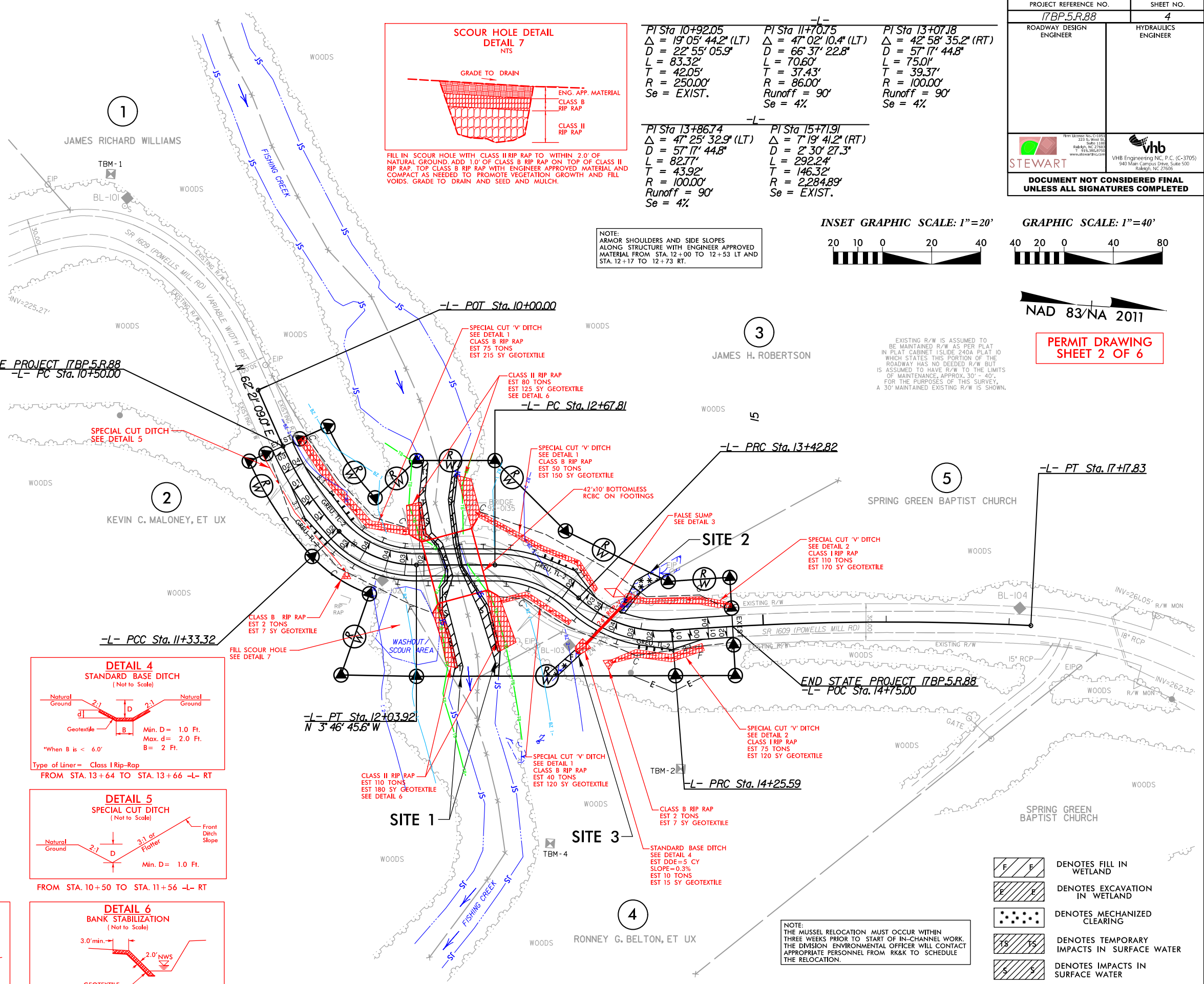
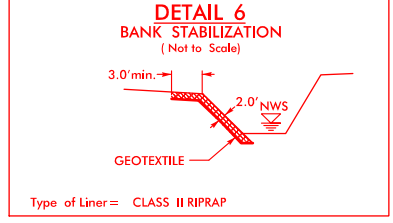
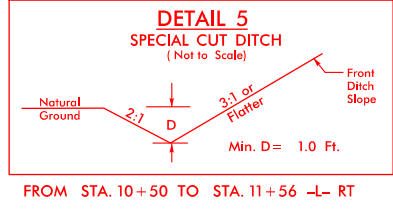
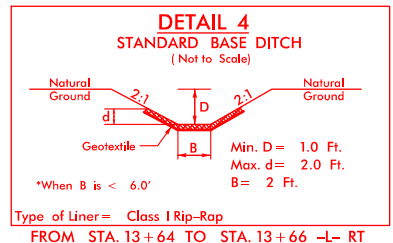
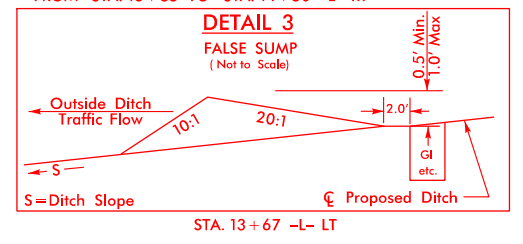
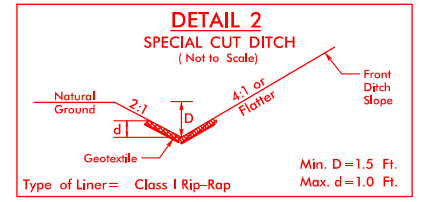
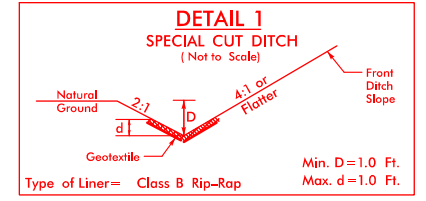
EXISTING R/W IS ASSUMED TO
BE MAINTAINED R/W AS PER PLAT 10
IN PLAT CABINET 15/DISE 240A PLAT 10
WHICH STATES THIS PORTION OF THE
ROADWAY HAS NO DEEDED R/W BUT
IS ASSUMED TO HAVE R/W TO THE LIMITS
OF MAINTENANCE, APPROX. 30'-40'
FOR THE PURPOSES OF THIS SURVEY,
A 30' MAINTAINED EXISTING R/W IS SHOWN.



SITE 2



SITE 3



THE CONTRACTOR WILL PROVIDE AT LEAST THREE WEEKS NOTIFICATION TO THE RESIDENT ENGINEER AND DIVISION ENVIRONMENTAL OFFICER CONCERNING START OF WORK AT THE PROJECT TO ALLOW FOR APPROPRIATE CONTACT WITH PARTIES CONDUCTING THE PRE-CONSTRUCTION MUSSEL SURVEY AND RELOCATION ACTIVITIES.

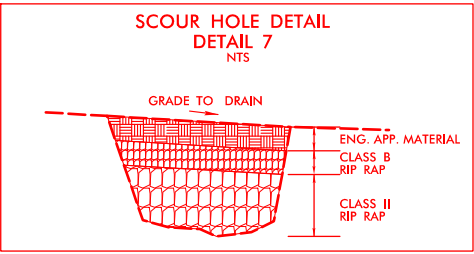
- DENOTES FILL IN WETLAND
- DENOTES EXCAVATION IN WETLAND
- DENOTES MECHANIZED CLEARING
- DENOTES TEMPORARY IMPACTS IN SURFACE WATER
- DENOTES IMPACTS IN SURFACE WATER

FOR -L- PROFILE, SEE SHEET 5
FOR CULVERT PLANS, SEE SHEETS C-1 THRU C-4

REVISIONS

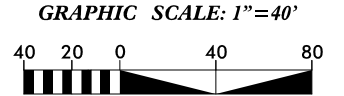
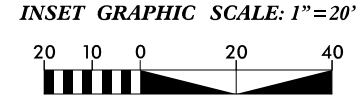
5/14/99
10:45:55 AM
C:\Users\pratt\Documents\Drawings\20135_PRM_WET_PSH04.dgn

$PI\ Sta\ 10+92.05$ $\Delta = 19^{\circ}05'44.2" (LT)$ $D = 22^{\circ}55'05.9"$ $L = 83.32'$ $T = 42.05'$ $R = 250.00'$ $Se = EXIST.$	$PI\ Sta\ 11+70.75$ $\Delta = 47^{\circ}02'10.4" (LT)$ $D = 66^{\circ}37'22.8"$ $L = 70.60'$ $T = 37.43'$ $R = 86.00'$ $Runoff = 90'$ $Se = 4\%$	$PI\ Sta\ 13+07.18$ $\Delta = 42^{\circ}58'35.2" (RT)$ $D = 57^{\circ}17'44.8"$ $L = 75.01'$ $T = 39.37'$ $R = 100.00'$ $Runoff = 90'$ $Se = 4\%$
$PI\ Sta\ 13+86.74$ $\Delta = 47^{\circ}25'32.9" (LT)$ $D = 57^{\circ}17'44.8"$ $L = 82.77'$ $T = 43.92'$ $R = 100.00'$ $Runoff = 90'$ $Se = 4\%$	$PI\ Sta\ 15+71.91$ $\Delta = 7^{\circ}19'41.2" (RT)$ $D = 2^{\circ}30'27.3"$ $L = 292.24'$ $T = 146.32'$ $R = 2,284.89'$ $Se = EXIST.$	



FILL IN SCOUR HOLE WITH CLASS II RIP RAP TO WITHIN 2.0' OF NATURAL GROUND. ADD 1.0' OF CLASS B RIP RAP ON TOP OF CLASS II RIP RAP. TOP CLASS B RIP RAP WITH ENGINEER APPROVED MATERIAL AND COMPACT AS NEEDED TO PROMOTE VEGETATION GROWTH AND FILL VOIDS. GRADE TO DRAIN AND SEED AND MULCH.

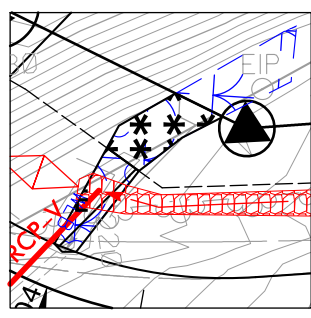
NOTE:
ARMOR SHOULDERS AND SIDE SLOPES ALONG STRUCTURE WITH ENGINEER APPROVED MATERIAL FROM STA. 12+00 TO 12+53 LT AND STA. 12+17 TO 12+73 RT.



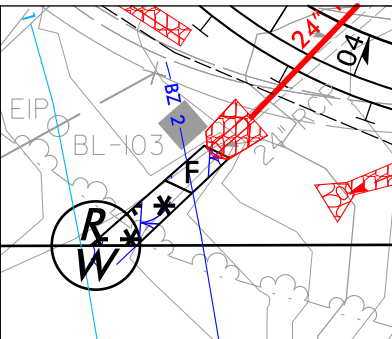
NAD 83/NA 2011

PERMIT DRAWING
SHEET 3 OF 6

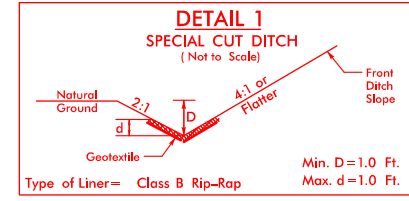
EXISTING R/W IS ASSUMED TO BE MAINTAINED R/W AS PER PLAT 10 IN PLAT CABINET 15/SLIDE 240A PLAT 10 WHICH STATES THIS PORTION OF THE ROADWAY HAS NO DEEDED R/W BUT IS ASSUMED TO HAVE R/W TO THE LIMITS OF MAINTENANCE, APPROX. 30'-40' FOR THE PURPOSES OF THIS SURVEY. A 30' MAINTAINED EXISTING R/W IS SHOWN.



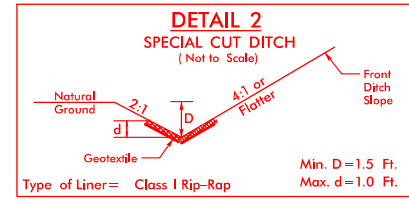
SITE 2



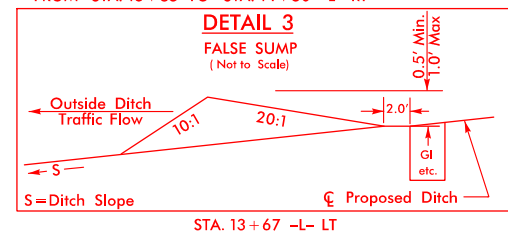
SITE 3



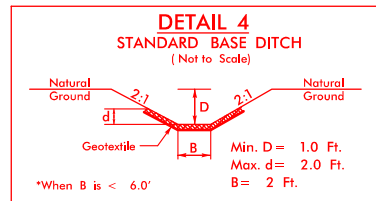
FROM STA. 10+50 TO STA. 11+95 -L- LT
FROM STA. 12+50 TO STA. 13+50 -L- LT
FROM STA. 12+70 TO STA. 13+50 -L- RT



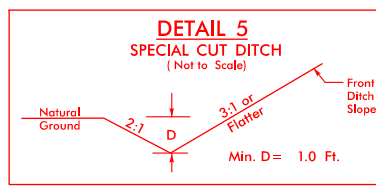
FROM STA. 13+83 TO STA. 14+75 -L- LT
FROM STA. 13+85 TO STA. 14+50 -L- RT



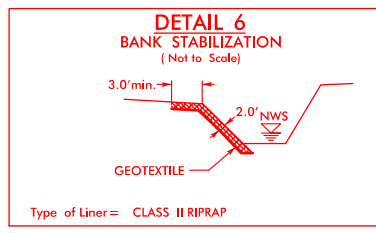
STA. 13+67 -L- LT



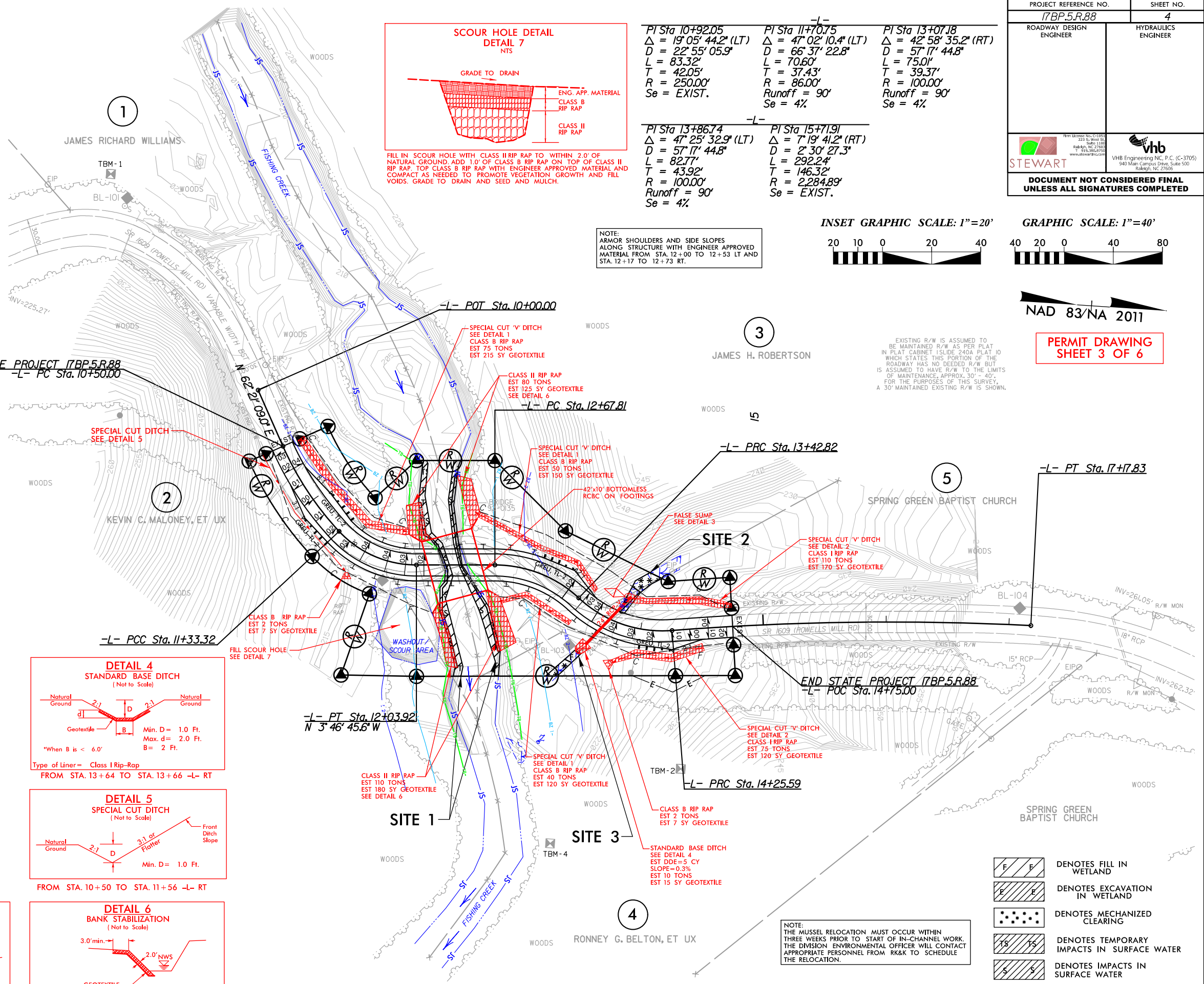
FROM STA. 13+64 TO STA. 13+66 -L- RT



FROM STA. 10+50 TO STA. 11+56 -L- RT



Type of Liner = CLASS II RIPRAP



REVISIONS

5/14/99
I:\2013\AM\Projects\Environmental\Drawings\20135_PRM_WET_PSH04_CON.dgn



THE CONTRACTOR WILL PROVIDE AT LEAST THREE WEEKS NOTIFICATION TO THE RESIDENT ENGINEER AND DIVISION ENVIRONMENTAL OFFICER CONCERNING START OF WORK AT THE PROJECT TO ALLOW FOR APPROPRIATE CONTACT WITH PARTIES CONDUCTING THE PRE-CONSTRUCTION MUSSEL SURVEY AND RELOCATION ACTIVITIES.

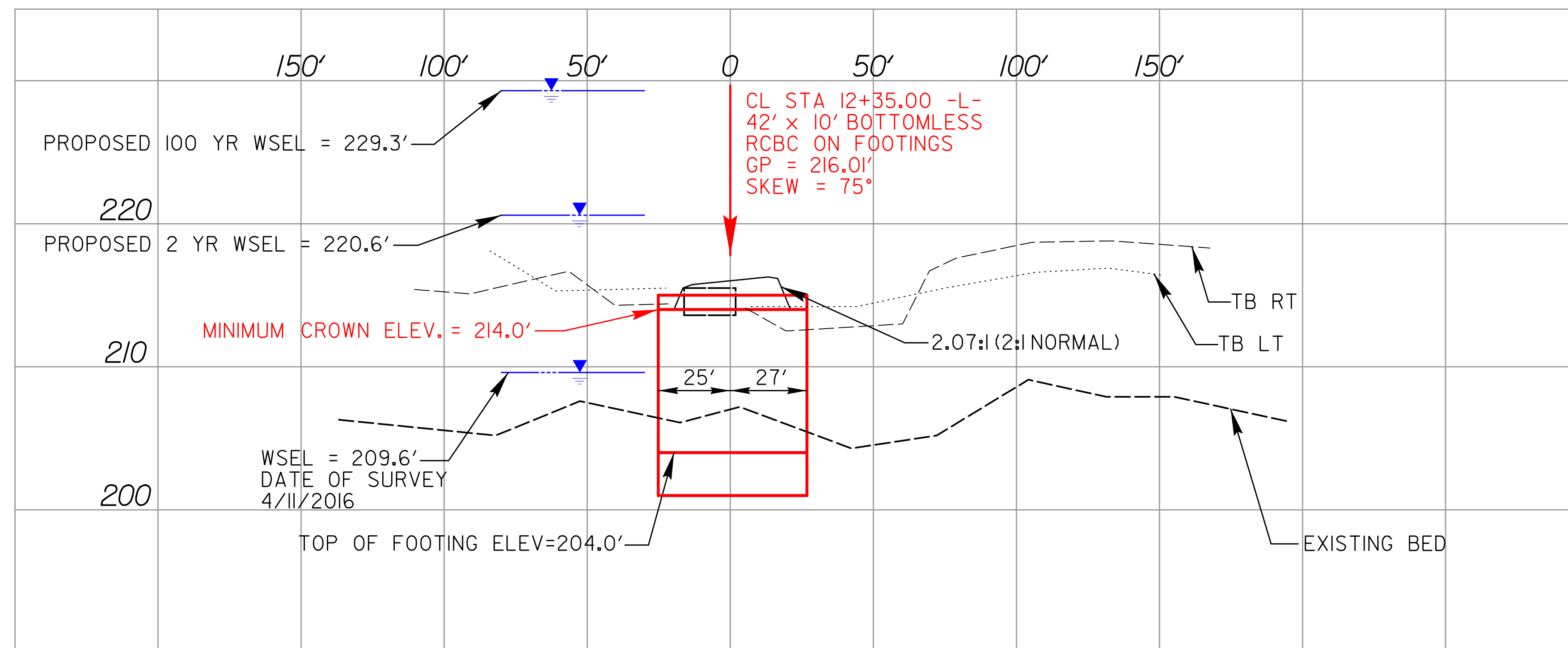
- DENOTES FILL IN WETLAND
- DENOTES EXCAVATION IN WETLAND
- DENOTES MECHANIZED CLEARING
- DENOTES TEMPORARY IMPACTS IN SURFACE WATER
- DENOTES IMPACTS IN SURFACE WATER

FOR -L- PROFILE, SEE SHEET 5
FOR CULVERT PLANS, SEE SHEETS C-1 THRU C-4

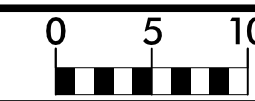
5/14/99

PERMIT DRAWING
SHEET 4 OF 6

PROJECT REFERENCE NO. <i>17BP.5.R.88</i>	SHEET NO.
ROADWAY DESIGN ENGINEER	HYDRAULICS ENGINEER
 Firm License No. C-12123 223 S. West St. Raleigh, NC 27603 T. 919.386.0799 www.stewartinc.com	 VHB Engineering NC, P.C. (C-3705) 940 Main Campus Drive, Suite 500 Raleigh, NC 27606
DOCUMENT NOT CONSIDERED FINAL UNLESS ALL SIGNATURES COMPLETED	



8/23/99



PROJ. REFERENCE NO.
17BP.5.R.88

SHEET NO.
X-3

150 140 130 120 110 100 90 80 70 60 50 40 30 20 10 0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100 110 120 130 140 150

240
235
230
225
220

240
235
230
225
220

PERMIT DRAWING
SHEET 5 OF 6

240
235
230
225
220

240
235
230
225
220

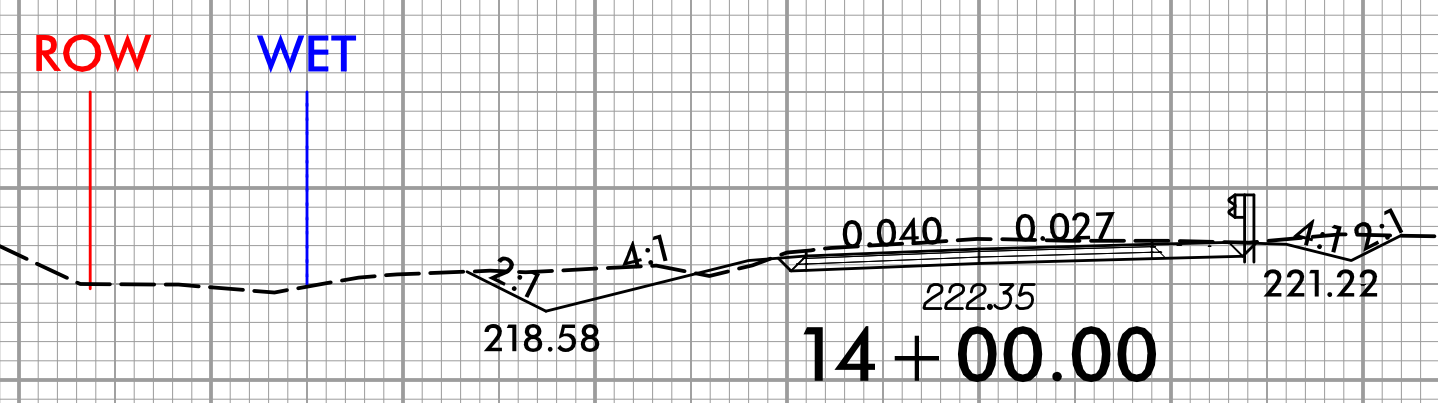
235
230
225
220
215

235
230
225
220
215

SITE 2

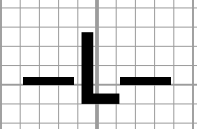
235
230
225
220
215

235
230
225
220
215



235
230
225
220
215
210

235
230
225
220
215
210



150 140 130 120 110 100 90 80 70 60 50 40 30 20 10 0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100 110 120 130 140 150

8:02:28 AM
R:\Hydraulics\PERMITS-Environmental\Drawings\920135_PRM_WET_XSC.dgn
over.gpr

WETLAND AND SURFACE WATER IMPACTS SUMMARY

Site No.	Station (From/To)	Structure Size / Type	WETLAND IMPACTS					SURFACE WATER IMPACTS				
			Permanent Fill In Wetlands (ac)	Temp. Fill In Wetlands (ac)	Excavation in Wetlands (ac)	Mechanized Clearing in Wetlands (ac)	Hand Clearing in Wetlands (ac)	Permanent SW impacts (ac)	Temp. SW impacts (ac)	Existing Channel Impacts Permanent (ft)	Existing Channel Impacts Temp. (ft)	Natural Stream Design (ft)
1	12+06/12+82 -L-	42'x10' BOTTOMLESS RCBC						0.01	0.03	151	176	
2	13+78/14+17 -L- LT	42'x10' BOTTOMLESS RCBC			< 0.01	< 0.01						
3	13+57/13+67 -L- RT	42'x10' BOTTOMLESS RCBC	< 0.01			< 0.01						
TOTALS*:			< 0.01		< 0.01	< 0.01		0.01	0.03	151	176	0

*Rounded totals are sum of actual impacts
 **The length of the culvert is 52 feet long

NOTES:
 Permanent impacts are coincident with the temporary impacts

	Excavation in Wetland (sq. ft.)	MC in Wetlands (sq. ft.)	Perm. SW Impact (sq. ft.)	Temp. SW Impact (sq. ft.)	Perm. Fill in Wetlands (sq. ft.)
Site 1	0	0	543	1402	0
Site 2	145	180	0	0	0
Site 3	0	112	0	0	61
TOTAL	145	292	543	1402	61

NC DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
 DIVISION OF HIGHWAYS
 1/18/2019
 WARREN COUNTY
 SF-920135
 17BP.5.R.88
 SHEET 6 OF 6



North Carolina Department of Transportation

Highway Stormwater Program
STORMWATER MANAGEMENT PLAN
FOR NCDOT PROJECTS



(Version 2.08; Released April 2018)

WBS Element: SF-920135 TIP No.: 17BP.5.R.88 County(ies): Warren Page 1 of 1

General Project Information

WBS Element:	SF-920135	TIP Number:	17BP.5.R.88	Project Type:	Bridge Replacement	Date:	1/13/2019
NCDOT Contact:	Galen Cail		Contractor / Designer:	Reid B. Robol, PE - VHB			
	Address:	1000 Birch Ridge Drive Raleigh, NC 27610		Address:	940 Main Campus Drive Suite 500 Raleigh, NC 27606		
	Phone:	919-707-6711		Phone:	919-754-5005		
	Email:	gcail@ncdot.gov		Email:	rrobol@vhb.com		
City/Town:			County(ies):	Warren			
River Basin(s):	Tar-Pamlico		CAMA County?	No			
Wetlands within Project Limits?	Yes						

Project Description

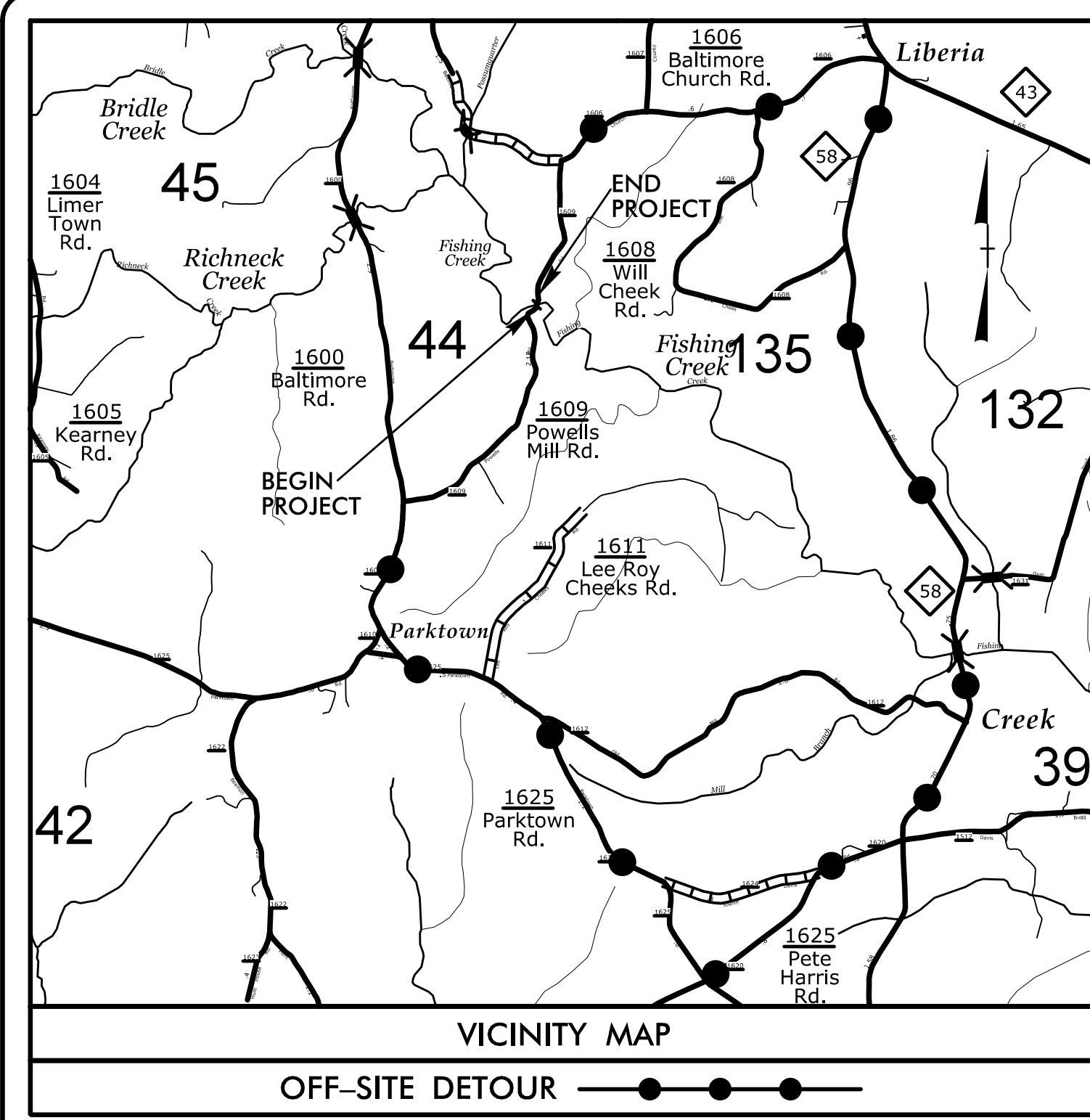
Project Length (lin. miles or feet):	0.081 Miles	Surrounding Land Use:	Forest, agricultural, and rural residential					
	Proposed Project			Existing Site				
Project Built-Upon Area (ac.)	1.4	ac.	1.2	ac.				
Typical Cross Section Description:	2 @ 9' lanes with 3' paved shoulders			2 @ 9' lanes with 0.5' paved shoulders				
Annual Avg Daily Traffic (veh/hr/day):	Design/Future:	160	Year:	2025	Existing:	80	Year:	2000
General Project Narrative: (Description of Minimization of Water Quality Impacts)	State project 17BP.5.R.88 involves the replacement of the existing NCDOT Bridge #920135 on SR 1609 over Fishing Creek. Bridge #920135 consists of 1@20'-8" timber floor on I-Beams with timber caps on rubble masonry abutments. The existing bridge is to be replaced with a proposed culvert which consists of a 42'x10' bottomless RCBC on footings. The proposed crossing is located in Zone AE of FIRM Map number 3720294400J and was studied by Limited Detailed methods. There are steep ditches within the project limits that need rip rap to maintain stability. Also, existing ditches are being covered up by the proposed roadway and in order to maintain stability, proposed ditches run through the buffer zones.							

Waterbody Information

Surface Water Body (1):	Fishing Creek		NCDWR Stream Index No.:	28-79-(1)			
NCDWR Surface Water Classification for Water Body	Primary Classification:	Class C					
	Supplemental Classification:	Nutrient Sensitive Waters (NSW)					
Other Stream Classification:							
Impairments:							
Aquatic T&E Species?	Comments:						
NRTR Stream ID:	Fishing Creek			Buffer Rules in Effect:	Tar-Pamlico		
Project Includes Bridge Spanning Water Body?	Yes	Deck Drains Discharge Over Buffer?	No	Dissipator Pads Provided in Buffer?	N/A		
Deck Drains Discharge Over Water Body?	No	(If yes, provide justification in the General Project Narrative)		(If yes, describe in the General Project Narrative; if no, justify in the General Project Narrative)			
	(If yes, provide justification in the General Project Narrative)						

09/28/19

TIP PROJECT: 17BP.5.R.88



See Sheet 1A For Index of Sheets
See Sheet 1B For Conventional Symbols

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
DIVISION OF HIGHWAYS

WARREN COUNTY

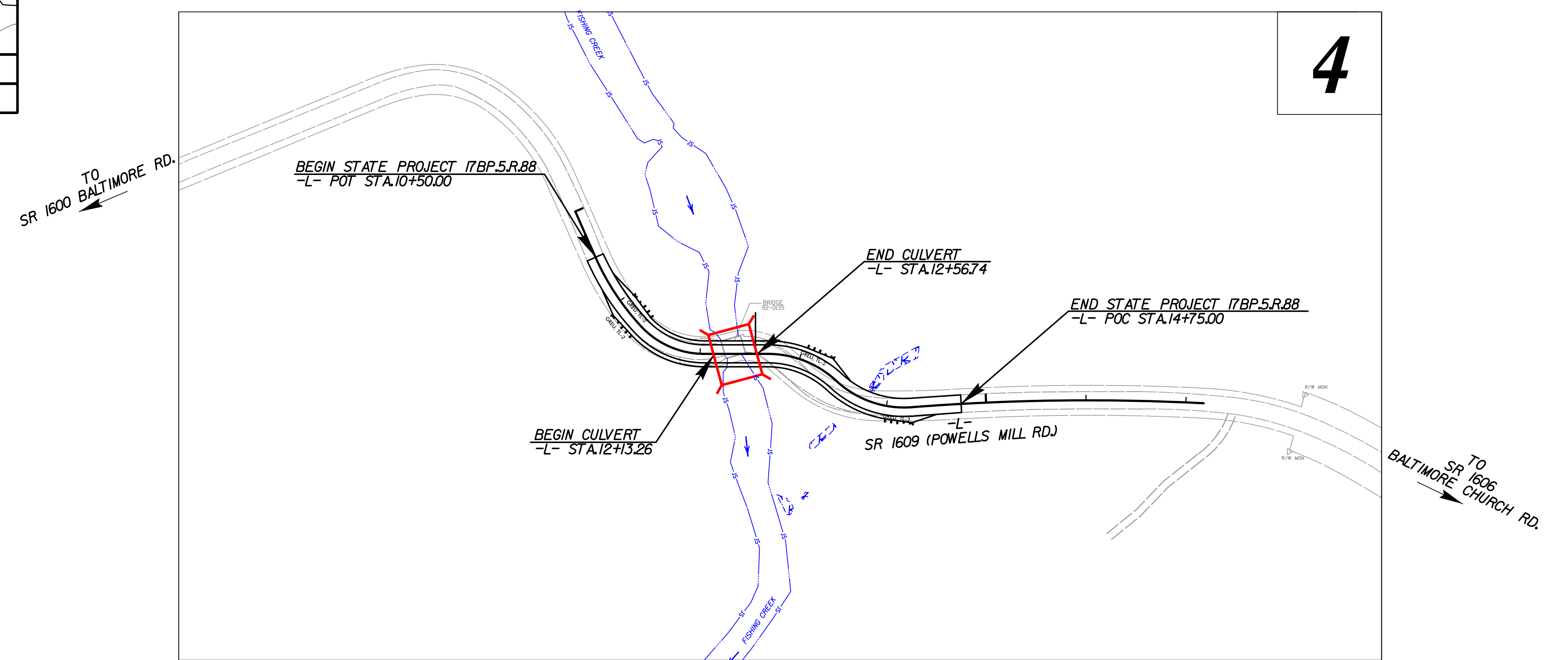
**LOCATION: BRIDGE NO. 135 OVER FISHING CREEK
ON SR 1609 (POWELLS MILL RD.)**

TYPE OF WORK: GRADING, DRAINAGE, PAVING, AND CULVERT

BUFFER IMPACTS PERMIT

STATE	STATE PROJECT REFERENCE NO.	SHEET NO.	TOTAL SHEETS
N.C.	17BP.5.R.88	1	
STATE PROJ. NO.	F.A. PROJ. NO.	DESCRIPTION	
17BP.5.R.88	N/A	PE	
17BP.5.R.88	N/A	ROW	
17BP.5.R.88	N/A	UTILITIES	

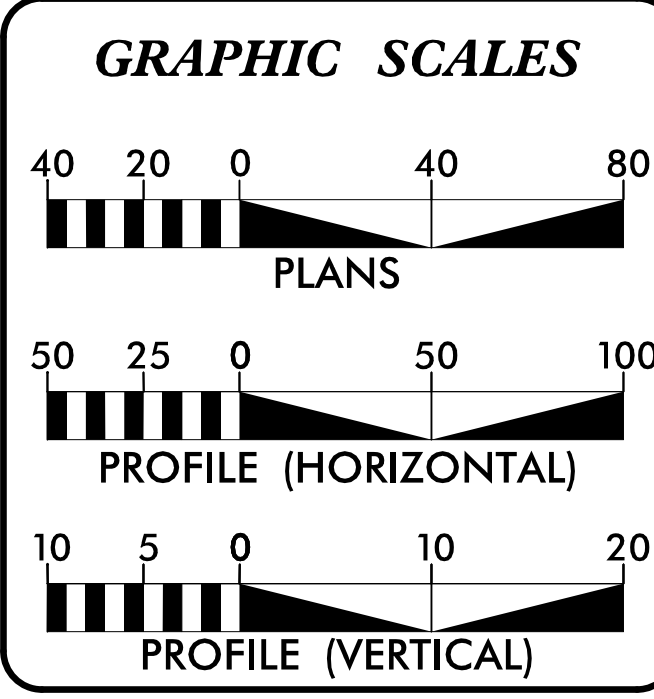
**BUFFER DRAWING
SHEET 1 OF 4**



CLEARING ON THIS PROJECT SHALL BE TO LIMITS ESTABLISHED USING METHOD III.
THIS PROJECT IS NOT WITHIN MUNICIPAL BOUNDARIES.

DOCUMENT NOT CONSIDERED FINAL
UNLESS ALL SIGNATURES COMPLETED

CONTRACT:



DESIGN DATA

ADT = 80 VPD
V = 20 MPH
CLASS = RURAL LOCAL
SUBREGIONAL TIER

PROJECT LENGTH

LENGTH ROADWAY STATE PROJECT 17BP.5.R.88 = 0.072 mi.
LENGTH STRUCTURES STATE PROJECT 17BP.5.R.88 = 0.008 mi.
TOTAL LENGTH STATE PROJECT 17BP.5.R.88 = 0.080 mi.

Prepared in the Offices of:

223 S. WEST ST., STE 1100
RALEIGH, NC 27603
T 919.380.8750

VHB Engineering NC, P.C. (C-3705)
940 Main Campus Drive, Suite 500
Raleigh, NC 27606

2018 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

RIGHT OF WAY DATE:
AUGUST 15, 2018

RIGHT OF WAY COMPLETE:

LETTING DATE:
MAY 17, 2019

ANDY YOUNG, PE
PROJECT ENGINEER

JOSHUA ROEMER
PROJECT DESIGN ENGINEER

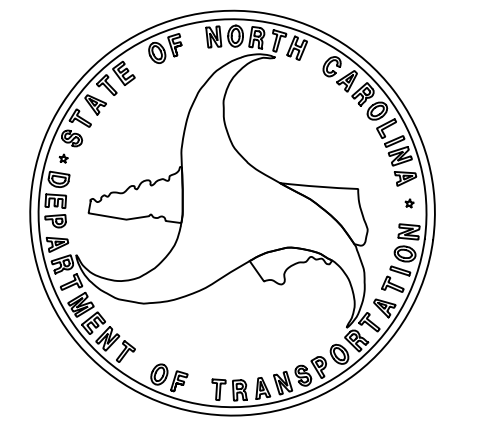
LISA GILCHRIST, EI
NCDOT CONTACT

HYDRAULICS ENGINEER

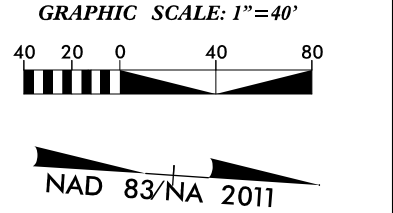
SIGNATURE: _____ P.E.

ROADWAY DESIGN ENGINEER

SIGNATURE: _____ P.E.

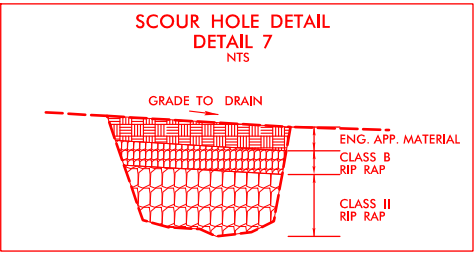


8:33:33 AM
R:\Hydraulics\PERMITS_Environmental\Drawings\920135_PRM_BUF_TSH.dgn
eberger



**BUFFER DRAWING
SHEET 2 OF 4**

PI Sta 10+92.05 $\Delta = 19' 05" 44.2" (LT)$ $D = 22' 55' 05.9"$ $L = 83.32'$ $T = 42.05'$ $R = 250.00'$ $Se = EXIST.$	PI Sta 11+70.75 $\Delta = 47' 02' 10.4" (LT)$ $D = 66' 37' 22.8"$ $L = 70.60'$ $T = 37.43'$ $R = 86.00'$ $Runoff = 90'$ $Se = 4\%$	PI Sta 13+07.18 $\Delta = 42' 58' 35.2" (RT)$ $D = 57' 17' 44.8"$ $L = 75.01'$ $T = 39.37'$ $R = 100.00'$ $Runoff = 90'$ $Se = 4\%$
PI Sta 13+86.74 $\Delta = 47' 25' 32.9" (LT)$ $D = 57' 17' 44.8"$ $L = 82.77'$ $T = 43.92'$ $R = 100.00'$ $Runoff = 90'$ $Se = 4\%$	PI Sta 15+71.91 $\Delta = 7' 19' 41.2" (RT)$ $D = 2' 30' 27.3"$ $L = 292.24'$ $T = 146.32'$ $R = 2,284.89'$ $Se = EXIST.$	

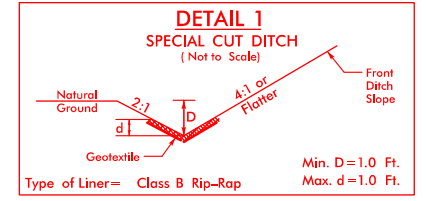
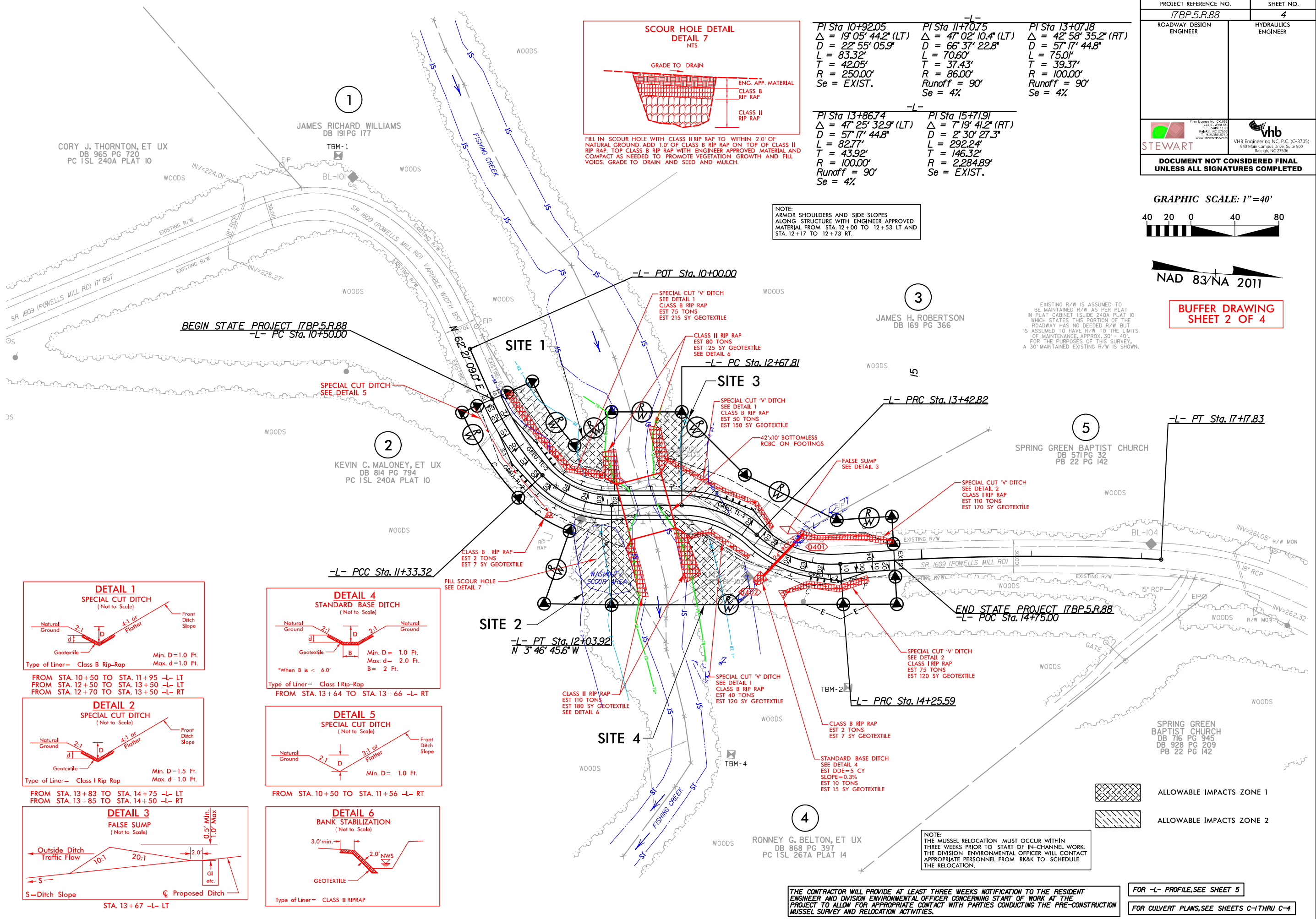


FILL IN SCOUR HOLE WITH CLASS II RIP RAP TO WITHIN 2.0' OF NATURAL GROUND. ADD 1.0' OF CLASS B RIP RAP ON TOP OF CLASS II RIP RAP. TOP CLASS B RIP RAP WITH ENGINEER APPROVED MATERIAL AND COMPACT AS NEEDED TO PROMOTE VEGETATION GROWTH AND FILL VOIDS. GRADE TO DRAIN AND SEED AND MULCH.

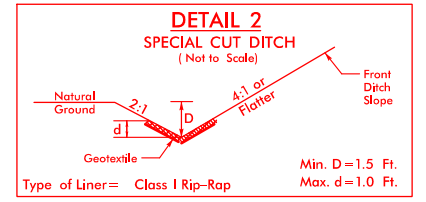
NOTE:
ARMOR SHOULDERS AND SIDE SLOPES ALONG STRUCTURE WITH ENGINEER APPROVED MATERIAL FROM STA. 12+00 TO 12+53 LT AND STA. 12+17 TO 12+73 RT.

EXISTING R/W IS ASSUMED TO BE MAINTAINED R/W AS PER PLAT IO IN PLAT CABINET 15/DSE 240A PLAT IO WHICH STATES THIS PORTION OF THE ROADWAY HAS NO DEEDED R/W BUT IS ASSUMED TO HAVE R/W TO THE LIMITS OF MAINTENANCE, APPROX. 30' - 40' FOR THE PURPOSES OF THIS SURVEY. A 30' MAINTAINED EXISTING R/W IS SHOWN.

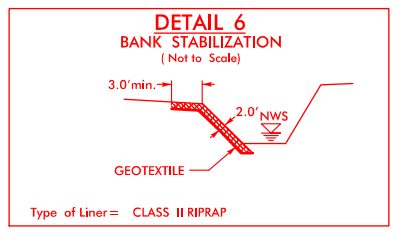
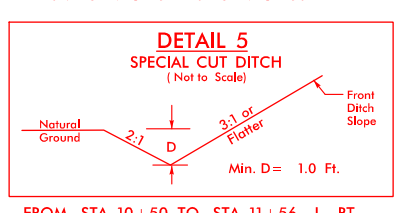
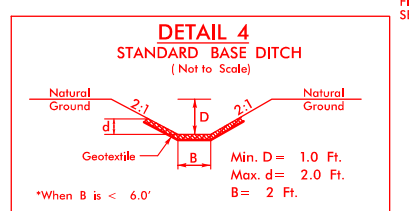
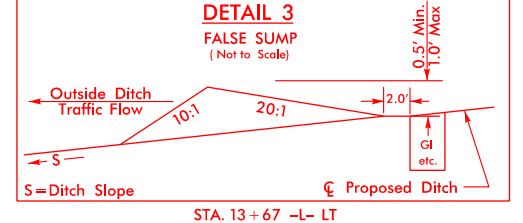
REVISIONS
 5/14/99
 10:49:50 AM
 R:\Projects\Permits\Environmental\Drawings\20135_PRM_BUF_PSH04.dgn



FROM STA. 10+50 TO STA. 11+95 -L- LT
 FROM STA. 12+50 TO STA. 13+50 -L- LT
 FROM STA. 12+70 TO STA. 13+50 -L- RT



FROM STA. 13+83 TO STA. 14+75 -L- LT
 FROM STA. 13+85 TO STA. 14+50 -L- RT



THE CONTRACTOR WILL PROVIDE AT LEAST THREE WEEKS NOTIFICATION TO THE RESIDENT ENGINEER AND DIVISION ENVIRONMENTAL OFFICER CONCERNING START OF WORK AT THE PROJECT TO ALLOW FOR APPROPRIATE CONTACT WITH PARTIES CONDUCTING THE PRE-CONSTRUCTION MUSSEL SURVEY AND RELOCATION ACTIVITIES.

FOR -L- PROFILE, SEE SHEET 5
 FOR CULVERT PLANS, SEE SHEETS C-1 THRU C-4

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS
WILMINGTON DISTRICT

Action Id. SAW-2017-00852 County: Warren U.S.G.S. Quad: NC-Afton

GENERAL PERMIT (REGIONAL AND NATIONWIDE) VERIFICATION

Permittee: NCDOT Division 5
Chris Murray
Address: 2612 North Duke Street
Durham, NC 27704
Telephone Number: 919-220-4633
E-mail: camurray@ncdot.gov

Size (acres)	<u>N/A</u>	Nearest Town	<u>Warrenton</u>
Nearest Waterway	<u>Fishing Creek</u>	River Basin	<u>Pamlico</u>
USGS HUC	<u>03020102</u>	Coordinates	Latitude: <u>36.3391</u> Longitude: <u>-78.1287</u>

Location description: The project location is existing bridge 135 over Fishing Creek on SR 1609 (Powells Mill Rd.), near the town of Warrenton, Warren County, North Carolina.

Description of projects area and activity: This permit verification allows for 0.04 acre of permanent wetland impacts, 52 linear feet of permanent stream channel impacts from fill, 99 linear feet of permanent stream channel impacts from bank stabilization, and 176 linear feet of temporary stream channel impacts from dewatering for the replacement of BR 135 with a culvert in the same location. Mitigation is required for this proposal (See attached plans).

Applicable Law(s): Section 404 (Clean Water Act, 33 USC 1344)
 Section 10 (Rivers and Harbors Act, 33 USC 403)

Authorization: **NWP 3. Maintenance**

SEE ATTACHED NWP GENERAL, REGIONAL, AND/OR SPECIAL CONDITIONS

Your work is authorized by the above referenced permit provided it is accomplished in strict accordance with the enclosed Conditions, your application signed and dated 8/14/2019, and the enclosed plans entitled "Bridge 135 over fishing Creek wetland and surface water impacts permit" dated 1/13/2019. Any violation of the attached conditions or deviation from your submitted plans may subject the permittee to a stop work order, a restoration order, a Class I administrative penalty, and/or appropriate legal action.

Comments:

1. Compensatory mitigation was required for this project and was completed by NCDOT through payment to the North Carolina Division of Mitigation Services (NCDMS). A Statement of Mitigation Liability Acceptance was signed by NCDMS for this project on September 9, 2019.

Special Conditions:

1. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's (USFWS's) Programmatic Biological Opinion (PBO) titled, "NCDOT Program Effects on the Northern Long-eared Bat in Divisions 1-8", dated November 6, 2020, contains agreed upon conservation measures for the NLEB. As noted in the PBO, applicability of these conservation measures varies depending on the location of the project. Your authorization under this Department of the Army permit is conditional upon your compliance with all applicable conservation measures in the PBO, which are incorporated by reference in this permit. Failure to comply with the applicable conservation measures would constitute non-compliance with your Department of the Army permit. The USFWS is the appropriate authority to determine compliance with the terms and conditions of its PBO, and with the ESA.
2. This Department of the Army permit does not authorize you to take an endangered species referenced in the Biological Opinion, including a November 2021 Addendum and a January 2022 Conference Opinion adoption, in particular the Tar River Spiny mussel (*Elliptio steinstansana*). Also, included are the Yellow Lance (*Elliptio lanceolata*), Atlantic Pigtoe (*Fusconaia masoni*) and the Neuse River Waterdog (*Necturus lewisi*) and their designated critical habitat. In

order to legally take a listed species, you must have separate authorization under the Endangered Species Act (ESA) (e.g., an ESA Section 10 permit, or a BO under ESA Section 7, with “incidental take” provisions with which you must comply). The enclosed U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Opinion (BO) contains mandatory terms and conditions to implement the reasonable and prudent measures that are associated with “incidental take” that is also specified in the BO. Your authorization under this permit is conditional upon your compliance with all of the mandatory terms and conditions associated with incidental take of the attached BO, which terms and conditions are incorporated by reference in this permit. Failure to comply with the terms and conditions associated with incidental take of the BO, where a take of the listed species occurs, would constitute an unauthorized take, and it would also constitute non-compliance with your permit. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service is the appropriate authority to determine compliance with the terms and conditions of its BO/, and with the ESA.

This verification will remain valid until the expiration date identified below unless the nationwide authorization is modified, suspended or revoked. If, prior to the expiration date identified below, the nationwide permit authorization is reissued and/or modified, this verification will remain valid until the expiration date identified below, provided it complies with all requirements of the modified nationwide permit. If the nationwide permit authorization expires or is suspended, revoked, or is modified, such that the activity would no longer comply with the terms and conditions of the nationwide permit, activities which have commenced (i.e., are under construction) or are under contract to commence in reliance upon the nationwide permit, will remain authorized provided the activity is completed within twelve months of the date of the nationwide permit’s expiration, modification or revocation, unless discretionary authority has been exercised on a case-by-case basis to modify, suspend or revoke the authorization.

Activities subject to Section 404 (as indicated above) may also require an individual Section 401 Water Quality Certification. You should contact the NC Division of Water Resources (telephone 919-807-6300) to determine Section 401 requirements.

For activities occurring within the twenty coastal counties subject to regulation under the Coastal Area Management Act (CAMA), prior to beginning work you must contact the N.C. Division of Coastal Management **Morehead City, NC, at (252) 808-2808.**

This Department of the Army verification does not relieve the permittee of the responsibility to obtain any other required Federal, State or local approvals/permits.

If there are any questions regarding this verification, any of the conditions of the Permit, or the Corps of Engineers regulatory program, please contact **Andrew Williams at 919-554-4884 ext 26 or andrew.e.williams2@usace.army.mil**.

Corps Regulatory Official: Andrew Williams Date: 2022.02.01
Expiration Date of Verification: 03/18/2022 10:54:28 -05'00' Date: 1/31/2022

The Wilmington District is committed to providing the highest level of support to the public. To help us ensure we continue to do so, please complete the Customer Satisfaction Survey located at http://corpsmapu.usace.army.mil/cm_apex/f?p=136:4:0

Action ID Number: SAW-2017-00852 County: Warren

Permittee: NCDOT Division 5, Chris Murray

Project Name: Replacement of BR 135 over Fishing Creek on SR 1609 (Powells Mill Road)

Date Verification Issued: 1/31/2022

Project Manager: Andrew Williams

Upon completion of the activity authorized by this permit and any mitigation required by the permit, sign this certification and return it to the following address:

US ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS
WILMINGTON DISTRICT
Attn: Andrew Williams
Raleigh Regulatory Office
U.S Army Corps of Engineers
3331 Heritage Trade Drive, Suite 105
Wake Forest, North Carolina 27587
or
andrew.e.williams2@usace.army.mil

Please note that your permitted activity is subject to a compliance inspection by a U. S. Army Corps of Engineers representative. Failure to comply with any terms or conditions of this authorization may result in the Corps suspending, modifying or revoking the authorization and/or issuing a Class I administrative penalty, or initiating other appropriate legal action.

I hereby certify that the work authorized by the above referenced permit has been completed in accordance with the terms and condition of the said permit, and required mitigation was completed in accordance with the permit conditions.

Signature of Permittee

Date

NATIONWIDE PERMIT 3
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
CORPS OF ENGINEERS
FINAL NOTICE OF ISSUANCE AND MODIFICATION OF NATIONWIDE PERMITS
FEDERAL REGISTER
AUTHORIZED MARCH 19, 2017

Maintenance. (a) The repair, rehabilitation, or replacement of any previously authorized, currently serviceable structure or fill, or of any currently serviceable structure or fill authorized by 33 CFR 330.3, provided that the structure or fill is not to be put to uses differing from those uses specified or contemplated for it in the original permit or the most recently authorized modification. Minor deviations in the structure's configuration or filled area, including those due to changes in materials, construction techniques, requirements of other regulatory agencies, or current construction codes or safety standards that are necessary to make the repair, rehabilitation, or replacement are authorized. This NWP also authorizes the removal of previously authorized structures or fills. Any stream channel modification is limited to the minimum necessary for the repair, rehabilitation, or replacement of the structure or fill; such modifications, including the removal of material from the stream channel, must be immediately adjacent to the project. This NWP also authorizes the removal of accumulated sediment and debris within, and in the immediate vicinity of, the structure or fill. This NWP also authorizes the repair, rehabilitation, or replacement of those structures or fills destroyed or damaged by storms, floods, fire or other discrete events, provided the repair, rehabilitation, or replacement is commenced, or is under contract to commence, within two years of the date of their destruction or damage. In cases of catastrophic events, such as hurricanes or tornadoes, this two-year limit may be waived by the district engineer, provided the permittee can demonstrate funding, contract, or other similar delays.

(b) This NWP also authorizes the removal of accumulated sediments and debris outside the immediate vicinity of existing structures (e.g., bridges, culverted road crossings, water intake structures, etc.). The removal of sediment is limited to the minimum necessary to restore the waterway in the vicinity of the structure to the approximate dimensions that existed when the structure was built, but cannot extend farther than 200 feet in any direction from the structure. This 200 foot limit does not apply to maintenance dredging to remove accumulated sediments blocking or restricting outfall and intake structures or to maintenance dredging to remove accumulated sediments from canals associated with outfall and intake structures. All dredged or excavated materials must be deposited and retained in an area that has no waters of the United States unless otherwise specifically approved by the district engineer under separate authorization.

(c) This NWP also authorizes temporary structures, fills, and work, including the use of temporary mats, necessary to conduct the maintenance activity. Appropriate measures must be taken to maintain normal downstream flows and minimize flooding to the maximum extent practicable, when temporary structures, work, and discharges, including cofferdams, are necessary for construction activities, access fills, or dewatering of construction sites. Temporary fills must consist of materials, and be placed in a manner, that will not be eroded by expected high flows. After conducting the maintenance activity, temporary fills must be

removed in their entirety and the affected areas returned to pre-construction elevations. The areas affected by temporary fills must be revegetated, as appropriate.

(d) This NWP does not authorize maintenance dredging for the primary purpose of navigation. This NWP does not authorize beach restoration. This NWP does not authorize new stream channelization or stream relocation projects.

Notification: For activities authorized by paragraph (b) of this NWP, the permittee must submit a pre-construction notification to the district engineer prior to commencing the activity (see general condition 32). The pre-construction notification must include information regarding the original design capacities and configurations of the outfalls, intakes, small impoundments, and canals. (Authorities: Section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act of 1899 and section 404 of the Clean Water Act (Sections 10 and 404))

Note: This NWP authorizes the repair, rehabilitation, or replacement of any previously authorized structure or fill that does not qualify for the Clean Water Act section 404(f) exemption for maintenance.

NATIONWIDE PERMIT GENERAL CONDITIONS

The following General Conditions must be followed in order for any authorization by a NWP to be valid:

1. Navigation. (a) No activity may cause more than a minimal adverse effect on navigation.
(b) Any safety lights and signals prescribed by the U.S. Coast Guard, through regulations or otherwise, must be installed and maintained at the permittee's expense on authorized facilities in navigable waters of the United States.
(c) The permittee understands and agrees that, if future operations by the United States require the removal, relocation, or other alteration, of the structure or work herein authorized, or if, in the opinion of the Secretary of the Army or his authorized representative, said structure or work shall cause unreasonable obstruction to the free navigation of the navigable waters, the permittee will be required, upon due notice from the Corps of Engineers, to remove, relocate, or alter the structural work or obstructions caused thereby, without expense to the United States. No claim shall be made against the United States on account of any such removal or alteration.

2. Aquatic Life Movements. No activity may substantially disrupt the necessary life cycle movements of those species of aquatic life indigenous to the waterbody, including those species that normally migrate through the area, unless the activity's primary purpose is to impound water. All permanent and temporary crossings of waterbodies shall be suitably culverted, bridged, or otherwise designed and constructed to maintain low flows to sustain the movement of those aquatic species. If a bottomless culvert cannot be used, then the crossing should be designed and constructed to minimize adverse effects to aquatic life movements.

3. Spawning Areas. Activities in spawning areas during spawning seasons must be avoided to the maximum extent practicable. Activities that result in the physical destruction (e.g., through excavation, fill, or downstream smothering by substantial turbidity) of an important spawning area are not authorized.

4. Migratory Bird Breeding Areas. Activities in waters of the United States that serve as breeding areas for migratory birds must be avoided to the maximum extent practicable.

5. Shellfish Beds. No activity may occur in areas of concentrated shellfish populations, unless the activity is directly related to a shellfish harvesting activity authorized by NWPs 4 and 48, or is a shellfish seeding or habitat restoration activity authorized by NWP 27.

6. Suitable Material. No activity may use unsuitable material (e.g., trash, debris, car bodies, asphalt, etc.). Material used for construction or discharged must be free from toxic pollutants in toxic amounts (see section 307 of the Clean Water Act).

7. Water Supply Intakes. No activity may occur in the proximity of a public water supply intake, except where the activity is for the repair or improvement of public water supply intake structures or adjacent bank stabilization.

8. Adverse Effects From Impoundments. If the activity creates an impoundment of water, adverse effects to the aquatic system due to accelerating the passage of water, and/or restricting its flow must be minimized to the maximum extent practicable.

9. Management of Water Flows. To the maximum extent practicable, the pre-construction course, condition, capacity, and location of open waters must be maintained for each activity, including stream channelization, storm water management activities, and temporary and permanent road crossings, except as provided below. The activity must be constructed to withstand expected high flows. The activity must not restrict or impede the passage of normal or high flows, unless the primary purpose of the activity is to impound water or manage high flows. The activity may alter the pre-construction course, condition, capacity, and location of open waters if it benefits the aquatic environment (e.g., stream restoration or relocation activities).

10. Fills Within 100-Year Floodplains. The activity must comply with applicable FEMA-approved state or local floodplain management requirements.

11. Equipment. Heavy equipment working in wetlands or mudflats must be placed on mats, or other measures must be taken to minimize soil disturbance.

12. Soil Erosion and Sediment Controls. Appropriate soil erosion and sediment controls must be used and maintained in effective operating condition during construction, and all exposed soil and other fills, as well as any work below the ordinary high water mark or high tide line, must be permanently stabilized at the earliest practicable date. Permittees are encouraged to perform work within waters of the United States during periods of low-flow or no-flow, or during low tides.

13. Removal of Temporary Fills. Temporary fills must be removed in their entirety and the affected areas returned to pre-construction elevations. The affected areas must be revegetated, as appropriate.

14. Proper Maintenance. Any authorized structure or fill shall be properly maintained, including maintenance to ensure public safety and compliance with applicable NWP general conditions, as well as any activity-specific conditions added by the district engineer to an NWP authorization.

15. Single and Complete Project. The activity must be a single and complete project. The same NWP cannot be used more than once for the same single and complete project.

16. Wild and Scenic Rivers. (a) No NWP activity may occur in a component of the National Wild and Scenic River System, or in a river officially designated by Congress as a “study river” for possible inclusion in the system while the river is in an official study status,

unless the appropriate Federal agency with direct management responsibility for such river, has determined in writing that the proposed activity will not adversely affect the Wild and Scenic River designation or study status.

(b) If a proposed NWP activity will occur in a component of the National Wild and Scenic River System, or in a river officially designated by Congress as a “study river” for possible inclusion in the system while the river is in an official study status, the permittee must submit a pre-construction notification (see general condition 32). The district engineer will coordinate the PCN with the Federal agency with direct management responsibility for that river. The permittee shall not begin the NWP activity until notified by the district engineer that the Federal agency with direct management responsibility for that river has determined in writing that the proposed NWP activity will not adversely affect the Wild and Scenic River designation or study status.

(c) Information on Wild and Scenic Rivers may be obtained from the appropriate Federal land management agency responsible for the designated Wild and Scenic River or study river (e.g., National Park Service, U.S. Forest Service, Bureau of Land Management, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). Information on these rivers is also available at: <http://www.rivers.gov/>.

17. Tribal Rights. No NWP activity may cause more than minimal adverse effects on tribal rights (including treaty rights), protected tribal resources, or tribal lands.

18. Endangered Species. (a) No activity is authorized under any NWP which is likely to directly or indirectly jeopardize the continued existence of a threatened or endangered species or a species proposed for such designation, as identified under the Federal Endangered Species Act (ESA), or which will directly or indirectly destroy or adversely modify the critical habitat of such species. No activity is authorized under any NWP which “may affect” a listed species or critical habitat, unless ESA section 7 consultation addressing the effects of the proposed activity has been completed. Direct effects are the immediate effects on listed species and critical habitat caused by the NWP activity. Indirect effects are those effects on listed species and critical habitat that are caused by the NWP activity and are later in time, but still are reasonably certain to occur.

(b) Federal agencies should follow their own procedures for complying with the requirements of the ESA. If pre-construction notification is required for the proposed activity, the Federal permittee must provide the district engineer with the appropriate documentation to demonstrate compliance with those requirements. The district engineer will verify that the appropriate documentation has been submitted. If the appropriate documentation has not been submitted, additional ESA section 7 consultation may be necessary for the activity and the respective federal agency would be responsible for fulfilling its obligation under section 7 of the ESA.

(c) Non-federal permittees must submit a pre-construction notification to the district engineer if any listed species or designated critical habitat might be affected or is in the vicinity of the activity, or if the activity is located in designated critical habitat, and shall not begin work on the activity until notified by the district engineer that the requirements of the ESA have been satisfied and that the activity is authorized. For activities that might affect Federally-listed endangered or threatened species or designated critical habitat, the pre-construction notification must include the name(s) of the endangered or threatened species that

might be affected by the proposed activity or that utilize the designated critical habitat that might be affected by the proposed activity. The district engineer will determine whether the proposed activity “may affect” or will have “no effect” to listed species and designated critical habitat and will notify the non-Federal applicant of the Corps’ determination within 45 days of receipt of a complete pre-construction notification. In cases where the non-Federal applicant has identified listed species or critical habitat that might be affected or is in the vicinity of the activity, and has so notified the Corps, the applicant shall not begin work until the Corps has provided notification that the proposed activity will have “no effect” on listed species or critical habitat, or until ESA section 7 consultation has been completed. If the non-Federal applicant has not heard back from the Corps within 45 days, the applicant must still wait for notification from the Corps.

(d) As a result of formal or informal consultation with the FWS or NMFS the district engineer may add species-specific permit conditions to the NWP.

(e) Authorization of an activity by an NWP does not authorize the “take” of a threatened or endangered species as defined under the ESA. In the absence of separate authorization (e.g., an ESA Section 10 Permit, a Biological Opinion with “incidental take” provisions, etc.) from the FWS or the NMFS, the Endangered Species Act prohibits any person subject to the jurisdiction of the United States to take a listed species, where “take” means to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect, or to attempt to engage in any such conduct. The word “harm” in the definition of “take” means an act which actually kills or injures wildlife. Such an act may include significant habitat modification or degradation where it actually kills or injures wildlife by significantly impairing essential behavioral patterns, including breeding, feeding or sheltering.

(f) If the non-federal permittee has a valid ESA section 10(a)(1)(B) incidental take permit with an approved Habitat Conservation Plan for a project or a group of projects that includes the proposed NWP activity, the non-federal applicant should provide a copy of that ESA section 10(a)(1)(B) permit with the PCN required by paragraph (c) of this general condition. The district engineer will coordinate with the agency that issued the ESA section 10(a)(1)(B) permit to determine whether the proposed NWP activity and the associated incidental take were considered in the internal ESA section 7 consultation conducted for the ESA section 10(a)(1)(B) permit. If that coordination results in concurrence from the agency that the proposed NWP activity and the associated incidental take were considered in the internal ESA section 7 consultation for the ESA section 10(a)(1)(B) permit, the district engineer does not need to conduct a separate ESA section 7 consultation for the proposed NWP activity. The district engineer will notify the non-federal applicant within 45 days of receipt of a complete pre-construction notification whether the ESA section 10(a)(1)(B) permit covers the proposed NWP activity or whether additional ESA section 7 consultation is required.

(g) Information on the location of threatened and endangered species and their critical habitat can be obtained directly from the offices of the FWS and NMFS or their world wide web pages at <http://www.fws.gov/> or <http://www.fws.gov/ipac> and <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/esa/> respectively.

19. Migratory Birds and Bald and Golden Eagles. The permittee is responsible for ensuring their action complies with the Migratory Bird Treaty Act and the Bald and Golden Eagle Protection Act. The permittee is responsible for contacting appropriate local office of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to determine applicable measures to reduce impacts to migratory

birds or eagles, including whether “incidental take” permits are necessary and available under the Migratory Bird Treaty Act or Bald and Golden Eagle Protection Act for a particular activity.

20. Historic Properties. (a) In cases where the district engineer determines that the activity may have the potential to cause effects to properties listed, or eligible for listing, in the National Register of Historic Places, the activity is not authorized, until the requirements of Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA) have been satisfied.

(b) Federal permittees should follow their own procedures for complying with the requirements of section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act. If pre-construction notification is required for the proposed NWP activity, the Federal permittee must provide the district engineer with the appropriate documentation to demonstrate compliance with those requirements. The district engineer will verify that the appropriate documentation has been submitted. If the appropriate documentation is not submitted, then additional consultation under section 106 may be necessary. The respective federal agency is responsible for fulfilling its obligation to comply with section 106.

(c) Non-federal permittees must submit a pre-construction notification to the district engineer if the NWP activity might have the potential to cause effects to any historic properties listed on, determined to be eligible for listing on, or potentially eligible for listing on the National Register of Historic Places, including previously unidentified properties. For such activities, the pre-construction notification must state which historic properties might have the potential to be affected by the proposed NWP activity or include a vicinity map indicating the location of the historic properties or the potential for the presence of historic properties. Assistance regarding information on the location of, or potential for, the presence of historic properties can be sought from the State Historic Preservation Officer, Tribal Historic Preservation Officer, or designated tribal representative, as appropriate, and the National Register of Historic Places (see 33 CFR 330.4(g)). When reviewing pre-construction notifications, district engineers will comply with the current procedures for addressing the requirements of section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act. The district engineer shall make a reasonable and good faith effort to carry out appropriate identification efforts, which may include background research, consultation, oral history interviews, sample field investigation, and field survey. Based on the information submitted in the PCN and these identification efforts, the district engineer shall determine whether the proposed NWP activity has the potential to cause effects on the historic properties. Section 106 consultation is not required when the district engineer determines that the activity does not have the potential to cause effects on historic properties (see 36 CFR 800.3(a)). Section 106 consultation is required when the district engineer determines that the activity has the potential to cause effects on historic properties. The district engineer will conduct consultation with consulting parties identified under 36 CFR 800.2(c) when he or she makes any of the following effect determinations for the purposes of section 106 of the NHPA: no historic properties affected, no adverse effect, or adverse effect. Where the non-Federal applicant has identified historic properties on which the activity might have the potential to cause effects and so notified the Corps, the non-Federal applicant shall not begin the activity until notified by the district engineer either that the activity has no potential to cause effects to historic properties or that NHPA section 106 consultation has been completed.

(d) For non-federal permittees, the district engineer will notify the prospective permittee within 45 days of receipt of a complete pre-construction notification whether NHPA section 106 consultation is required. If NHPA section 106 consultation is required, the district engineer will notify the non-Federal applicant that he or she cannot begin the activity until section 106 consultation is completed. If the non-Federal applicant has not heard back from the Corps within 45 days, the applicant must still wait for notification from the Corps.

(e) Prospective permittees should be aware that section 110k of the NHPA (54 U.S.C. 306113) prevents the Corps from granting a permit or other assistance to an applicant who, with intent to avoid the requirements of section 106 of the NHPA, has intentionally significantly adversely affected a historic property to which the permit would relate, or having legal power to prevent it, allowed such significant adverse effect to occur, unless the Corps, after consultation with the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (ACHP), determines that circumstances justify granting such assistance despite the adverse effect created or permitted by the applicant. If circumstances justify granting the assistance, the Corps is required to notify the ACHP and provide documentation specifying the circumstances, the degree of damage to the integrity of any historic properties affected, and proposed mitigation. This documentation must include any views obtained from the applicant, SHPO/THPO, appropriate Indian tribes if the undertaking occurs on or affects historic properties on tribal lands or affects properties of interest to those tribes, and other parties known to have a legitimate interest in the impacts to the permitted activity on historic properties.

21. Discovery of Previously Unknown Remains and Artifacts. If you discover any previously unknown historic, cultural or archeological remains and artifacts while accomplishing the activity authorized by this permit, you must immediately notify the district engineer of what you have found, and to the maximum extent practicable, avoid construction activities that may affect the remains and artifacts until the required coordination has been completed. The district engineer will initiate the Federal, Tribal, and state coordination required to determine if the items or remains warrant a recovery effort or if the site is eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places.

22. Designated Critical Resource Waters. Critical resource waters include, NOAA-managed marine sanctuaries and marine monuments, and National Estuarine Research Reserves. The district engineer may designate, after notice and opportunity for public comment, additional waters officially designated by a state as having particular environmental or ecological significance, such as outstanding national resource waters or state natural heritage sites. The district engineer may also designate additional critical resource waters after notice and opportunity for public comment.

(a) Discharges of dredged or fill material into waters of the United States are not authorized by NWPs 7, 12, 14, 16, 17, 21, 29, 31, 35, 39, 40, 42, 43, 44, 49, 50, 51, and 52 for any activity within, or directly affecting, critical resource waters, including wetlands adjacent to such waters.

(b) For NWPs 3, 8, 10, 13, 15, 18, 19, 22, 23, 25, 27, 28, 30, 33, 34, 36, 37, 38, and 54, notification is required in accordance with general condition 32, for any activity proposed in the designated critical resource waters including wetlands adjacent to those waters. The district engineer may authorize activities under these NWPs only after it is determined that the impacts to the critical resource waters will be no more than minimal.

23. Mitigation. The district engineer will consider the following factors when determining appropriate and practicable mitigation necessary to ensure that the individual and cumulative adverse environmental effects are no more than minimal:

(a) The activity must be designed and constructed to avoid and minimize adverse effects, both temporary and permanent, to waters of the United States to the maximum extent practicable at the project site (i.e., on site).

(b) Mitigation in all its forms (avoiding, minimizing, rectifying, reducing, or compensating for resource losses) will be required to the extent necessary to ensure that the individual and cumulative adverse environmental effects are no more than minimal.

(c) Compensatory mitigation at a minimum one-for-one ratio will be required for all wetland losses that exceed 1/10-acre and require pre-construction notification, unless the district engineer determines in writing that either some other form of mitigation would be more environmentally appropriate or the adverse environmental effects of the proposed activity are no more than minimal, and provides an activity-specific waiver of this requirement. For wetland losses of 1/10-acre or less that require pre-construction notification, the district engineer may determine on a case-by-case basis that compensatory mitigation is required to ensure that the activity results in only minimal adverse environmental effects.

(d) For losses of streams or other open waters that require pre-construction notification, the district engineer may require compensatory mitigation to ensure that the activity results in no more than minimal adverse environmental effects. Compensatory mitigation for losses of streams should be provided, if practicable, through stream rehabilitation, enhancement, or preservation, since streams are difficult-to-replace resources (see 33 CFR 332.3(e)(3)).

(e) Compensatory mitigation plans for NWP activities in or near streams or other open waters will normally include a requirement for the restoration or enhancement, maintenance, and legal protection (e.g., conservation easements) of riparian areas next to open waters. In some cases, the restoration or maintenance/protection of riparian areas may be the only compensatory mitigation required. Restored riparian areas should consist of native species. The width of the required riparian area will address documented water quality or aquatic habitat loss concerns. Normally, the riparian area will be 25 to 50 feet wide on each side of the stream, but the district engineer may require slightly wider riparian areas to address documented water quality or habitat loss concerns. If it is not possible to restore or maintain/protect a riparian area on both sides of a stream, or if the waterbody is a lake or coastal waters, then restoring or maintaining/protecting a riparian area along a single bank or shoreline may be sufficient. Where both wetlands and open waters exist on the project site, the district engineer will determine the appropriate compensatory mitigation (e.g., riparian areas and/or wetlands compensation) based on what is best for the aquatic environment on a watershed basis. In cases where riparian areas are determined to be the most appropriate form of minimization or compensatory mitigation, the district engineer may waive or reduce the requirement to provide wetland compensatory mitigation for wetland losses.

(f) Compensatory mitigation projects provided to offset losses of aquatic resources must comply with the applicable provisions of 33 CFR part 332.

(1) The prospective permittee is responsible for proposing an appropriate compensatory mitigation option if compensatory mitigation is necessary to ensure that the activity results in no more than minimal adverse environmental effects. For the NWPs, the preferred mechanism for providing compensatory mitigation is mitigation bank credits or in-

lieu fee program credits (see 33 CFR 332.3(b)(2) and (3)). However, if an appropriate number and type of mitigation bank or in-lieu credits are not available at the time the PCN is submitted to the district engineer, the district engineer may approve the use of permittee-responsible mitigation.

(2) The amount of compensatory mitigation required by the district engineer must be sufficient to ensure that the authorized activity results in no more than minimal individual and cumulative adverse environmental effects (see 33 CFR 330.1(e)(3)). (See also 33 CFR 332.3(f)).

(3) Since the likelihood of success is greater and the impacts to potentially valuable uplands are reduced, aquatic resource restoration should be the first compensatory mitigation option considered for permittee-responsible mitigation.

(4) If permittee-responsible mitigation is the proposed option, the prospective permittee is responsible for submitting a mitigation plan. A conceptual or detailed mitigation plan may be used by the district engineer to make the decision on the NWP verification request, but a final mitigation plan that addresses the applicable requirements of 33 CFR 332.4(c)(2) through (14) must be approved by the district engineer before the permittee begins work in waters of the United States, unless the district engineer determines that prior approval of the final mitigation plan is not practicable or not necessary to ensure timely completion of the required compensatory mitigation (see 33 CFR 332.3(k)(3)).

(5) If mitigation bank or in-lieu fee program credits are the proposed option, the mitigation plan only needs to address the baseline conditions at the impact site and the number of credits to be provided.

(6) Compensatory mitigation requirements (e.g., resource type and amount to be provided as compensatory mitigation, site protection, ecological performance standards, monitoring requirements) may be addressed through conditions added to the NWP authorization, instead of components of a compensatory mitigation plan (see 33 CFR 332.4(c)(1)(ii)).

(g) Compensatory mitigation will not be used to increase the acreage losses allowed by the acreage limits of the NWPs. For example, if an NWP has an acreage limit of 1/2-acre, it cannot be used to authorize any NWP activity resulting in the loss of greater than 1/2-acre of waters of the United States, even if compensatory mitigation is provided that replaces or restores some of the lost waters. However, compensatory mitigation can and should be used, as necessary, to ensure that an NWP activity already meeting the established acreage limits also satisfies the no more than minimal impact requirement for the NWPs.

(h) Permittees may propose the use of mitigation banks, in-lieu fee programs, or permittee-responsible mitigation. When developing a compensatory mitigation proposal, the permittee must consider appropriate and practicable options consistent with the framework at 33 CFR 332.3(b). For activities resulting in the loss of marine or estuarine resources, permittee-responsible mitigation may be environmentally preferable if there are no mitigation banks or in-lieu fee programs in the area that have marine or estuarine credits available for sale or transfer to the permittee. For permittee-responsible mitigation, the special conditions of the NWP verification must clearly indicate the party or parties responsible for the implementation and performance of the compensatory mitigation project, and, if required, its long-term management.

(i) Where certain functions and services of waters of the United States are permanently adversely affected by a regulated activity, such as discharges of dredged or fill

material into waters of the United States that will convert a forested or scrub-shrub wetland to a herbaceous wetland in a permanently maintained utility line right-of-way, mitigation may be required to reduce the adverse environmental effects of the activity to the no more than minimal level.

24. Safety of Impoundment Structures. To ensure that all impoundment structures are safely designed, the district engineer may require non-Federal applicants to demonstrate that the structures comply with established state dam safety criteria or have been designed by qualified persons. The district engineer may also require documentation that the design has been independently reviewed by similarly qualified persons, and appropriate modifications made to ensure safety.

25. Water Quality. Where States and authorized Tribes, or EPA where applicable, have not previously certified compliance of an NWP with CWA section 401, individual 401 Water Quality Certification must be obtained or waived (see 33 CFR 330.4(c)). The district engineer or State or Tribe may require additional water quality management measures to ensure that the authorized activity does not result in more than minimal degradation of water quality.

26. Coastal Zone Management. In coastal states where an NWP has not previously received a state coastal zone management consistency concurrence, an individual state coastal zone management consistency concurrence must be obtained, or a presumption of concurrence must occur (see 33 CFR 330.4(d)). The district engineer or a State may require additional measures to ensure that the authorized activity is consistent with state coastal zone management requirements.

27. Regional and Case-By-Case Conditions. The activity must comply with any regional conditions that may have been added by the Division Engineer (see 33 CFR 330.4(e)) and with any case specific conditions added by the Corps or by the state, Indian Tribe, or U.S. EPA in its section 401 Water Quality Certification, or by the state in its Coastal Zone Management Act consistency determination.

28. Use of Multiple Nationwide Permits. The use of more than one NWP for a single and complete project is prohibited, except when the acreage loss of waters of the United States authorized by the NWPs does not exceed the acreage limit of the NWP with the highest specified acreage limit. For example, if a road crossing over tidal waters is constructed under NWP 14, with associated bank stabilization authorized by NWP 13, the maximum acreage loss of waters of the United States for the total project cannot exceed 1/3-acre.

29. Transfer of Nationwide Permit Verifications. If the permittee sells the property associated with a nationwide permit verification, the permittee may transfer the nationwide permit verification to the new owner by submitting a letter to the appropriate Corps district office to validate the transfer. A copy of the nationwide permit verification must be attached to the letter, and the letter must contain the following statement and signature:
“When the structures or work authorized by this nationwide permit are still in existence at the time the property is transferred, the terms and conditions of this nationwide permit, including any special conditions, will continue to be binding on the new owner(s) of the property. To

validate the transfer of this nationwide permit and the associated liabilities associated with compliance with its terms and conditions, have the transferee sign and date below.”

(Transferee)

(Date)

30. Compliance Certification. Each permittee who receives an NWP verification letter from the Corps must provide a signed certification documenting completion of the authorized activity and implementation of any required compensatory mitigation. The success of any required permittee-responsible mitigation, including the achievement of ecological performance standards, will be addressed separately by the district engineer. The Corps will provide the permittee the certification document with the NWP verification letter. The certification document will include:

(a) A statement that the authorized activity was done in accordance with the NWP authorization, including any general, regional, or activity-specific conditions;

(b) A statement that the implementation of any required compensatory mitigation was completed in accordance with the permit conditions. If credits from a mitigation bank or in-lieu fee program are used to satisfy the compensatory mitigation requirements, the certification must include the documentation required by 33 CFR 332.3(l)(3) to confirm that the permittee secured the appropriate number and resource type of credits; and

(c) The signature of the permittee certifying the completion of the activity and mitigation.

The completed certification document must be submitted to the district engineer within 30 days of completion of the authorized activity or the implementation of any required compensatory mitigation, whichever occurs later.

31. Activities Affecting Structures or Works Built by the United States. If an NWP activity also requires permission from the Corps pursuant to 33 U.S.C. 408 because it will alter or temporarily or permanently occupy or use a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) federally authorized Civil Works project (a “USACE project”), the prospective permittee must submit a pre-construction notification. See paragraph (b)(10) of general condition 32. An activity that requires section 408 permission is not authorized by NWP until the appropriate Corps office issues the section 408 permission to alter, occupy, or use the USACE project, and the district engineer issues a written NWP verification.

32. Pre-Construction Notification. (a) Timing. Where required by the terms of the NWP, the prospective permittee must notify the district engineer by submitting a pre-construction notification (PCN) as early as possible. The district engineer must determine if the PCN is complete within 30 calendar days of the date of receipt and, if the PCN is determined to be incomplete, notify the prospective permittee within that 30 day period to request the additional information necessary to make the PCN complete. The request must specify the information needed to make the PCN complete. As a general rule, district engineers will request additional information necessary to make the PCN complete only once. However, if the

prospective permittee does not provide all of the requested information, then the district engineer will notify the prospective permittee that the PCN is still incomplete and the PCN review process will not commence until all of the requested information has been received by the district engineer. The prospective permittee shall not begin the activity until either:

(1) He or she is notified in writing by the district engineer that the activity may proceed under the NWP with any special conditions imposed by the district or division engineer; or

(2) 45 calendar days have passed from the district engineer's receipt of the complete PCN and the prospective permittee has not received written notice from the district or division engineer. However, if the permittee was required to notify the Corps pursuant to general condition 18 that listed species or critical habitat might be affected or are in the vicinity of the activity, or to notify the Corps pursuant to general condition 20 that the activity might have the potential to cause effects to historic properties, the permittee cannot begin the activity until receiving written notification from the Corps that there is "no effect" on listed species or "no potential to cause effects" on historic properties, or that any consultation required under Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act (see 33 CFR 330.4(f)) and/or section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act (see 33 CFR 330.4(g)) has been completed. Also, work cannot begin under NWPs 21, 49, or 50 until the permittee has received written approval from the Corps. If the proposed activity requires a written waiver to exceed specified limits of an NWP, the permittee may not begin the activity until the district engineer issues the waiver. If the district or division engineer notifies the permittee in writing that an individual permit is required within 45 calendar days of receipt of a complete PCN, the permittee cannot begin the activity until an individual permit has been obtained. Subsequently, the permittee's right to proceed under the NWP may be modified, suspended, or revoked only in accordance with the procedure set forth in 33 CFR 330.5(d)(2).

(b) Contents of Pre-Construction Notification: The PCN must be in writing and include the following information:

(1) Name, address and telephone numbers of the prospective permittee;

(2) Location of the proposed activity;

(3) Identify the specific NWP or NWP(s) the prospective permittee wants to use to authorize the proposed activity;

(4) A description of the proposed activity; the activity's purpose; direct and indirect adverse environmental effects the activity would cause, including the anticipated amount of loss of wetlands, other special aquatic sites, and other waters expected to result from the NWP activity, in acres, linear feet, or other appropriate unit of measure; a description of any proposed mitigation measures intended to reduce the adverse environmental effects caused by the proposed activity; and any other NWP(s), regional general permit(s), or individual permit(s) used or intended to be used to authorize any part of the proposed project or any related activity, including other separate and distant crossings for linear projects that require Department of the Army authorization but do not require pre-construction notification. The description of the proposed activity and any proposed mitigation measures should be sufficiently detailed to allow the district engineer to determine that the adverse environmental effects of the activity will be no more than minimal and to determine the need for compensatory mitigation or other mitigation measures. For single and complete linear projects, the PCN must include the quantity of anticipated losses of wetlands, other special aquatic sites, and other waters for each single and complete crossing of those wetlands, other special aquatic sites, and other waters.

Sketches should be provided when necessary to show that the activity complies with the terms of the NWP. (Sketches usually clarify the activity and when provided results in a quicker decision. Sketches should contain sufficient detail to provide an illustrative description of the proposed activity (e.g., a conceptual plan), but do not need to be detailed engineering plans);

(5) The PCN must include a delineation of wetlands, other special aquatic sites, and other waters, such as lakes and ponds, and perennial, intermittent, and ephemeral streams, on the project site. Wetland delineations must be prepared in accordance with the current method required by the Corps. The permittee may ask the Corps to delineate the special aquatic sites and other waters on the project site, but there may be a delay if the Corps does the delineation, especially if the project site is large or contains many wetlands, other special aquatic sites, and other waters. Furthermore, the 45 day period will not start until the delineation has been submitted to or completed by the Corps, as appropriate;

(6) If the proposed activity will result in the loss of greater than 1/10-acre of wetlands and a PCN is required, the prospective permittee must submit a statement describing how the mitigation requirement will be satisfied, or explaining why the adverse environmental effects are no more than minimal and why compensatory mitigation should not be required. As an alternative, the prospective permittee may submit a conceptual or detailed mitigation plan.

(7) For non-Federal permittees, if any listed species or designated critical habitat might be affected or is in the vicinity of the activity, or if the activity is located in designated critical habitat, the PCN must include the name(s) of those endangered or threatened species that might be affected by the proposed activity or utilize the designated critical habitat that might be affected by the proposed activity. For NWP activities that require pre-construction notification, Federal permittees must provide documentation demonstrating compliance with the Endangered Species Act;

(8) For non-Federal permittees, if the NWP activity might have the potential to cause effects to a historic property listed on, determined to be eligible for listing on, or potentially eligible for listing on, the National Register of Historic Places, the PCN must state which historic property might have the potential to be affected by the proposed activity or include a vicinity map indicating the location of the historic property. For NWP activities that require pre-construction notification, Federal permittees must provide documentation demonstrating compliance with section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act;

(9) For an activity that will occur in a component of the National Wild and Scenic River System, or in a river officially designated by Congress as a “study river” for possible inclusion in the system while the river is in an official study status, the PCN must identify the Wild and Scenic River or the “study river” (see general condition 16); and

(10) For an activity that requires permission from the Corps pursuant to 33 U.S.C. 408 because it will alter or temporarily or permanently occupy or use a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers federally authorized civil works project, the pre-construction notification must include a statement confirming that the project proponent has submitted a written request for section 408 permission from the Corps office having jurisdiction over that USACE project.

(c) Form of Pre-Construction Notification: The standard individual permit application form (Form ENG 4345) may be used, but the completed application form must clearly indicate that it is an NWP PCN and must include all of the applicable information required in paragraphs (b)(1) through (10) of this general condition. A letter containing the required information may also be used. Applicants may provide electronic files of PCNs and

supporting materials if the district engineer has established tools and procedures for electronic submittals.

(d) Agency Coordination: (1) The district engineer will consider any comments from Federal and state agencies concerning the proposed activity's compliance with the terms and conditions of the NWPs and the need for mitigation to reduce the activity's adverse environmental effects so that they are no more than minimal.

(2) Agency coordination is required for: (i) all NWP activities that require pre-construction notification and result in the loss of greater than 1/2-acre of waters of the United States; (ii) NWP 21, 29, 39, 40, 42, 43, 44, 50, 51, and 52 activities that require pre-construction notification and will result in the loss of greater than 300 linear feet of stream bed; (iii) NWP 13 activities in excess of 500 linear feet, fills greater than one cubic yard per running foot, or involve discharges of dredged or fill material into special aquatic sites; and (iv) NWP 54 activities in excess of 500 linear feet, or that extend into the waterbody more than 30 feet from the mean low water line in tidal waters or the ordinary high water mark in the Great Lakes.

(3) When agency coordination is required, the district engineer will immediately provide (e.g., via e-mail, facsimile transmission, overnight mail, or other expeditious manner) a copy of the complete PCN to the appropriate Federal or state offices (FWS, state natural resource or water quality agency, EPA, and, if appropriate, the NMFS). With the exception of NWP 37, these agencies will have 10 calendar days from the date the material is transmitted to notify the district engineer via telephone, facsimile transmission, or e-mail that they intend to provide substantive, site-specific comments. The comments must explain why the agency believes the adverse environmental effects will be more than minimal. If so contacted by an agency, the district engineer will wait an additional 15 calendar days before making a decision on the pre-construction notification. The district engineer will fully consider agency comments received within the specified time frame concerning the proposed activity's compliance with the terms and conditions of the NWPs, including the need for mitigation to ensure the net adverse environmental effects of the proposed activity are no more than minimal. The district engineer will provide no response to the resource agency, except as provided below. The district engineer will indicate in the administrative record associated with each pre-construction notification that the resource agencies' concerns were considered. For NWP 37, the emergency watershed protection and rehabilitation activity may proceed immediately in cases where there is an unacceptable hazard to life or a significant loss of property or economic hardship will occur. The district engineer will consider any comments received to decide whether the NWP 37 authorization should be modified, suspended, or revoked in accordance with the procedures at 33 CFR 330.5.

(4) In cases of where the prospective permittee is not a Federal agency, the district engineer will provide a response to NMFS within 30 calendar days of receipt of any Essential Fish Habitat conservation recommendations, as required by section 305(b)(4)(B) of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act.

(5) Applicants are encouraged to provide the Corps with either electronic files or multiple copies of pre-construction notifications to expedite agency coordination.

DISTRICT ENGINEER'S DECISION

1. In reviewing the PCN for the proposed activity, the district engineer will determine whether the activity authorized by the NWP will result in more than minimal

individual or cumulative adverse environmental effects or may be contrary to the public interest. If a project proponent requests authorization by a specific NWP, the district engineer should issue the NWP verification for that activity if it meets the terms and conditions of that NWP, unless he or she determines, after considering mitigation, that the proposed activity will result in more than minimal individual and cumulative adverse effects on the aquatic environment and other aspects of the public interest and exercises discretionary authority to require an individual permit for the proposed activity. For a linear project, this determination will include an evaluation of the individual crossings of waters of the United States to determine whether they individually satisfy the terms and conditions of the NWP(s), as well as the cumulative effects caused by all of the crossings authorized by NWP. If an applicant requests a waiver of the 300 linear foot limit on impacts to streams or of an otherwise applicable limit, as provided for in NWPs 13, 21, 29, 36, 39, 40, 42, 43, 44, 50, 51, 52, or 54, the district engineer will only grant the waiver upon a written determination that the NWP activity will result in only minimal individual and cumulative adverse environmental effects. For those NWPs that have a waivable 300 linear foot limit for losses of intermittent and ephemeral stream bed and a 1/2-acre limit (i.e., NWPs 21, 29, 39, 40, 42, 43, 44, 50, 51, and 52), the loss of intermittent and ephemeral stream bed, plus any other losses of jurisdictional waters and wetlands, cannot exceed 1/2-acre.

2. When making minimal adverse environmental effects determinations the district engineer will consider the direct and indirect effects caused by the NWP activity. He or she will also consider the cumulative adverse environmental effects caused by activities authorized by NWP and whether those cumulative adverse environmental effects are no more than minimal. The district engineer will also consider site specific factors, such as the environmental setting in the vicinity of the NWP activity, the type of resource that will be affected by the NWP activity, the functions provided by the aquatic resources that will be affected by the NWP activity, the degree or magnitude to which the aquatic resources perform those functions, the extent that aquatic resource functions will be lost as a result of the NWP activity (e.g., partial or complete loss), the duration of the adverse effects (temporary or permanent), the importance of the aquatic resource functions to the region (e.g., watershed or ecoregion), and mitigation required by the district engineer. If an appropriate functional or condition assessment method is available and practicable to use, that assessment method may be used by the district engineer to assist in the minimal adverse environmental effects determination. The district engineer may add case-specific special conditions to the NWP authorization to address site-specific environmental concerns.

3. If the proposed activity requires a PCN and will result in a loss of greater than 1/10-acre of wetlands, the prospective permittee should submit a mitigation proposal with the PCN. Applicants may also propose compensatory mitigation for NWP activities with smaller impacts, or for impacts to other types of waters (e.g., streams). The district engineer will consider any proposed compensatory mitigation or other mitigation measures the applicant has included in the proposal in determining whether the net adverse environmental effects of the proposed activity are no more than minimal. The compensatory mitigation proposal may be either conceptual or detailed. If the district engineer determines that the activity complies with the terms and conditions of the NWP and that the adverse environmental effects are no more than minimal, after considering mitigation, the district engineer will notify the permittee and

include any activity-specific conditions in the NWP verification the district engineer deems necessary. Conditions for compensatory mitigation requirements must comply with the appropriate provisions at 33 CFR 332.3(k). The district engineer must approve the final mitigation plan before the permittee commences work in waters of the United States, unless the district engineer determines that prior approval of the final mitigation plan is not practicable or not necessary to ensure timely completion of the required compensatory mitigation. If the prospective permittee elects to submit a compensatory mitigation plan with the PCN, the district engineer will expeditiously review the proposed compensatory mitigation plan. The district engineer must review the proposed compensatory mitigation plan within 45 calendar days of receiving a complete PCN and determine whether the proposed mitigation would ensure the NWP activity results in no more than minimal adverse environmental effects. If the net adverse environmental effects of the NWP activity (after consideration of the mitigation proposal) are determined by the district engineer to be no more than minimal, the district engineer will provide a timely written response to the applicant. The response will state that the NWP activity can proceed under the terms and conditions of the NWP, including any activity-specific conditions added to the NWP authorization by the district engineer.

4. If the district engineer determines that the adverse environmental effects of the proposed activity are more than minimal, then the district engineer will notify the applicant either: (a) that the activity does not qualify for authorization under the NWP and instruct the applicant on the procedures to seek authorization under an individual permit; (b) that the activity is authorized under the NWP subject to the applicant's submission of a mitigation plan that would reduce the adverse environmental effects so that they are no more than minimal; or (c) that the activity is authorized under the NWP with specific modifications or conditions. Where the district engineer determines that mitigation is required to ensure no more than minimal adverse environmental effects, the activity will be authorized within the 45-day PCN period (unless additional time is required to comply with general conditions 18, 20, and/or 31, or to evaluate PCNs for activities authorized by NWPs 21, 49, and 50), with activity-specific conditions that state the mitigation requirements. The authorization will include the necessary conceptual or detailed mitigation plan or a requirement that the applicant submit a mitigation plan that would reduce the adverse environmental effects so that they are no more than minimal. When compensatory mitigation is required, no work in waters of the United States may occur until the district engineer has approved a specific mitigation plan or has determined that prior approval of a final mitigation plan is not practicable or not necessary to ensure timely completion of the required compensatory mitigation.

FURTHER INFORMATION

1. District Engineers have authority to determine if an activity complies with the terms and conditions of an NWP.
2. NWPs do not obviate the need to obtain other federal, state, or local permits, approvals, or authorizations required by law.
3. NWPs do not grant any property rights or exclusive privileges.
4. NWPs do not authorize any injury to the property or rights of others.
5. NWPs do not authorize interference with any existing or proposed Federal project (see general condition 31).

DEFINITIONS

Best management practices (BMPs): Policies, practices, procedures, or structures implemented to mitigate the adverse environmental effects on surface water quality resulting from development. BMPs are categorized as structural or non-structural.

Compensatory mitigation: The restoration (re-establishment or rehabilitation), establishment (creation), enhancement, and/or in certain circumstances preservation of aquatic resources for the purposes of offsetting unavoidable adverse impacts which remain after all appropriate and practicable avoidance and minimization has been achieved.

Currently serviceable: Useable as is or with some maintenance, but not so degraded as to essentially require reconstruction.

Direct effects: Effects that are caused by the activity and occur at the same time and place.

Discharge: The term “discharge” means any discharge of dredged or fill material into waters of the United States.

Ecological reference: A model used to plan and design an aquatic habitat and riparian area restoration, enhancement, or establishment activity under NWP 27. An ecological reference may be based on the structure, functions, and dynamics of an aquatic habitat type or a riparian area type that currently exists in the region where the proposed NWP 27 activity is located. Alternatively, an ecological reference may be based on a conceptual model for the aquatic habitat type or riparian area type to be restored, enhanced, or established as a result of the proposed NWP 27 activity. An ecological reference takes into account the range of variation of the aquatic habitat type or riparian area type in the region.

Enhancement: The manipulation of the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics of an aquatic resource to heighten, intensify, or improve a specific aquatic resource function(s). Enhancement results in the gain of selected aquatic resource function(s), but may also lead to a decline in other aquatic resource function(s). Enhancement does not result in a gain in aquatic resource area.

Ephemeral stream: An ephemeral stream has flowing water only during, and for a short duration after, precipitation events in a typical year. Ephemeral stream beds are located above the water table year-round. Groundwater is not a source of water for the stream. Runoff from rainfall is the primary source of water for stream flow.

Establishment (creation): The manipulation of the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics present to develop an aquatic resource that did not previously exist at an upland site. Establishment results in a gain in aquatic resource area.

High Tide Line: The line of intersection of the land with the water’s surface at the maximum height reached by a rising tide. The high tide line may be determined, in the absence of actual data, by a line of oil or scum along shore objects, a more or less continuous deposit of fine shell or debris on the foreshore or berm, other physical markings or characteristics, vegetation lines, tidal gages, or other suitable means that delineate the general height reached by a rising tide. The line encompasses spring high tides and other high tides that occur with periodic frequency but does not include storm surges in which there is a departure from the normal or predicted reach of the tide due to the piling up of water against a coast by strong winds such as those accompanying a hurricane or other intense storm.

Historic Property: Any prehistoric or historic district, site (including archaeological site), building, structure, or other object included in, or eligible for inclusion in, the National

Register of Historic Places maintained by the Secretary of the Interior. This term includes artifacts, records, and remains that are related to and located within such properties. The term includes properties of traditional religious and cultural importance to an Indian tribe or Native Hawaiian organization and that meet the National Register criteria (36 CFR part 60).

Independent utility: A test to determine what constitutes a single and complete non-linear project in the Corps Regulatory Program. A project is considered to have independent utility if it would be constructed absent the construction of other projects in the project area. Portions of a multi-phase project that depend upon other phases of the project do not have independent utility. Phases of a project that would be constructed even if the other phases were not built can be considered as separate single and complete projects with independent utility.

Indirect effects: Effects that are caused by the activity and are later in time or farther removed in distance, but are still reasonably foreseeable.

Intermittent stream: An intermittent stream has flowing water during certain times of the year, when groundwater provides water for stream flow. During dry periods, intermittent streams may not have flowing water. Runoff from rainfall is a supplemental source of water for stream flow.

Loss of waters of the United States: Waters of the United States that are permanently adversely affected by filling, flooding, excavation, or drainage because of the regulated activity. Permanent adverse effects include permanent discharges of dredged or fill material that change an aquatic area to dry land, increase the bottom elevation of a waterbody, or change the use of a waterbody. The acreage of loss of waters of the United States is a threshold measurement of the impact to jurisdictional waters for determining whether a project may qualify for an NWP; it is not a net threshold that is calculated after considering compensatory mitigation that may be used to offset losses of aquatic functions and services. The loss of stream bed includes the acres or linear feet of stream bed that are filled or excavated as a result of the regulated activity. Waters of the United States temporarily filled, flooded, excavated, or drained, but restored to pre-construction contours and elevations after construction, are not included in the measurement of loss of waters of the United States. Impacts resulting from activities that do not require Department of the Army authorization, such as activities eligible for exemptions under section 404(f) of the Clean Water Act, are not considered when calculating the loss of waters of the United States.

Navigable waters: Waters subject to section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act of 1899. These waters are defined at 33 CFR part 329.

Non-tidal wetland: A non-tidal wetland is a wetland that is not subject to the ebb and flow of tidal waters. Non-tidal wetlands contiguous to tidal waters are located landward of the high tide line (i.e., spring high tide line).

Open water: For purposes of the NWPs, an open water is any area that in a year with normal patterns of precipitation has water flowing or standing above ground to the extent that an ordinary high water mark can be determined. Aquatic vegetation within the area of flowing or standing water is either non-emergent, sparse, or absent. Vegetated shallows are considered to be open waters. Examples of "open waters" include rivers, streams, lakes, and ponds.

Ordinary High Water Mark: An ordinary high water mark is a line on the shore established by the fluctuations of water and indicated by physical characteristics, or by other appropriate means that consider the characteristics of the surrounding areas.

Perennial stream: A perennial stream has flowing water year-round during a typical year. The water table is located above the stream bed for most of the year. Groundwater is the

primary source of water for stream flow. Runoff from rainfall is a supplemental source of water for stream flow.

Practicable: Available and capable of being done after taking into consideration cost, existing technology, and logistics in light of overall project purposes.

Pre-construction notification: A request submitted by the project proponent to the Corps for confirmation that a particular activity is authorized by nationwide permit. The request may be a permit application, letter, or similar document that includes information about the proposed work and its anticipated environmental effects. Pre-construction notification may be required by the terms and conditions of a nationwide permit, or by regional conditions. A pre-construction notification may be voluntarily submitted in cases where pre-construction notification is not required and the project proponent wants confirmation that the activity is authorized by nationwide permit.

Preservation: The removal of a threat to, or preventing the decline of, aquatic resources by an action in or near those aquatic resources. This term includes activities commonly associated with the protection and maintenance of aquatic resources through the implementation of appropriate legal and physical mechanisms. Preservation does not result in a gain of aquatic resource area or functions.

Protected tribal resources: Those natural resources and properties of traditional or customary religious or cultural importance, either on or off Indian lands, retained by, or reserved by or for, Indian tribes through treaties, statutes, judicial decisions, or executive orders, including tribal trust resources.

Re-establishment: The manipulation of the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics of a site with the goal of returning natural/historic functions to a former aquatic resource. Re-establishment results in rebuilding a former aquatic resource and results in a gain in aquatic resource area and functions.

Rehabilitation: The manipulation of the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics of a site with the goal of repairing natural/historic functions to a degraded aquatic resource. Rehabilitation results in a gain in aquatic resource function, but does not result in a gain in aquatic resource area.

Restoration: The manipulation of the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics of a site with the goal of returning natural/historic functions to a former or degraded aquatic resource. For the purpose of tracking net gains in aquatic resource area, restoration is divided into two categories: re-establishment and rehabilitation.

Riffle and pool complex: Riffle and pool complexes are special aquatic sites under the 404(b)(1) Guidelines. Riffle and pool complexes sometimes characterize steep gradient sections of streams. Such stream sections are recognizable by their hydraulic characteristics. The rapid movement of water over a coarse substrate in riffles results in a rough flow, a turbulent surface, and high dissolved oxygen levels in the water. Pools are deeper areas associated with riffles. A slower stream velocity, a streaming flow, a smooth surface, and a finer substrate characterize pools.

Riparian areas: Riparian areas are lands next to streams, lakes, and estuarine- marine shorelines. Riparian areas are transitional between terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems, through which surface and subsurface hydrology connects riverine, lacustrine, estuarine, and marine waters with their adjacent wetlands, non-wetland waters, or uplands. Riparian areas provide a variety of ecological functions and services and help improve or maintain local water quality. (See general condition 23.)

Shellfish seeding: The placement of shellfish seed and/or suitable substrate to increase shellfish production. Shellfish seed consists of immature individual shellfish or individual shellfish attached to shells or shell fragments (i.e., spat on shell). Suitable substrate may consist of shellfish shells, shell fragments, or other appropriate materials placed into waters for shellfish habitat.

Single and complete linear project: A linear project is a project constructed for the purpose of getting people, goods, or services from a point of origin to a terminal point, which often involves multiple crossings of one or more waterbodies at separate and distant locations. The term “single and complete project” is defined as that portion of the total linear project proposed or accomplished by one owner/developer or partnership or other association of owners/developers that includes all crossings of a single water of the United States (i.e., a single waterbody) at a specific location. For linear projects crossing a single or multiple waterbodies several times at separate and distant locations, each crossing is considered a single and complete project for purposes of NWP authorization. However, individual channels in a braided stream or river, or individual arms of a large, irregularly shaped wetland or lake, etc., are not separate waterbodies, and crossings of such features cannot be considered separately.

Single and complete non-linear project: For non-linear projects, the term “single and complete project” is defined at 33 CFR 330.2(i) as the total project proposed or accomplished by one owner/developer or partnership or other association of owners/developers. A single and complete non-linear project must have independent utility (see definition of “independent utility”). Single and complete non-linear projects may not be “piecemealed” to avoid the limits in an NWP authorization.

Stormwater management: Stormwater management is the mechanism for controlling stormwater runoff for the purposes of reducing downstream erosion, water quality degradation, and flooding and mitigating the adverse effects of changes in land use on the aquatic environment.

Stormwater management facilities: Stormwater management facilities are those facilities, including but not limited to, stormwater retention and detention ponds and best management practices, which retain water for a period of time to control runoff and/or improve the quality (i.e., by reducing the concentration of nutrients, sediments, hazardous substances and other pollutants) of stormwater runoff.

Stream bed: The substrate of the stream channel between the ordinary high water marks. The substrate may be bedrock or inorganic particles that range in size from clay to boulders. Wetlands contiguous to the stream bed, but outside of the ordinary high water marks, are not considered part of the stream bed.

Stream channelization: The manipulation of a stream’s course, condition, capacity, or location that causes more than minimal interruption of normal stream processes. A channelized stream remains a water of the United States.

Structure: An object that is arranged in a definite pattern of organization. Examples of structures include, without limitation, any pier, boat dock, boat ramp, wharf, dolphin, weir, boom, breakwater, bulkhead, revetment, riprap, jetty, artificial island, artificial reef, permanent mooring structure, power transmission line, permanently moored floating vessel, piling, aid to navigation, or any other manmade obstacle or obstruction.

Tidal wetland: A tidal wetland is a jurisdictional wetland that is inundated by tidal waters. Tidal waters rise and fall in a predictable and measurable rhythm or cycle due to the gravitational pulls of the moon and sun. Tidal waters end where the rise and fall of the water

surface can no longer be practically measured in a predictable rhythm due to masking by other waters, wind, or other effects. Tidal wetlands are located channelward of the high tide line.

Tribal lands: Any lands title to which is either: 1) held in trust by the United States for the benefit of any Indian tribe or individual; or 2) held by any Indian tribe or individual subject to restrictions by the United States against alienation.

Tribal rights: Those rights legally accruing to a tribe or tribes by virtue of inherent sovereign authority, unextinguished aboriginal title, treaty, statute, judicial decisions, executive order or agreement, and that give rise to legally enforceable remedies.

Vegetated shallows: Vegetated shallows are special aquatic sites under the 404(b)(1) Guidelines. They are areas that are permanently inundated and under normal circumstances have rooted aquatic vegetation, such as seagrasses in marine and estuarine systems and a variety of vascular rooted plants in freshwater systems.

Waterbody: For purposes of the NWPs, a waterbody is a jurisdictional water of the United States. If a wetland is adjacent to a waterbody determined to be a water of the United States, that waterbody and any adjacent wetlands are considered together as a single aquatic unit (see 33 CFR 328.4(c)(2)). Examples of “waterbodies” include streams, rivers, lakes, ponds, and wetlands.

FINAL 2017 REGIONAL CONDITIONS

NOTICE ABOUT WEB LINKS IN THIS DOCUMENT:

The web links (both internal to our Wilmington District and any external links to collaborating agencies) in this document are valid at the time of publication. However, the Wilmington District Regulatory Program web page addresses, as with other agency web sites, may change over the timeframe of the five-year Nationwide Permit renewal cycle, in response to policy mandates or technology advances. While we will make every effort to check on the integrity of our web links and provide re-direct pages whenever possible, we ask that you report any broken links to us so we can keep the page information current and usable. We apologize in advanced for any broken links that you may encounter, and we ask that you navigate from the Regulatory home page (Regulatory Permit Program Wetlands and Streams) of the Wilmington District Corps of Engineers, to the “Permits” section of our web site to find links for pages that cannot be found by clicking directly on the listed web link in this document.

Final 2017 Regional Conditions for Nationwide Permits (NWP) in the Wilmington District

1.0 Excluded Waters

The Corps has identified waters that will be excluded from the use of all NWP’s during certain timeframes. These waters are:

1.1 Anadromous Fish Spawning Areas

Waters of the United States identified by either the North Carolina Division of Marine Fisheries (NCDMF) or the North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission (NCWRC) as anadromous fish spawning areas are excluded during the period between February 15 and June 30, without prior written approval from the Corps and either NCDMF or NCWRC.

1.2 Trout Waters Moratorium

Waters of the United States in the designated trout watersheds of North Carolina are excluded during the period between October 15 and April 15 without prior written approval from the NCWRC, or from the Eastern Band of Cherokee Indians (EBCI) Fisheries and Wildlife Management (FWM) office if the project is located on EBCI trust land. (See Section 2.7 for information on the designated trout watersheds).

1.3 Sturgeon Spawning Areas as Designated by the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS)

Waters of the United States designated as sturgeon spawning areas are excluded during the period between February 1 and June 30, without prior written approval from the NMFS.

2.0 Waters Requiring Additional Notification

The Corps has identified waters that will be subject to additional notification requirements for activities authorized by all NWPs. These waters are:

2.1 Western NC Counties that Drain to Designated Critical Habitat

For proposed activities within waters of the United States that require a Pre-Construction Notification (PCN) and are located in the sixteen counties listed below, permittees must provide a copy of the PCN to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), 160 Zillicoa Street, Asheville, North Carolina 28801. This PCN must be sent concurrently to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and the Corps Asheville Regulatory Field Office. Please see General Condition 18 for specific notification requirements related to the Endangered Species Act and the below website for information on the location of designated critical habitat.

Counties with tributaries that drain to designated critical habitat that require notification to the Asheville U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service: Avery, Cherokee, Forsyth, Graham, Haywood, Henderson, Jackson, Macon, Mecklenburg, Mitchell, Stokes, Surry, Swain, Transylvania, Union and Yancey.

Website and office addresses for Endangered Species Act Information:

The Wilmington District has developed the following website for permittees which provides guidelines on how to review linked websites and maps in order to fulfill NWP General Condition 18 requirements:

<http://www.saw.usace.army.mil/Missions/RegulatoryPermitProgram/AgencyCoordination/ESA.asp>

Permittees who do not have internet access may contact the appropriate U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service offices listed below or Corps at (910) 251-4633:

Asheville U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Office counties: All counties west of and including Anson, Stanly, Davidson, Forsythe and Stokes Counties.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Asheville Field Office
160 Zillicoa Street
Asheville, NC 28801
Telephone: (828) 258-3939

Raleigh U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Office counties: all counties east of and including Richmond, Montgomery, Randolph, Guilford, and Rockingham Counties.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Raleigh Field Office
Post Office Box 33726

Raleigh, NC 27636-3726
Telephone: (919) 856-4520

2.2 Special Designation Waters

Prior to the use of any NWP, except NWP 3, that involves a discharge of dredged or fill material in any of the following identified waters and/or adjacent wetlands in North Carolina, permittees shall submit a PCN to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity (see General Condition 32). The North Carolina waters and wetlands that require additional notification requirements are:

“Outstanding Resource Waters” (ORW) or “High Quality Waters” (HQW) as designated by the North Carolina Environmental Management Commission; “Primary Nursery Areas” (PNA), including inland PNA, as designated by the North Carolina Marine Fisheries Commission and the NCWRC; or wetlands adjacent to these waters. Definitions of ORW, HQW and PNA waters can be found in the North Carolina State Administrative Code, Title 15A, Subchapters 2B and 10C (15A NCAC 02B, 15A NCAC 10C) and at the following World Wide Web page: <http://reports.oah.state.nc.us/ncac.asp?folderName=\Title%2015A%20-%20Environmental%20Quality&lookupError=15A%20NCAC%20000%20>. Surface water classifications for waters in North Carolina can be viewed at the North Carolina Division of Water Resources website or at the following World Wide Web Page: <https://deq.nc.gov/about/divisions/water-resources/planning/classification-standards/classifications>

Permittees who do not have internet access may contact the Corps at (910) 251- 4633.

2.3 Coastal Area Management Act (CAMA) Areas of Environmental Concern

Non-federal permittees for any NWP in a designated “Area of Environmental Concern” (AEC) in the twenty (20) counties of Eastern North Carolina covered by the North Carolina Coastal Area Management Act (CAMA) must also obtain the required CAMA permit. Development activities for non-federal projects may not commence until a copy of the approved CAMA permit is furnished to the appropriate Wilmington District Regulatory Field Office (Wilmington Field Office – 69 Darlington Avenue, Wilmington, NC 28403, (910) 251-4802 or Washington Field Office – 2407 West 5th Street, Washington, NC 27889, (910) 251-4610).

2.4 Barrier Islands

Prior to the use of any NWP on a barrier island of North Carolina, permittees must submit a PCN to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity (see General Condition 32).

2.5 Mountain or Piedmont Bogs

Prior to the use of any NWP in a Bog, as classified by the North Carolina Wetland Assessment Methodology (NCWAM), permittees shall submit a PCN to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity (see General Condition 32). The latest version of NCWAM can be

viewed on the Corps RIBITS (Regulatory In-lieu Fee and Bank Information Tracking System) website or at the following World Wide Web Page:
https://ribits.usace.army.mil/ribits_apex/f?p=107:27:0::NO::

2.6 Animal Waste Facilities

Prior to use of any NWP for construction of animal waste facilities in waters of the United States, including wetlands, permittees shall submit a PCN to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity (see General Condition 32).

2.7 Trout Waters

Prior to any discharge of dredge or fill material into streams, waterbodies or wetlands within the 294 designated trout watersheds of North Carolina, the permittee shall submit a PCN (see General Condition 32) to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity, unless other thresholds are established in the Regional Conditions in Section 4 (Additional Regional Conditions for Specific Nationwide Permits). The permittee shall also provide a copy of the notification to the appropriate NCWRC office, or to the EBCI FWM Office (if the project is located on EBCI trust land), to facilitate the determination of any potential impacts to designated Trout Waters.

Notification to the Corps will include a statement with the name of the NCWRC or EBCI FWM biologist contacted, the date of the notification, the location of work, a delineation of wetlands and waters, a discussion of alternatives to working in the mountain trout waters, why alternatives were not selected, and, if applicable, a plan to provide compensatory mitigation for all unavoidable adverse impacts to mountain trout waters.

NCWRC and NC Trout Watersheds:

NCWRC Contact**	Counties that are entirely within Trout Watersheds*	Counties that are partially within Trout Watersheds*
Mountain Coordinator Balsam Depot 20830 Great Smoky Mountain Expressway Waynesville, NC 28786 Telephone: (828) 558-6011 For NCDOT Projects: NCDOT Coordinator 206 Charter. Street Albemarle, NC 28001 Telephone: (704) 982-9181	Alleghany Jackson Ashe Macon Avery Swain Graham Transylvania Haywood Watauga	Burke McDowell Buncombe Mitchell Caldwell Polk Cherokee Rutherford Clay Surry Henderson Wilkes Madison Yancey

*NOTE: To determine notification requirements, contact the Corps Asheville Regulatory Field Office at (828) 271-7980 or view maps for each County at the following World Wide Web page: <http://www.saw.usace.army.mil/Missions/Regulatory-Permit-Program/Agency-Coordination/Trout/>.

**If a project is located on EBCI trust land, submit the PCN in accordance with Section 3.14. Contact the Corps Asheville Regulatory Field Office at (828) 271-7980 with questions.

2.8 Western NC Waters and Corridors

The permittee shall submit a PCN (see General Condition 32) to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity in waters of the United States if the activity will occur within any of the following identified waters in western North Carolina, within 0.5 mile on either side of these waters, or within 0.75 mile of the Little Tennessee River, as measured from the top of the bank of the respective water (i.e., river, stream, or creek):

Brasstown Creek
Burningtown Creek
Cane River
Caney Fork
Cartoogechaye Creek
Chattooga River
Cheoah River
Cowee Creek
Cullasaja River
Deep Creek
Ellijay Creek
French Broad River
Garden Creek
Hiwassee River
Hominy Creek
Iotla Creek
Little Tennessee River (within the river or within 0.75 mile on either side of this river)
Nantahala River
Nolichucky River
North Fork French Broad River
North Toe River
Nottley River
Oconaluftee River (portion not located on trust/EBCI land)
Peachtree Creek
Shooting Creek
Snowbird Creek
South Toe River
Stecoah Creek
Swannanoa River
Sweetwater Creek

Tuckasegee River (also spelled Tuckaseegee or Tuckaseigee)
Valley River
Watauga Creek
Watauga River
Wayah Creek
West Fork French Broad River

To determine notification requirements, contact the Corps Asheville Regulatory Field Office at (828) 271-7980 or view maps for all corridors at the following World Wide Web page:
<http://www.saw.usace.army.mil/Missions/Regulatory-Permit-Program/Agency-Coordination/Designated-Special-Waters.aspx>

3.0 List of Corps Regional Conditions for All Nationwide Permits

The following conditions apply to all Nationwide Permits in the Wilmington District:

3.1 Limitation of Loss of Stream Bed

NWPs may not be used for activities that may result in the loss or degradation of more than 300 total linear feet of stream bed, unless the District Engineer has waived the 300 linear foot limit for ephemeral and intermittent streams on a case-by-case basis and has determined that the proposed activity will result in minimal individual and cumulative adverse impacts to the aquatic environment. Waivers for the loss of ephemeral and intermittent streams must be in writing and documented by appropriate/accepted stream quality assessments*. This waiver only applies to the 300 linear feet threshold for NWPs.

This Regional Condition does not apply to NWP 23 (Approved Categorical Exclusions).

*NOTE: Permittees should utilize the most current methodology prescribed by Wilmington District to assess stream function and quality. Information can be found at:
https://ribits.usace.army.mil/ribits_apex/f?p=107:27:0::NO::

3.2 Mitigation for Loss of Stream Bed

For any NWP that results in a loss of more than 150 linear feet of stream, the permittee shall provide a mitigation proposal to compensate for more than minimal individual and cumulative adverse impacts to the aquatic environment. For stream losses of 150 linear feet or less that require a PCN, the District Engineer may determine, on a case-by-case basis, that compensatory mitigation is required to ensure that the activity results in minimal adverse effect on the aquatic environment.

3.3 Pre-construction Notification for Loss of Streambed Exceeding 150 Feet

Prior to use of any NWP for any activity which impacts more than 150 total linear feet of perennial stream, intermittent or ephemeral stream, the permittee shall submit a PCN to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity (see General Condition 32). This applies to

NWPs that do not have specific notification requirements. If a NWP has specific notification requirements, the requirements of the NWP should be followed.

3.4 Restriction on Use of Live Concrete

For all NWPs which allow the use of concrete as a building material, live or fresh concrete, including bags of uncured concrete, may not come into contact with the water in or entering into waters of the United States. Water inside coffer dams or casings that has been in contact with wet concrete shall only be returned to waters of the United States after the concrete is set and cured and when it no longer poses a threat to aquatic organisms.

3.5 Requirements for Using Riprap for Bank Stabilization

For all NWPs that allow for the use of riprap material for bank stabilization, the following measures shall be applied:

3.5.1. Where bank stabilization is conducted as part of an activity, natural design, bioengineering and/or geoen지니어ing methods that incorporate natural durable materials, native seed mixes, and native plants and shrubs are to be utilized to the maximum extent practicable.

3.5.2. Filter cloth must be placed underneath the riprap as an additional requirement of its use in North Carolina waters. The placement of filter fabric is not required if the riprap will be pushed or “keyed” into the bank of the waterbody. A waiver from the specifications in this Regional Condition may be requested in writing. The waiver will only be issued if it can be demonstrated that the impacts of complying with this Regional Condition would result in greater adverse impacts to the aquatic environment.

3.5.3. The placement of riprap shall be limited to the areas depicted on submitted work plan drawings.

3.5.4. The riprap material shall be clean and free from loose dirt or any pollutant except in trace quantities that would not have an adverse environmental effect.

3.5.5. It shall be of a size sufficient to prevent its movement from the authorized alignment by natural forces under normal conditions.

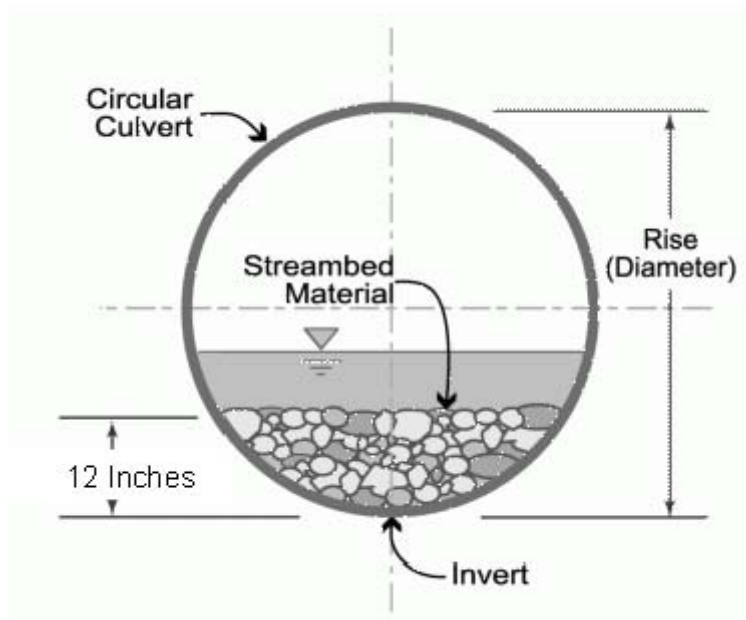
3.5.6. The riprap material shall consist of clean rock or masonry material such as, but not limited to, granite, marl, or broken concrete.

3.6 Requirements for Culvert Placement

3.6.1 For all NWPs that involve the construction/installation of culverts, measures will be included in the construction/installation that will promote the safe passage of fish and other aquatic organisms. The dimension, pattern, and profile of the stream above and below a pipe or culvert should not be modified by altering the width or depth of the stream profile in connection with the construction activity. The width, height, and gradient of a proposed culvert should be

sufficient to pass the average historical low flow and spring flow without adversely altering flow velocity. Spring flow is the seasonal sustained high flow that typically occurs in the spring. Spring flows should be determined from gage data, if available. In the absence of such data, bank-full flow can be used as a comparable indicator.

In Public Trust Areas of Environmental Concern (AEC) and/or the Estuarine Waters AEC as designated by the Coastal Area Management Act (CAMA): All pipes/culverts must be sufficiently sized to allow for the burial of the bottom of the culvert at least one foot below normal bed elevation.



In all other areas: Culverts greater than 48 inches in diameter will be buried at least one foot below the bed of the stream. Culverts 48 inches in diameter or less shall be buried to maintain aquatic passage and to maintain passage during drought or low flow conditions, and every effort shall be made to maintain the existing channel slope.

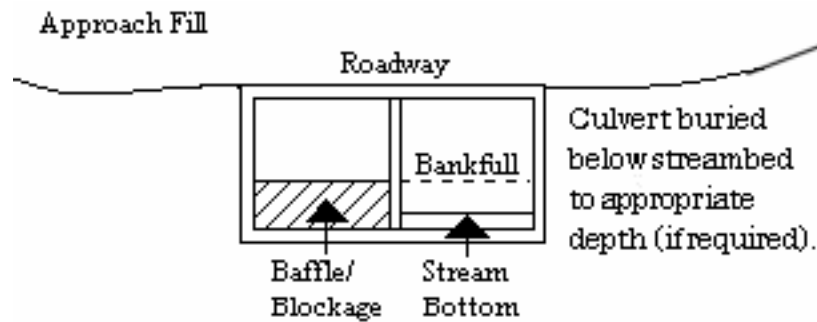
Culverts must be designed and constructed in a manner that minimizes destabilization and head cutting. Destabilizing the channel and head cutting upstream should be considered and appropriate actions incorporated in the design and placement of the culvert.

A waiver from the depth specifications in this condition may be requested, in writing, by the permittee and issued by the Corp; this request must be specific as to the reason(s) for the request. The waiver will be issued if it can be demonstrated that the proposed design would result in less impacts to the aquatic environment.

All counties: Culverts placed within riparian and/or riverine wetlands must be installed in a manner that does not restrict the flow and circulation patterns of waters of the United States.

Culverts placed across wetland fills purely for the purposes of equalizing surface water do not have to be buried, but the culverts must be of adequate size and/or number to ensure unrestricted transmission of water.

3.6.2 Bank-full flows (or less) shall be accommodated through maintenance of the existing bank-full channel cross sectional area. Additional culverts or culvert barrels at such crossings shall be allowed only to receive bank-full flows.



3.6.3 Where adjacent floodplain is available, flows exceeding bank-full should be accommodated by installing culverts at the floodplain elevation. Additional culverts or culvert barrels at such crossings should not be buried, or if buried, must have sills at the inlets to ensure that they only receive flows exceeding bank-full.

3.6.4 Excavation of existing stream channels shall be limited to the minimum necessary to construct or install the proposed culvert. The final width of the impacted stream at the culvert inlet and outlet should be no greater than the original stream width. A waiver from this condition may be requested in writing; this request must be specific as to the reason(s) for the request. The waiver will be issued if the proposed design would result in less impacts to the aquatic environment and/or if it can be demonstrated that it is not practicable to restore the final width of the impacted stream at the culvert inlet and outlet to the width of the original stream channel.

3.6.5 The width of the culvert shall be comparable to the width of the stream channel. If the width of the culvert is wider than the stream channel, the culvert shall include baffles, benches and/or sills to maintain the width of the stream channel. A waiver from this condition may be requested in writing; this request must be specific as to the reason(s) for the request. The waiver will be issued if it can be demonstrated that it is not practicable or necessary to include baffles, benches or sills and the design would result in less impacts to the aquatic environment.

3.7 Notification to NCDEQ Shellfish Sanitation Section

Permittees shall notify the NCDEQ Shellfish Sanitation Section prior to dredging in or removing sediment from an area closed to shell fishing where the effluent may be released to an area open for shell fishing or swimming in order to avoid contamination from the disposal area and cause a temporary shellfish closure to be made. Such notification shall also be provided to the appropriate Corps Regulatory Field Office. Any disposal of sand to the ocean beach should occur between November 1 and April 30 when recreational usage is low. Only clean sand

should be used and no dredged sand from closed shell fishing areas may be used. If beach disposal were to occur at times other than stated above or if sand from a closed shell fishing area is to be used, a swimming advisory shall be posted, and a press release shall be issued by the permittee.

3.8 Submerged Aquatic Vegetation

Impacts to Submerged Aquatic Vegetation (SAV) are not authorized by any NWP, except NWP 48, unless EFH Consultation has been completed pursuant to the Magnuson-Stevens Fisheries Conservation and Management Act (Magnuson-Stevens Act). Permittees shall submit a PCN (See NWP General Condition 32) to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity if the project would affect SAV. The permittee may not begin work until notified by the Corps that the requirements of the Magnuson-Stevens Act have been satisfied and that the activity is authorized.

3.9 Sedimentation and Erosion Control Structures and Measures

All PCNs will identify and describe sedimentation and erosion control structures and measures proposed for placement in waters of the United States. The structures and measures should be depicted on maps, surveys or drawings showing location and impacts to jurisdictional wetlands and streams.

3.10 Restoration of Temporary Impacts to Stream Beds

Upon completion of work that involves temporary stream impacts, streambeds are to be restored to pre-project elevations and widths using natural streambed material such that the impacted stream reach mimics the adjacent upstream and downstream reach. The impacted area shall be backfilled with natural streambed material to a depth of at least 12 inches or to the bottom depth of the impacted area if shallower than 12 inches. An engineered in-stream structure or material can be used to provide protection of a buried structure if it provides benefits to the aquatic environment and can be accomplished by a natural streambed design. A permittee may request a waiver of this condition if it is determined a buried structure needs significant physical protection beyond those provided in this condition. This condition does not apply to NWP 27 – Aquatic Habitat Restoration, Enhancement, and Establishment Activities.

3.11 Restoration of Temporary Impacts to Stream Banks

Upon completion of work involving temporary stream bank impacts, stream banks are to be restored to pre-project grade and contours or beneficial grade and contours if the original bank slope is steep and unstable. Natural durable materials, native seed mixes, and native plants and shrubs are to be utilized in the restoration. Natural designs which use bioengineered and/or geo-engineered methods are to be applied. An engineered structure or material can be used to provide protection of a buried structure if it provides benefits to the stream bank environment, provided it is not in excess of the minimum amount needed for protection and does not exceed an average of one cubic yard per running foot placed along the bank below the plane of the ordinary high water mark. A permittee may request a waiver of this condition if it is determined a buried structure

needs significant physical protection beyond those provided in this condition. This condition does not apply to NWP 27 – Aquatic Habitat Restoration, Enhancement, and Establishment Activities.

3.12 Federal Navigation Channel Setbacks and Corps Easements

3.12.1 Authorized structures and fills located in or adjacent to Federally authorized waterways will be constructed in accordance with the latest setback criteria established by the Wilmington District Engineer. You may review the setback policy at <http://www.saw.usace.army.mil/Missions/Navigation/Setbacks.aspx>. This general permit does not authorize the construction of hardened or permanently fixed structures within the Federally Authorized Channel Setback, unless the activity is approved by the Corps. The permittee shall submit a PCN (see General Condition 32) to the District Engineer prior to the construction of any structures or fills within the Federally Authorized Channel Setback.

3.12.2 The permittee shall obtain a Consent to Cross Government Easement from the Wilmington District’s Land Use Coordinator prior to any crossing of the Corps easement and/or prior to commencing construction of any structures, authorized dredging or other work within the right-of-way of, or in proximity to, a federally designated disposal area. The Land Use Coordinator may be contacted at: CESA-W-OP-N, 69 Darlington Avenue, Wilmington, North Carolina 28403-1343, email: SAWWeb-NAV@usace.army.mil

3.13 Northern Long-eared Bat – Endangered Species Act Compliance

The Wilmington District, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers has consulted with the United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) in regards to the threatened Northern long-eared bat (NLEB) (*Myotis septentrionalis*) and Standard Local Operating Procedures for Endangered Species (SLOPES) have been approved by the Corps and the USFWS. This condition concerns effects to the NLEB only and does not address effects to other federally listed species and/or federally designated critical habitat.

A. Procedures when the Corps is the lead federal* agency for a project:

The permittee must comply with (1) and (2) below when:

- the project is located in the western 41 counties of North Carolina, to include non-federal aid North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) projects, OR;
- the project is located in the 59 eastern counties of North Carolina, and is a non-NCDOT project.

*Generally, if a project is located on private property or on non-federal land, and the project is not being funded by a federal entity, the Corps will be the lead federal agency due to the requirement to obtain Department of the Army authorization to impact waters of the United States. If the project is located on federal land, contact the Corps to determine the lead federal agency.

(1) A permittee using a NWP must check to see if their project is located in the range of the NLEB by using the following website:

<http://www.fws.gov/midwest/endangered/mammals/nleb/pdf/WNSZone.pdf>. If the project is within the range of the NLEB, or if the project includes percussive activities (e.g., blasting, pile driving, etc.), the permittee is then required to check the appropriate website in the paragraph below to discover if their project:

- is located in a 12-digit Hydrologic Unit Code area (“red HUC” - shown as red areas on the map), AND/OR;
- involves percussive activities within 0.25 mile of a red HUC.

Red HUC maps - for the western 41 counties in NC (covered by the Asheville Ecological Services Field Office), check the project location against the electronic maps found at: http://www.fws.gov/asheville/htmls/project_review/NLEB_in_WNC.html. For the eastern 59 counties in NC (covered by the Raleigh Ecological Services Field Office), check the project location against the electronic maps found at:

https://www.fws.gov/raleigh/NLEB_RFO.html.

(2) A permittee must submit a PCN to the District Engineer, and receive written authorization from the District Engineer, prior to commencing the activity, if the activity will involve any of the following:

- tree clearing/removal, construction/installation of wind turbines in a red HUC, AND/OR;
- bridge removal or maintenance, unless the bridge has been inspected and there is no evidence of bat use, (applies anywhere in the range of the NLEB), AND/OR;
- percussive activities in a red HUC, or within 0.25 mile of a red HUC.

The permittee may proceed with the activity without submitting a PCN to either the Corps or the USFWS, provided the activity complies with all applicable NWP terms and general and regional conditions, if the permittee’s review under A.(1) and A.(2) above shows that the project is:

- located outside of a red HUC (and there are no percussive activities), and the activity will NOT include bridge removal or maintenance, unless the bridge has been inspected and there is no evidence of bat use, OR;
- located outside of a red HUC and there are percussive activities, but the percussive activities will not occur within 0.25-mile of a red HUC boundary, and the activity will NOT include bridge removal or maintenance, unless the bridge has been inspected and there is no evidence of bat use, OR;

- located in a red HUC, but the activity will NOT include: tree clearing/removal; construction/installation of wind turbines; bridge removal or maintenance, unless the bridge has been inspected and there is no evidence of bat use, and/or; any percussive activities.

B. Procedures when the USACE is not the lead federal agency:

For projects where another federal agency is the lead federal agency - if that other federal agency has completed project-specific ESA Section 7(a)(2) consultation for the NLEB, and has (1) determined that the project would not cause prohibited incidental take of the NLEB, and (2) completed coordination/consultation that is required by the USFWS (per the directions on the respective USFWS office's website), that project may proceed without notification to either the USACE or the USFWS, provided all General and Regional Permit Conditions are met.

The NLEB SLOPES can be viewed on the USACE website at the following World Wide Web Page: <http://www.saw.usace.army.mil/Missions/Regulatory-Permit-Program/Agency-Coordination/ESA/>. Permittees who do not have internet access may contact the USACE at (910) 251- 4633.

3.14 Work on Eastern Band of Cherokee Indians Land

All PCNs submitted for activities in waters of the United States on Eastern Band of Cherokee Indians (EBCI) trust land (i.e., Qualla Boundary and non-contiguous tracts of trust land), must comply with the requirements of the latest MOU between the Wilmington District and the Eastern Band of Cherokee Indians.

4.0 Additional Regional Conditions for Specific Nationwide Permits

4.1 NWP #3 – Maintenance

4.1.1 In designated trout watersheds, a PCN is not required for impacts to a maximum of 75 linear feet (150 linear feet for temporary dewatering) of streams and waterbodies when conducting maintenance activities. Minor deviations in an existing structure's configuration, temporary structures and temporary fills are authorized as part of the maintenance activity. In designated trout watersheds, the permittee shall submit a PCN (see Regional Condition 2.7 and General Condition 32) to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity if; 1) impacts (other than temporary dewatering to work in dry conditions) to streams or waterbodies exceed 75 linear feet; 2) temporary impacts to streams or waterbodies associated with dewatering to work in dry conditions exceeds 150 linear feet; 3) the project will involve impacts to wetlands; 4) the project involves the replacement of a bridge or spanning structure with a culvert or non-spanning structure in waters of the United States; or 5) the activity will be constructed during the trout waters moratorium (October 15 through April 15).

4.1.2 The permittee shall submit a PCN (see NWP General Condition 32) to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity if the activity involves repair, rehabilitation or replacement of impounding structures or parts of impounding structures or fills.

4.1.3 The permittee shall submit a PCN to the District Engineer prior to commencing the activity if the activity will involve the discharge of dredged or fill material into more than 1/10-acre of wetlands or 150 linear feet of stream channel for the construction of temporary access fills and/or temporary road crossings. The PCN must include a restoration plan that thoroughly describes how all temporary fills will be removed, how pre-project conditions will be restored, and include a timetable for all restoration activities.

ROY COOPER
Governor
MICHAEL S. REGAN
Secretary
LINDA CULPEPPER
Director



August 19 2019
Warren County
NCDWR Project No. 20191084
Bridge 135 on SR 1609
State Project No. 17BP.5.R.88

APPROVAL of 401 WATER QUALITY CERTIFICATION and TAR-PAMLICO BUFFER AUTHORIZATION, with ADDITIONAL CONDITIONS

Mr. Joey Hopkins, P.E., Division Engineer
NCDOT, Division 5
2612 North Duke Street
Durham, NC 27704

Dear Mr. Hopkins:

You have our approval, in accordance with the conditions listed below, for the following impacts for the purpose of replacing Bridge 135 with a bottomless arch culvert in Warren County:

Stream Impacts in the Tar-Pamlico River Basin

Site	Culvert over Perennial Stream (linear ft)	Bank Stabilization to Perennial Stream (linear ft)	Temporary Dewatering to Perennial Stream (linear ft)	Total Stream Impact (linear ft)
Total	52	99	176	327

Total Stream Impact for Project: 327 linear feet.

Wetland Impacts in the Tar-Pamlico River Basin

Site	Permanent Fill (ac)	Excavation (ac)	Mechanized Clearing (ac)	Total Wetland Impact (ac)
Total	0.001	0.003	0.007	0.011

Total Wetland Impact for Project: 0.011 acres.

Tar-Pamlico Riparian Buffer Impacts

Site	Zone 1 Impact (sq ft)	Zone 1 Buffer Mitigation Required (using 3:1 ratio)	Zone 2 Impact (sq ft)	Zone 2 Buffer Mitigation Required (using 1.5:1 ratio)
Totals	6782	N/A	6806	N/A

* n/a = Total for Site is less than 1/3 acre and 150 linear feet of impact, no mitigation required

Total Buffer Impact for Project: 13588 square feet.



The project shall be constructed in accordance with your application received August 14, 2019. After reviewing your application, we have decided that these impacts are covered by General Water Quality Certification Number 4132. This certification corresponds to the Nationwide Permit 3 issued by the Corps of Engineers. This approval is also valid for the Tar-Pamlico Riparian Buffer Rules. In addition, you should acquire any other federal, state or local permits before you proceed with your project including (but not limited to) Sediment and Erosion Control, Non-Discharge and Water Supply Watershed regulations. This approval will expire with the accompanying 404 permit.

This approval is valid solely for the purpose and design described in your application (unless modified below). Should your project change, you must notify the NCDWR and submit a new application. If the property is sold, the new owner must be given a copy of this Certification and approval letter, and is thereby responsible for complying with all the conditions. If total wetland fills for this project (now or in the future) exceed one acre, or of total impacts to streams (now or in the future) exceed 150 linear feet, compensatory mitigation may be required as described in 15A NCAC 2H .0506 (h) (6) and (7). Additional buffer impacts may require compensatory mitigation as described in 15A NCAC 2B.0259. For this approval to remain valid, you must adhere to the conditions listed in the General Certification and any additional conditions listed below.

Conditions of Certification:

1. The project shall be designed, constructed, and operated with sediment and erosion control measures that meet Design Standards in Sensitive Watersheds (15A NCAC 4B .0124). However, due to the size of the project, NC DOT shall not be required to meet 15A NCAC 4B .0124(a) regarding the maximum amount of uncovered acres.
2. As a condition of this 401 Water Quality Certification, the bridge demolition and construction must be accomplished in strict compliance with the most recent version of NCDOT's Best Management Practices for Construction and Maintenance Activities. [15A NCAC 02H .0507(d)(2) and 15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(5)]
3. A turbidity curtain will be installed in the stream if driving or drilling activities occur within the stream channel, on the stream bank, or within 5 feet of the top of bank, or during the removal of bents from an old bridge. This condition can be waived with prior approval from the NCDWR. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(3)]
4. Stormwater outfalls shall not discharge directly into the stream. Stormwater shall be directed and pre-treated through site-appropriate means (grassed swales, pre-formed scour holes, vegetated buffers, etc.) before entering the stream. To meet the requirements of NCDOT's NPDES permit NCS0000250, please refer to the most recent version of the *North Carolina Department of Transportation Stormwater Best Management Practices Toolbox* manual for approved measures. [15A NCAC 02H .0507(d)(2) and 15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(5)]
5. Design and placement of the culvert and other structures shall be installed in such a manner that the original stream profiles are not altered (i.e., the depth of the channel must not be reduced by a widening of the streambed). Existing stream dimensions (including pattern and profile) are to be maintained above and below locations of each culvert. The structures shall be designed and installed to allow for fish and other wildlife movement as well as prevent headcutting of the stream. The applicant may be required to provide evidence that the equilibrium has been maintained if requested in writing by the NCDWR. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(2)]
6. Riprap shall not be placed in the active thalweg channel or placed in the streambed in a manner that precludes aquatic life passage. Bioengineering boulders or structures should be properly designed, sized and installed. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(2)]
7. For any portion of the stream being impacted due to site dewatering activities, the site shall be graded to its preconstruction contours and revegetated with appropriate native species. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(2)]
8. All stormwater runoff shall be directed as sheetflow through stream buffers at non-erosive velocities, unless otherwise approved by this certification. [15A NCAC 2B.0259]



9. All riparian buffers impacted by the placement of temporary fill or clearing activities shall be restored to the preconstruction contours and revegetated. Maintained buffers shall be permanently revegetated with non-woody species by the end of the growing season following completion of construction. For the purpose of this condition, maintained buffer areas are defined as areas within the transportation corridor that will be subject to regular NCDOT maintenance activities including mowing. The area with non-maintained buffers shall be permanently revegetated with native woody species before the next growing season following completion of construction. [15A NCAC 2B.0259]
10. Pursuant to 15A NCAC 2B.0259(6), sediment and erosion control devices shall not be placed in Zone 1 of any Tar-Pamlico Buffer without prior approval by the NCDWR. At this time, the NCDWR has approved no sediment and erosion control devices in Zone 1, outside of the approved project impacts, anywhere on this project. Moreover, sediment and erosion control devices shall be allowed in Zone 2 of the buffers provided that Zone 1 is not compromised and that discharge is released as diffuse flow.
11. If concrete is used during construction, a dry work area shall be maintained to prevent direct contact between curing concrete and stream water. Water that inadvertently contacts uncured concrete shall not be discharged to surface waters due to the potential for elevated pH and possible aquatic life and fish kills. [15A NCAC 02B.0200]
12. During the construction of the project, no staging of equipment of any kind is permitted in waters of the U.S., or protected riparian buffers. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(2)]
13. The dimension, pattern and profile of the stream above and below the crossing shall not be modified. Disturbed floodplains and streams shall be restored to natural geomorphic conditions. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(2)]
14. The use of rip-rap above the Normal High Water Mark shall be minimized. Any rip-rap placed for stream stabilization shall be placed in stream channels in such a manner that it does not impede aquatic life passage. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(2)]
15. The Permittee shall ensure that the final design drawings adhere to the permit and to the permit drawings submitted for approval. [15A NCAC 02H .0507 (c) and 15A NCAC 02H .0506 (b)(2) and (c)(2)]
16. All work in or adjacent to stream waters shall be conducted in a dry work area. Approved BMP measures from the most current version of NCDOT Construction and Maintenance Activities manual such as sandbags, rock berms, cofferdams and other diversion structures shall be used to prevent excavation in flowing water. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(3) and (c)(3)]
17. Heavy equipment shall be operated from the banks rather than in the stream channel in order to minimize sedimentation and reduce the introduction of other pollutants into the stream. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(3)]
18. All mechanized equipment operated near surface waters must be regularly inspected and maintained to prevent contamination of stream waters from fuels, lubricants, hydraulic fluids, or other toxic materials. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(3)]
19. No rock, sand or other materials shall be dredged from the stream channel except where authorized by this certification. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(3)]
20. Discharging hydroseed mixtures and washing out hydroseeders and other equipment in or adjacent to surface waters is prohibited. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(3)]
21. The permittee and its authorized agents shall conduct its activities in a manner consistent with State water quality standards (including any requirements resulting from compliance with §303(d) of the Clean Water Act) and any other appropriate requirements of State and Federal law. If the NCDWR determines that such standards or laws are not being met (including the failure to sustain a designated or achieved use) or that State or federal law is being violated, or that further conditions are necessary to assure compliance, the NCDWR may reevaluate and modify this certification. [15A NCAC 02B.0200]
22. A copy of this Water Quality Certification shall be maintained on the construction site at all times. In addition, the Water Quality Certification and all subsequent modifications, if any, shall be maintained with the Division Engineer and the on-site project manager. [15A NCAC 02H .0507(c) and 15A NCAC 02H .0506 (b)(2) and (c)(2)]



23. The outside buffer, wetland or water boundary located within the construction corridor approved by this authorization, including all non-commercial borrow and waste sites associated with the project, shall be clearly marked by highly visible fencing prior to any land disturbing activities. Impacts to areas within the fencing are prohibited unless otherwise authorized by this certification. [15A NCAC 02H.0501 and .0502]

24. The issuance of this certification does not exempt the Permittee from complying with any and all statutes, rules, regulations, or ordinances that may be imposed by other government agencies (i.e. local, state, and federal) having jurisdiction, including but not limited to applicable buffer rules, stormwater management rules, soil erosion and sedimentation control requirements, etc.

25. The Permittee shall report any violations of this certification to the Division of Water Resources within 24 hours of discovery. [15A NCAC 02B.0506(b)(2)]

26. Upon completion of the project (including any impacts at associated borrow or waste sites), the NCDOT Division Engineer shall complete and return the enclosed "Certification of Completion Form" to notify the NCDWR when all work included in the 401 Certification has been completed. [15A NCAC 02H.0502(f)]

27. Native riparian vegetation (ex. list herbaceous, trees, and shrubs native to your geographic region) must be reestablished in the riparian areas within the construction limits of the project by the end of the growing season following completion of construction. [15A NCAC 02B.0259(10)] &r [15A NCAC 02B.0506(b)(2)]

28. There shall be no excavation from, or waste disposal into, jurisdictional wetlands or waters associated with this permit without appropriate modification. Should waste or borrow sites, or access roads to waste or borrow sites, be located in wetlands or streams, compensatory mitigation will be required since that is a direct impact from road construction activities. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(3) and (c)(3)]

29. Erosion and sediment control practices must be in full compliance with all specifications governing the proper design, installation and operation and maintenance of such Best Management Practices in order to protect surface waters standards [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(3) and (c)(3)]:

- a. The erosion and sediment control measures for the project must be designed, installed, operated, and maintained in accordance with the most recent version of the *North Carolina Sediment and Erosion Control Planning and Design Manual*.
- b. The design, installation, operation, and maintenance of the sediment and erosion control measures must be such that they equal, or exceed, the requirements specified in the most recent version of the *North Carolina Sediment and Erosion Control Manual*. The devices shall be maintained on all construction sites, borrow sites, and waste pile (spoil) projects, including contractor-owned or leased borrow pits associated with the project.
- c. For borrow pit sites, the erosion and sediment control measures must be designed, installed, operated, and maintained in accordance with the most recent version of the *North Carolina Surface Mining Manual*.
- d. The reclamation measures and implementation must comply with the reclamation in accordance with the requirements of the Sedimentation Pollution Control Act.

30. Sediment and erosion control measures shall not be placed in wetlands or surface waters, or within 5 feet of the top of bank, without prior approval from DWR. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(3) and (c)(3)]

31. When applicable, all construction activities shall be performed and maintained in full compliance with G.S. Chapter 113A Article 4 (Sediment and Pollution Control Act of 1973). Regardless of applicability of the Sediment and Pollution Control Act, all projects shall incorporate appropriate Best Management Practices for the control of sediment and erosion so that no violations of state water quality standards, statutes, or rules occur. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(3) and (c)(3) and 15A NCAC 02B .0200]



32. Design, installation, operation, and maintenance of all sediment and erosion control measures shall be equal to or exceed the requirements specified in the most recent version of the *North Carolina Sediment and Erosion Control Manual*, or for linear transportation projects, the *NCDOT Sediment and Erosion Control Manual*.

All devices shall be maintained on all construction sites, borrow sites, and waste pile (spoil) sites, including contractor-owned or leased borrow pits associated with the project. Sufficient materials required for stabilization and/or repair of erosion control measures and stormwater routing and treatment shall be on site at all times.

For borrow pit sites, the erosion and sediment control measures shall be designed, installed, operated, and maintained in accordance with the most recent version of the *North Carolina Surface Mining Manual*. Reclamation measures and implementation shall comply with the reclamation in accordance with the requirements of the Sedimentation Pollution Control Act and the Mining Act of 1971.

Sedimentation and erosion control designs shall comply with the requirements set forth in 15A NCAC 04B .0124, *Design Standards in Sensitive Watershed*. [15A NCAC 02H.0506(b)(3) and (c)(3); GC 4135]

If you wish to contest any statement in the attached Certification you must file a petition for an administrative hearing. You may obtain the petition form from the office of Administrative hearings. You must file the petition with the office of Administrative Hearings within sixty (60) days of receipt of this notice. A petition is considered filed when it is received in the office of Administrative Hearings during normal office hours. The Office of Administrative Hearings accepts filings Monday through Friday between the hours of 8:00am and 5:00pm, except for official state holidays. The original and one (1) copy of the petition must be filed with the Office of Administrative Hearings.

The petition may be faxed-provided the original and one copy of the document is received by the Office of Administrative Hearings within five (5) business days following the faxed transmission.


The mailing address for the Office of Administrative Hearings is:

Office of Administrative Hearings
6714 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-6714
Telephone: (919) 431-3000, Facsimile: (919) 431-3100

A copy of the petition must also be served on DEQ as follows:

Mr. Bill F. Lane, General Counsel
Department of Environmental Quality
1601 Mail Service Center

This letter completes the review of the Division of Water Resources under Section 401 of the Clean Water Act. If you have any questions, please contact Rob Ridings at 919-707-3873.

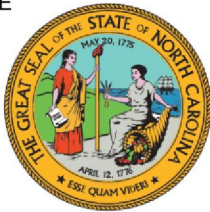
Sincerely,
DocuSigned by:

9C9886312DCCD474...

Linda Culpepper, Director
Division of Water Resources

Electronic copy only distribution:

James Lastinger, US Army Corps of Engineers, Raleigh Field Office
Chris Murray, NCDOT Division 5 Project Delivery Unit
Heather Montague, NCDOT Division 5 Environmental Officer
File Copy





NORTH CAROLINA
Environmental Quality

ROY COOPER
Governor

MICHAEL S. REGAN
Secretary

LINDA CULPEPPER
Director

NCDWR Project No.: _____ County: _____

Applicant: _____

Project Name: _____

Date of Issuance of 401 Water Quality Certification: _____

Certificate of Completion

Upon completion of all work approved within the 401 Water Quality Certification or applicable Buffer Rules, and any subsequent modifications, the applicant is required to return this certificate to the 401 Transportation Permitting Unit, North Carolina Division of Water Resources, 1617 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, NC, 27699-1617. This form may be returned to NCDWR by the applicant, the applicant’s authorized agent, **or** the project engineer. It is not necessary to send certificates from all of these.

Applicant’s Certification

I, _____, hereby state that, to the best of my abilities, due care and diligence was used in the observation of the construction such that the construction was observed to be built within substantial compliance and intent of the 401 Water Quality Certification and Buffer Rules, the approved plans and specifications, and other supporting materials.

Signature: _____ Date: _____

Agent’s Certification

I, _____, hereby state that, to the best of my abilities, due care and diligence was used in the observation of the construction such that the construction was observed to be built within substantial compliance and intent of the 401 Water Quality Certification and Buffer Rules, the approved plans and specifications, and other supporting materials.

Signature: _____ Date: _____

Engineer’s Certification

_____ Partial _____ Final

I, _____, as a duly registered Professional Engineer in the State of North Carolina, having been authorized to observe (periodically, weekly, full time) the construction of the project for the Permittee hereby state that, to the best of my abilities, due care and diligence was used in the observation of the construction such that the construction was observed to be built within substantial compliance and intent of the 401 Water Quality Certification and Buffer Rules, the approved plans and specifications, and other supporting materials.

Signature _____ Registration No. _____
Date _____



**STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY
DIVISION OF WATER RESOURCES**

WATER QUALITY GENERAL CERTIFICATION NO. 4132

GENERAL CERTIFICATION FOR PROJECTS ELIGIBLE FOR US ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS

- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 3 (MAINTENANCE),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 4 (FISH AND WILDLIFE HARVESTING, ENHANCEMENT, AND ATTRACTION DEVICES AND ACTIVITIES),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 5 (SCIENTIFIC MEASUREMENT DEVICES),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 6 (SURVEY ACTIVITIES),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 7 (OUTFALL STRUCTURES AND ASSOCIATED INTAKE STRUCTURES),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 19 (MINOR DREDGING),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 20 (RESPONSE OPERATIONS FOR OIL OR HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 22 (REMOVAL OF VESSELS),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 25 (STRUCTURAL DISCHARGES),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 30 (MOIST SOIL MANAGEMENT FOR WILDLIFE),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 32 (COMPLETED ENFORCEMENT ACTIONS),**
- **NATIONWIDE PERMIT 36 (BOAT RAMPS),**
- **REGIONAL GENERAL PERMIT 197800056 (PIERS, DOCKS AND BOATHOUSES), AND**
- **REGIONAL GENERAL PERMIT 197800125 (BOAT RAMPS)**

Water Quality Certification Number 4132 is issued in conformity with the requirements of Section 401, Public Laws 92-500 and 95-217 of the United States and subject to the North Carolina Regulations in 15A NCAC 02H .0500 and 15A NCAC 02B .0200 for the discharge of fill material to surface waters and wetland areas as described in 33 CFR 330 Appendix A (B) (3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 19, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, and 36) of the US Army Corps of Engineers regulations and Regional General Permits 197800056 and 197800125.

The State of North Carolina certifies that the specified category of activity will not violate applicable portions of Sections 301, 302, 303, 306 and 307 of the Public Laws 92-500 and 95-217 if conducted in accordance with the conditions hereinafter set forth.

Effective date: December 1, 2017
Signed this day: December 1, 2017

By



for Linda Culpepper
Interim Director

Activities meeting any one (1) of the following thresholds or circumstances require written approval for a 401 Water Quality Certification from the Division of Water Resources (DWR):

- a) If any of the conditions of this Certification (listed below) cannot be met; or
- b) Total additional permanent impacts to streams (including stream relocations or restorations) greater than 40 linear feet at an existing stream impact location; or
- c) Total temporary and permanent impacts to wetlands or open waters equal to or greater than one-tenth (1/10) of an acre; or
- d) Complete dewatering and drawdowns to a sediment layer related to pond/dam maintenance or removal; or
- e) Any impacts to streams from excavation or dredging other than excavation that is conducted as preparation for installing permanent fill or structures or projects qualifying for a Nationwide Permit 19; or
- f) Except for projects qualifying for a Nationwide permit 3, any permanent impacts to waters, or to wetlands adjacent to waters, designated as: ORW (including SAV), HQW (including PNA), SA, WS-I, WS-II, Trout, or North Carolina or National Wild and Scenic River; or
- g) Any high-density project, as defined in 15A NCAC 02H .1003(2)(a) and by the density thresholds specified in 15A NCAC 02H .1017, which:
 - i. Disturbs one acre or more of land (including a project that disturbs less than one acre of land that is part of a larger common plan of development or sale); and
 - ii. Has permanent wetland, stream or open water impacts; and
 - iii. Is proposing new built-upon area; and
 - iv. Does not have a stormwater management plan reviewed and approved under a state stormwater program¹ or a state-approved local government stormwater program².

Projects that have vested rights, exemptions, or grandfathering from state or locally-implemented stormwater programs and projects that satisfy state or locally-implemented stormwater programs through use of community in-lieu programs **require written approval**; or

- h) Any permanent impacts to coastal wetlands [15A NCAC 07H .0205], or Unique Wetlands (UWL); or
- i) Any impact associated with a Notice of Violation or an enforcement action for violation(s) of NC Wetland Rules (15A NCAC 02H .0500), NC Isolated Wetland Rules (15A NCAC 02H .1300), NC Surface Water or Wetland Standards (15A NCAC 02B .0200), or State Regulated Riparian Buffer Rules (15A NCAC 02B .0200); or
- j) Any impacts to subject water bodies and/or state regulated riparian buffers along subject water bodies in the Neuse, Tar-Pamlico, or Catawba River Basins or in the Randleman Lake, Jordan Lake or Goose Creek Watersheds (or any other basin or watershed with State Regulated Riparian Area Protection Rules [Buffer Rules] in effect at the time of application) *unless*:

¹ e.g. Coastal Counties, HQW, ORW, or state-implemented Phase II NPDES

² e.g. Delegated Phase II NPDES, Water Supply Watershed, Nutrient-Sensitive Waters, or Universal Stormwater Management Program

GC4132

- i. The activities are listed as “EXEMPT” from these rules; or
- ii. A Buffer Authorization Certificate is issued by the NC Division of Coastal Management (DCM); or
- iii. A Buffer Authorization Certificate or a Minor Variance is issued by a delegated or designated local government implementing a state riparian buffer program pursuant to 143-215.23.

Activities included in this General Certification that do not meet one of the thresholds listed above do not require written approval.

I. ACTIVITY SPECIFIC CONDITIONS:

1. For all dam removal projects meeting the definition under G.S. 143-215.25 and requirements under G.S. 143-215.27 of a professionally supervised dam removal, the applicant shall provide documentation that any sediment that may be released has similar or lower level of contamination than sediment sampled from downstream of the dam in accordance with Session Law 2017-145.
2. For the North Carolina Department of Transportation, compliance with the NCDOT’s individual NPDES permit NCS000250 shall serve to satisfy this condition. All other high-density projects that trigger threshold item (g) above shall comply with one of the following requirements: [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(5) and (c)(5)]
 - a. Provide a completed Stormwater Management Plan (SMP) for review and approval, including all appropriate stormwater control measure (SCM) supplemental forms and associated items, that complies with the high-density development requirements of 15A NCAC 02H .1003. Stormwater management shall be provided throughout the entire project area in accordance with 15A NCAC 02H .1003. For the purposes of 15A NCAC 02H .1003(2)(a), density thresholds shall be determined in accordance with 15A NCAC 02H .1017.
 - b. Provide documentation (including calculations, photos, etc.) that the project will not cause degradation of downstream surface waters. Documentation shall include a detailed analysis of the hydrological impacts from stormwater runoff when considering the volume and velocity of stormwater runoff from the project built upon area and the size and existing condition of the receiving stream(s).

Exceptions to this condition require application to and written approval from DWR.

II. GENERAL CONDITIONS:

1. When written authorization is required, the plans and specifications for the project are incorporated into the authorization by reference and are an enforceable part of the Certification. Any modifications to the project require notification to DWR and may require an application submittal to DWR with the appropriate fee. [15A NCAC 02H .0501 and .0502]

GC4132

2. No waste, spoil, solids, or fill of any kind shall occur in wetlands or waters beyond the footprint of the impacts (including temporary impacts) as authorized in the written approval from DWR; or beyond the thresholds established for use of this Certification without written authorization. [15A NCAC 02H .0501 and .0502]

No removal of vegetation or other impacts of any kind shall occur to state regulated riparian buffers beyond the footprint of impacts approved in a Buffer Authorization or Variance or as listed as an exempt activity in the applicable riparian buffer rules. [15A NCAC 02B .0200]

3. In accordance with 15A NCAC 02H .0506(h) and Session Law 2017-10, compensatory mitigation may be required for losses of greater than 300 linear feet of perennial streams and/or greater than one (1) acre of wetlands. Impacts associated with the removal of a dam shall not require mitigation when the removal complies with the requirements of Part 3 of Article 21 in Chapter 143 of the North Carolina General Statutes. Impacts to isolated and other non-404 jurisdictional wetlands shall not be combined with 404 jurisdictional wetlands for the purpose of determining when impact thresholds trigger a mitigation requirement. For linear publicly owned and maintained transportation projects that are not determined to be part of a larger common plan of development by the US Army Corps of Engineers, compensatory mitigation may be required for losses of greater than 300 linear feet per perennial stream.

Compensatory stream and/or wetland mitigation shall be proposed and completed in compliance with G.S. 143-214.11. For applicants proposing to conduct mitigation within a project site, a complete mitigation proposal developed in accordance with the most recent guidance issued by the US Army Corps of Engineers Wilmington District shall be submitted for review and approval with the application for impacts.

4. All activities shall be in compliance with any applicable State Regulated Riparian Buffer Rules in Chapter 2 of Title 15A.
5. When applicable, all construction activities shall be performed and maintained in full compliance with G.S. Chapter 113A Article 4 (Sediment and Pollution Control Act of 1973). Regardless of applicability of the Sediment and Pollution Control Act, all projects shall incorporate appropriate Best Management Practices for the control of sediment and erosion so that no violations of state water quality standards, statutes, or rules occur. [15A NCAC 02H .0506 (b)(3) and (c)(3) and 15A NCAC 02B .0200]

Design, installation, operation, and maintenance of all sediment and erosion control measures shall be equal to or exceed the requirements specified in the most recent version of the *North Carolina Sediment and Erosion Control Manual*, or for linear transportation projects, the *NCDOT Sediment and Erosion Control Manual*.

All devices shall be maintained on all construction sites, borrow sites, and waste pile (spoil) sites, including contractor-owned or leased borrow pits associated with the project. Sufficient materials required for stabilization and/or repair of erosion control measures and stormwater routing and treatment shall be on site at all times.

GC4132

For borrow pit sites, the erosion and sediment control measures shall be designed, installed, operated, and maintained in accordance with the most recent version of the *North Carolina Surface Mining Manual*. Reclamation measures and implementation shall comply with the reclamation in accordance with the requirements of the Sedimentation Pollution Control Act and the Mining Act of 1971.

If the project occurs in waters or watersheds classified as Primary Nursery Areas (PNAs), SA, WS-I, WS-II, High Quality Waters (HQW), or Outstanding Resource Waters (ORW), then the sedimentation and erosion control designs shall comply with the requirements set forth in 15A NCAC 04B .0124, *Design Standards in Sensitive Watersheds*.

6. Sediment and erosion control measures shall not be placed in wetlands or waters except within the footprint of temporary or permanent impacts authorized under this Certification. Exceptions to this condition require application to and written approval from DWR. [15A NCAC 02H .0501 and .0502]
7. Erosion control matting that incorporates plastic mesh and/or plastic twine shall not be used along streambanks or within wetlands. Exceptions to this condition require application to and written approval from DWR. [15A NCAC 02B .0201]
8. An NPDES Construction Stormwater Permit (NCG010000) is required for construction projects that disturb one (1) or more acres of land. The NCG010000 Permit allows stormwater to be discharged during land disturbing construction activities as stipulated in the conditions of the permit. If the project is covered by this permit, full compliance with permit conditions including the erosion & sedimentation control plan, inspections and maintenance, self-monitoring, record keeping and reporting requirements is required. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(5) and (c)(5)]

The North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) shall be required to be in full compliance with the conditions related to construction activities within the most recent version of their individual NPDES (NCS000250) stormwater permit. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(5) and (c)(5)]

9. All work in or adjacent to streams shall be conducted so that the flowing stream does not come in contact with the disturbed area. Approved best management practices from the most current version of the *NC Sediment and Erosion Control Manual*, or the *NC DOT Construction and Maintenance Activities Manual*, such as sandbags, rock berms, cofferdams, and other diversion structures shall be used to minimize excavation in flowing water. Exceptions to this condition require application to and written approval from DWR. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(3) and (c)(3)]
10. If activities must occur during periods of high biological activity (e.g. sea turtle nesting, fish spawning, or bird nesting), then biological monitoring may be required at the request of other state or federal agencies and coordinated with these activities. [15A NCAC 02H .0506 (b)(2) and 15A NCAC 04B .0125]

GC4132

All moratoriums on construction activities established by the NC Wildlife Resources Commission (WRC), US Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), NC Division of Marine Fisheries (DMF), or National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) shall be implemented. Exceptions to this condition require written approval by the resource agency responsible for the given moratorium. A copy of the approval from the resource agency shall be forwarded to DWR.

Work within a designated trout watershed of North Carolina (as identified by the Wilmington District of the US Army Corps of Engineers), or identified state or federal endangered or threatened species habitat, shall be coordinated with the appropriate WRC, USFWS, NMFS, and/or DMF personnel.

11. Culverts shall be designed and installed in such a manner that the original stream profiles are not altered and allow for aquatic life movement during low flows. The dimension, pattern, and profile of the stream above and below a pipe or culvert shall not be modified by widening the stream channel or by reducing the depth of the stream in connection with the construction activity. The width, height, and gradient of a proposed culvert shall be such as to pass the average historical low flow and spring flow without adversely altering flow velocity. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(2) and (c)(2)]

Placement of culverts and other structures in streams shall be below the elevation of the streambed by one foot for all culverts with a diameter greater than 48 inches, and 20% of the culvert diameter for culverts having a diameter less than or equal to 48 inches, to allow low flow passage of water and aquatic life.

If multiple pipes or barrels are required, they shall be designed to mimic the existing stream cross section as closely as possible, including pipes or barrels at flood plain elevation and/or sills where appropriate. Widening the stream channel shall be avoided.

When topographic constraints indicate culvert slopes of greater than 5%, culvert burial is not required, provided that all alternative options for flattening the slope have been investigated and aquatic life movement/connectivity has been provided when possible (e.g. rock ladders, cross vanes, etc.). Notification, including supporting documentation to include a location map of the culvert, culvert profile drawings, and slope calculations, shall be provided to DWR 60 calendar days prior to the installation of the culvert.

When bedrock is present in culvert locations, culvert burial is not required provided that there is sufficient documentation of the presence of bedrock. Notification, including supporting documentation such as a location map of the culvert, geotechnical reports, photographs, etc. shall be provided to DWR a minimum of 60 calendar days prior to the installation of the culvert. If bedrock is discovered during construction, then DWR shall be notified by phone or email within 24 hours of discovery.

If other site-specific topographic constraints preclude the ability to bury the culverts as described above and/or it can be demonstrated that burying the culvert would result in destabilization of the channel, then exceptions to this condition require application to and written approval from DWR.

GC4132

Installation of culverts in wetlands shall ensure continuity of water movement and be designed to adequately accommodate high water or flood conditions. When roadways, causeways, or other fill projects are constructed across FEMA-designated floodways or wetlands, openings such as culverts or bridges shall be provided to maintain the natural hydrology of the system as well as prevent constriction of the floodway that may result in destabilization of streams or wetlands.

The establishment of native woody vegetation and other soft stream bank stabilization techniques shall be used where practicable instead of rip-rap or other bank hardening methods.

12. Bridge deck drains shall not discharge directly into the stream. Stormwater shall be directed across the bridge and pre-treated through site-appropriate means to the maximum extent practicable (e.g. grassed swales, pre-formed scour holes, vegetated buffers, etc.) before entering the stream. Exceptions to this condition require application to and written approval from DWR. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(5)]
13. Application of fertilizer to establish planted/seeded vegetation within disturbed riparian areas and/or wetlands shall be conducted at agronomic rates and shall comply with all other Federal, State and Local regulations. Fertilizer application shall be accomplished in a manner that minimizes the risk of contact between the fertilizer and surface waters. [15A NCAC 02B .0200 and 15A NCAC 02B .0231]
14. If concrete is used during construction, then all necessary measures shall be taken to prevent direct contact between uncured or curing concrete and waters of the state. Water that inadvertently contacts uncured concrete shall not be discharged to waters of the state. [15A NCAC 02B .0200]
15. All proposed and approved temporary fill and culverts shall be removed and the impacted area shall be returned to natural conditions within 60 calendar days after the temporary impact is no longer necessary. The impacted areas shall be restored to original grade, including each stream's original cross sectional dimensions, planform pattern, and longitudinal bed profile. For projects that receive written approval, no temporary impacts are allowed beyond those included in the application and authorization. All temporarily impacted sites shall be restored and stabilized with native vegetation. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(2) and (c)(2)]
16. All proposed and approved temporary pipes/culverts/rip-rap pads etc. in streams shall be installed as outlined in the most recent edition of the *North Carolina Sediment and Erosion Control Planning and Design Manual* or the *North Carolina Surface Mining Manual* or the *North Carolina Department of Transportation Best Management Practices for Construction and Maintenance Activities* so as not to restrict stream flow or cause dis-equilibrium during use of this Certification. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(2) and (c)(2)]

GC4132

17. Any rip-rap required for proper culvert placement, stream stabilization, or restoration of temporarily disturbed areas shall be restricted to the area directly impacted by the approved construction activity. All rip-rap shall be placed such that the original stream elevation and streambank contours are restored and maintained. Placement of rip-rap or other approved materials shall not result in de-stabilization of the stream bed or banks upstream or downstream of the area or in a manner that precludes aquatic life passage. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(2)]
18. Any rip-rap used for stream or shoreline stabilization shall be of a size and density to prevent movement by wave, current action, or stream flows and shall consist of clean rock or masonry material free of debris or toxic pollutants. Rip-rap shall not be installed in the streambed except in specific areas required for velocity control and to ensure structural integrity of bank stabilization measures. [15A NCAC 02H .0506(b)(2)]
19. Applications for rip-rap groins proposed in accordance with 15A NCAC 07H .1401 (NC Division of Coastal Management General Permit for construction of Wooden and Rip-rap Groins in Estuarine and Public Trust Waters) shall meet all the specific conditions for design and construction specified in 15A NCAC 07H .1405.
20. All mechanized equipment operated near surface waters should be inspected and maintained regularly to prevent contamination of surface waters from fuels, lubricants, hydraulic fluids, or other toxic materials. Construction shall be staged in order to minimize the exposure of equipment to surface waters to the maximum extent practicable. Fueling, lubrication and general equipment maintenance shall be performed in a manner to prevent, to the maximum extent practicable, contamination of surface waters by fuels and oils. [15A NCAC 02H .0506 (b)(3) and (c)(3) and 15A NCAC 02B .0211 (12)]
21. Heavy equipment working in wetlands shall be placed on mats or other measures shall be taken to minimize soil disturbance. [15A NCAC 02H .0506 (b)(3) and (c)(3)]
22. In accordance with 143-215.85(b), the applicant shall report any petroleum spill of 25 gallons or more; any spill regardless of amount that causes a sheen on surface waters; any petroleum spill regardless of amount occurring within 100 feet of surface waters; and any petroleum spill less than 25 gallons that cannot be cleaned up within 24 hours.
23. If an environmental document is required under the State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA), then this General Certification is not valid until a Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) or Record of Decision (ROD) is issued by the State Clearinghouse. If an environmental document is required under the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), then this General Certification is not valid until a Categorical Exclusion, the Final Environmental Assessment, or Final Environmental Impact Statement is published by the lead agency. [15A NCAC 01C .0107(a)]
24. This General Certification does not relieve the applicant of the responsibility to obtain all other required Federal, State, or Local approvals before proceeding with the project, including those required by, but not limited to, Sediment and Erosion Control, Non-Discharge, Water Supply Watershed, and Trout Buffer regulations.

GC4132

25. The applicant and their authorized agents shall conduct all activities in a manner consistent with State water quality standards (including any requirements resulting from compliance with §303(d) of the Clean Water Act), and any other appropriate requirements of State and Federal Law. If DWR determines that such standards or laws are not being met, including failure to sustain a designated or achieved use, or that State or Federal law is being violated, or that further conditions are necessary to assure compliance, then DWR may revoke or modify a written authorization associated with this General Water Quality Certification. [15A NCAC 02H .0507(d)]
26. The permittee shall require its contractors and/or agents to comply with the terms and conditions of this permit in the construction and maintenance of this project, and shall provide each of its contractors and/or agents associated with the construction or maintenance of this project with a copy of this Certification. A copy of this Certification, including all conditions shall be available at the project site during the construction and maintenance of this project. [15A NCAC 02H .0507 (c) and 15A NCAC 02H .0506 (b)(2) and (c)(2)]
27. When written authorization is required for use of this Certification, upon completion of all permitted impacts included within the approval and any subsequent modifications, the applicant shall be required to return a certificate of completion (available on the DWR website <https://edocs.deq.nc.gov/Forms/Certificate-of-Completion>). [15A NCAC 02H .0502(f)]
28. Additional site-specific conditions, including monitoring and/or modeling requirements, may be added to the written approval letter for projects proposed under this Water Quality Certification in order to ensure compliance with all applicable water quality and effluent standards. [15A NCAC 02H .0507(c)]
29. If the property or project is sold or transferred, the new permittee shall be given a copy of this Certification (and written authorization if applicable) and is responsible for complying with all conditions. [15A NCAC 02H .0501 and .0502]

III. GENERAL CERTIFICATION ADMINISTRATION:

1. In accordance with North Carolina General Statute 143-215.3D(e), written approval for a 401 Water Quality General Certification must include the appropriate fee. An applicant for a CAMA permit under Article 7 of Chapter 113A of the General Statutes for which a Water Quality Certification is required shall only make one payment to satisfy both agencies; the fee shall be as established by the Secretary in accordance with 143-215.3D(e)(7).
2. This Certification neither grants nor affirms any property right, license, or privilege in any waters, or any right of use in any waters. This Certification does not authorize any person to interfere with the riparian rights, littoral rights, or water use rights of any other person and this Certification does not create any prescriptive right or any right of priority regarding any usage of water. This Certification shall not be interposed as a defense in any action respecting the determination of riparian or littoral rights or other rights to water use. No consumptive user is deemed by virtue of this Certification to possess any prescriptive or

GC4132

other right of priority with respect to any other consumptive user regardless of the quantity of the withdrawal or the date on which the withdrawal was initiated or expanded.

3. This Certification grants permission to the Director, an authorized representative of the Director, or DWR staff, upon the presentation of proper credentials, to enter the property during normal business hours. [15A NCAC 02H .0502(e)]
4. This General Certification shall expire on the same day as the expiration date of the corresponding Nationwide Permit and/or Regional General Permit. The conditions in effect on the date of issuance of Certification for a specific project shall remain in effect for the life of the project, regardless of the expiration date of this Certification. This General Certification is rescinded when the US Army Corps of Engineers reauthorizes any of the corresponding Nationwide Permits and/or Regional General Permits or when deemed appropriate by the Director of the Division of Water Resources.
5. Non-compliance with or violation of the conditions herein set forth by a specific project may result in revocation of this General Certification for the project and may also result in criminal and/or civil penalties.
6. The Director of the North Carolina Division of Water Resources may require submission of a formal application for Individual Certification for any project in this category of activity if it is deemed in the public's best interest or determined that the project is likely to have a significant adverse effect upon water quality, including state or federally listed endangered or threatened aquatic species, or degrade the waters so that existing uses of the waters or downstream waters are precluded.

History Note: Water Quality Certification (WQC) Number 4132 issued December 1, 2017 replaces WCQ 4085 issued March 3, 2017; WQC 3883 issued March 19, 2012; WQC Number 3687 issued November 1, 2007; WQC Number 3624 issued March 19, 2007; WQC Number 3494 issued December 31, 2004; and WQC Number 3376 issued March 18, 2002.

Warren Bridge 135 over Fishing Creek on SR 1609 (17BP.5.R.88)

FINAL Avoidance and Minimization Measures (December 13, 2021)

The following “Design Standards in Sensitive Watersheds” [15A NCAC 04B.0124 (b) – (e)] are incorporated into NCDOT projects that occur within or upstream of water bodies that contain federally protected aquatic species. Within the Environmentally Sensitive Areas, the following shall apply:

-The contractor may perform clearing operations but not grubbing operation until immediately prior to beginning grading operations.

-Once grading operations begin in the ESA, work shall progress in a continuous manner until complete.

-Erosion control devices shall be installed immediately following the clearing operation.

-Seeding mulching shall be performed on the areas disturbed by construction immediately following final grade establishment.

-Seeding mulching shall be done in stages on cut and fill slopes that are greater than 20 feet in height measure along the slope or greater than two acres in area, whichever is less.

The following are additional measures intended to further reduce deleterious construction related effects to the waterway:

The proposed replacement structure is a 42 ft x 10 ft concrete arch bottomless structure that will be constructed on existing alignment. Traffic will be detoured on adjacent roads until completion of the new structure.

The following documents will be used during design and construction: 1) NCDOT Erosion and Sediment Control Design and Construction Manual; 2) NCDOT Best Management Practices for Construction and Maintenance Activities and 3) NCDOT Stormwater Best Management Practices Toolbox. Best Management Practices for bridge demolition and removal will be implemented during the removal of the existing bridge.

The bridge will be removed from the top down, first removing the asphalt with containment measures in place to prevent components of the bridge deck from dropping into the stream. The method of containment will be proposed by the contractor and approved by the engineer. This will be followed by removal of the rail, decking, girders, etc. The contractor will then completely isolate the masonry abutments using an impervious dike in the stream to allow for complete removal of the abutments.

The contractor will install additional impervious dikes in the stream as necessary to allow for construction in the dry of the structure footings and for installation of the Class II rip rap bank stabilization. All construction equipment and portions of the culvert structure necessary to complete the project will remain behind the impervious dike while within the banks of Fishing Creek.

Deck drains will not be allowed to discharge directly into the stream.

Special sediment control fence NCDOT Standard No. 1606.01 or a combination of special sediment control fence and standard silt fence will be installed between the top of the stream bank and bridge embankment. Once the disturbed areas of the project draining to these areas have been stabilized, the special sediment control fence and/or standard silt fence and all built up sediment adjacent to these devices will be removed to natural ground and stabilized with appropriate seed mix. Native grass mix will be used on the floodplain.

All sedimentation and erosion control measures, throughout the project limits, will be cleaned out as appropriate to ensure proper function of the measures.

Embankment construction and grading shall be managed in such a manner as to prevent surface runoff/drainage from discharging untreated into the riparian buffer. Instead all interim surfaces will be graded to drain to temporary erosion control devices. Temporary berms, ditches, etc. will be incorporated, as necessary, to treat temporary runoff before discharging into the riparian buffer (as specified in the NCDOT BMP Manual).

The Department will conduct a pre-construction mussel survey and mussel relocation plan following information contained in Appendix D in the Biological Opinion dated July 17, 2021. The mussel relocation will occur between August 29, 2022 and September 12, 2022. The Division Environmental Officer will coordinate this activity with biologists from RK&K.

The contractor must begin in-stream work on September 13, 2022 and will continue to completion. The in-stream activity is considered to be complete installation of the impervious dikes surrounding the brick masonry abutments at Fishing Creek. In Intermediate Contract Time addressing the start of the in-stream work by the contractor will be followed for this project.

The Mussel Relocation Plan indicates that mussels will be relocated from a 160 meter section of Fishing Creek (from 130 m downstream of Bridge 135 to 30 m upstream of Bridge 135). Relocated mussels will be moved to suitable habitat approximately 350 m upstream of Bridge 135. Any Tar River spiny mussel collected during the mussel relocation will be transferred to the North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission. A report summarizing the details of the mussel relocation will be submitted to the USFWS. If more than 17 Yellow lance, one Tar River spiny mussel, or more than one Atlantic pigtoe are moved, the amount or extent of the incidental take specified in the Incidental Take Statement has been exceeded. The incidental take for Neuse River waterdog is estimated at two individuals. The NCDOT will be required to reinitiate consultation with the USFWS if the incidental take is exceeded.

The existing scour hole in the floodplain of the southwest quadrant will be filled with suitable material and stabilized with ground cover comprised of vegetation and stone.

Existing Halifax Electric power lines and poles to remain in location during construction. Halifax Electric will de-energize line and lower to the ground if necessary for placement of structure or for other operations requiring use of a crane. There should be no impacts to existing trees or vegetation at the site from this utility action.

All sedimentation and erosion control measures will be appropriately maintained following NCDOT standards to ensure proper function of the measures. This project must adhere to conditions of General Permit NCG01000 to Discharge Stormwater under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System for Construction Activities. The project design and construction activities are required to "select, install, implement and maintain best management practices (BMPs) and control measures that minimize pollutants in the discharge to meet the requirements

of the permit.” Among these conditions, the permit requires: 1) all erosion and sedimentation control measures must be inspected at least once every seven calendar days and 2) within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than 1.0 inch of rain per 24 hour period. It is understood that these requirements and implementation of other appropriate BMPs are monitored through multiple layers of oversight. At a minimum, the following personnel monitor erosion control measures:

- Contract project manager
- NCDOT Division Environmental Officer and Environmental Specialist
- NCDOT Roadside Environmental Field Operations Staff

Construction must adhere to information contained in the Biological Opinion (USFWS July 17, 2019) and Addendum to Biological Opinion (November 5, 2021).

In the event that visible sediment loss from the project is observed at the bridge site, a review of turbidity levels will be made upstream and downstream 400 meters (0.25 mile) to determine if sedimentation effects are occurring beyond the Action Area as defined in the Biological Opinion. If visual observation of turbidity levels downstream appear to be elevated beyond upstream observations, the project inspector will contact the Division Environmental Officer. If determined that project-related sedimentation is occurring beyond 400 meters, the amount or extent of incidental take specified in the Incidental Take Statement (see page 24 of Biological/Conference Opinion, USFWS July 17, 2019 and page 12 of the Addendum to BO USFWS November 5, 2021) has been exceeded and the USFWS must be contacted immediately.

Biological Opinion

Replacement of Bridge No. 135 on SR 1609 over Fishing Creek, Warren County, North Carolina

FWS Log #: 04EN2000-2017-F-1193



Prepared by:

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Raleigh Field Office
P.O. Box 33726
Raleigh, NC 27636-3726

M. Huppert / Deputy Field Office Supervisor 7/17/2019
[NAME, TITLE] Date

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CONSULTATION/CONFERENCE HISTORY iii
BIOLOGICAL/CONFERENCE OPINION 1
1. INTRODUCTION 1
2. PROPOSED ACTION 2
 2.1. *Action Area 2*
 2.2. *Removal of Existing Bridge and Construction of New Culvert 2*
 2.3. *Conservation Measures 3*
 2.4. *Interrelated and Interdependent Actions 5*
3. CONCURRENCE 5
4. YELLOW LANCE 6
 4.1. *Status of Yellow Lance 6*
 4.2. *Environmental Baseline for Yellow Lance 9*
 4.3. *Effects of the Action on Yellow Lance 9*
 4.4. *Cumulative Effects on Yellow Lance 11*
 4.5. *Conclusion for Yellow Lance 11*
5. TAR RIVER SPINYMUSSSEL 12
 5.1. *Status of Tar River Spynymussel 12*
 5.2. *Environmental Baseline for Tar River Spynymussel 14*
 5.3. *Effects of the Action on Tar River Spynymussel 14*
 5.4. *Cumulative Effects on Tar River Spynymussel 15*
 5.5. *Conclusion for Tar River Spynymussel 15*
6. ATLANTIC PIGTOE 16
 6.1. *Status of Atlantic Pigtoe 16*
 6.2. *Environmental Baseline for Atlantic Pigtoe 18*
 6.3. *Effects of the Action on Atlantic Pigtoe 18*
 6.4. *Cumulative Effects on Atlantic Pigtoe 19*
 6.5. *Conclusion for Atlantic Pigtoe 19*
7. PROPOSED CRITICAL HABITAT FOR ATLANTIC PIGTOE 20
 7.1. *Status of Atlantic Pigtoe Proposed Critical Habitat 20*
 7.2. *Environmental Baseline for Atlantic Pigtoe Proposed Critical Habitat 21*
 7.3. *Effects of the Action on Atlantic Pigtoe Proposed Critical Habitat 22*
 7.4. *Cumulative Effects on Atlantic Pigtoe Proposed Critical Habitat 23*
 7.5. *Conclusion for Atlantic Pigtoe Proposed Critical Habitat 23*
8. INCIDENTAL TAKE STATEMENT 24
 8.1. *Amount or Extent of Take 25*
 8.2. *Reasonable and Prudent Measures 25*
 8.3. *Terms and Conditions 26*
 8.4. *Monitoring and Reporting Requirements 26*
9. CONSERVATION RECOMMENDATIONS 27
10. REINITIATION NOTICE 27
11. LITERATURE CITED 28

APPENDIX D: MUSSEL RELOCATION PLAN

CONSULTATION/CONFERENCE HISTORY

This section lists key events and correspondence during the course of this consultation/conference. A complete administrative record of this consultation/conference is on file in the Service's Raleigh Field Office.

2018-11-05 – Service staff met onsite with North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) staff, consultants, and North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission staff to discuss project plans and the need for formal Section 7 consultation/conference for federally listed/proposed mussels.

2019-03-19 – The Service received a draft Biological Assessment (BA) for review.

2019-03-21 – The Service provided comments on the draft BA to NCDOT.

2019-04-02 – The Service received and commented on a revised draft BA.

2019-05-09 – The Service received a final BA (dated 2019-04-05) and a letter from the US Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) requesting initiation of formal Section 7 consultation/conference.

2019-05-28 – The Service provided a letter to the USACE stating that all information required for initiation of consultation/conference was either included with their 2019-05-09 letter or was otherwise available.

2019-07-01 – The Service provided the USACE and NCDOT with a draft Biological/Conference Opinion.

BIOLOGICAL/CONFERENCE OPINION

1. INTRODUCTION

A Biological Opinion (BO) is the document that states the opinion of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (Service) under the Endangered Species Act of 1973, as amended (ESA), as to whether a Federal action is likely to:

- jeopardize the continued existence of species listed as endangered or threatened; or
- result in the destruction or adverse modification of designated critical habitat.

A Conference Opinion (CO) is equivalent to a BO, but addresses species that are not yet listed under the ESA and/or proposed critical habitats not yet designated. Therefore, the ESA prohibitions against jeopardizing species, destroying critical habitat, and taking animals do not yet apply. The Service may adopt a CO as a BO if and when the evaluated species/critical habitat are listed/designated and while the action agency's discretion and involvement in the action continue.

The Federal action addressed in this BO/CO is the US Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) authorization, pursuant to Section 404 of the Clean Water Act, of the proposed replacement of Bridge No. 135 on SR 1609 over Fishing Creek, Warren County, North Carolina (the Action). This BO considers the effects of the Action on Yellow Lance and Tar River Spiny mussel. The CO considers the effects of the Action on Atlantic Pigtoe and proposed critical habitat for the Atlantic Pigtoe.

The USACE determined that the Action is not likely to adversely affect Dwarf Wedgemussel. The Service concurs with this determination for reasons we explain in Section 3 of the BO/CO.

A BO/CO evaluates the effects of a Federal action along with those resulting from interrelated and interdependent actions, and from non-Federal actions unrelated to the proposed Action (cumulative effects), relative to the status of listed/proposed species and the status of designated/proposed critical habitat. A Service opinion that concludes a proposed Federal action is *not* likely to jeopardize species and is *not* likely to destroy or adversely modify critical habitat fulfills the Federal agency's responsibilities under §7(a)(2) of the ESA.

“Jeopardize the continued existence” means to engage in an action that reasonably would be expected, directly or indirectly, to reduce appreciably the likelihood of both the survival and recovery of a listed species in the wild by reducing the reproduction, numbers, or distribution of that species (50 CFR §402.02). *“Destruction or adverse modification”* means a direct or indirect alteration that appreciably diminishes the value of designated critical habitat for the conservation of a listed species. Such alterations may include, but are not limited to, those that alter the physical or biological features essential to the conservation of a species or that preclude or significantly delay development of such features (50 CFR §402.02).

This BO/CO uses hierarchical numeric section headings. Primary (level-1) sections are labeled sequentially with a single digit (e.g., 2. PROPOSED ACTION). Secondary (level-2) sections within each primary section are labeled with two digits (e.g., 2.1. Action Area), and so on for

level-3 sections. The basis of our opinion for each listed/proposed species and each proposed critical habitat identified in the first paragraph of this introduction is wholly contained in a separate level-1 section that addresses its status, environmental baseline, effects of the Action, cumulative effects, and conclusion.

2. PROPOSED ACTION

The North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) proposes to replace Bridge No. 135 on SR 1609 over Fishing Creek in Warren County, North Carolina with a bottomless concrete culvert. The existing bridge is considered functionally obsolete according to Federal Highway Administration standards. Components of both the superstructure and substructure have experienced an increasing degree of deterioration that can no longer be addressed by maintenance activities. The bridge is approaching the end of its useful life. The estimated time to complete construction is approximately three months. Pursuant to Section 404 of the Clean Water Act, the Action requires authorization from the USACE. The Action will be deconstructed into two components: 1) removal of existing bridge and construction of new culvert and 2) conservation measures.

2.1. Action Area

For purposes of consultation under ESA §7, the action area is defined as “all areas to be affected directly or indirectly by the Federal action and not merely the immediate area involved in the action” (50 CFR §402.02). The “Action Area” for this consultation/conference includes the footprint of the existing bridge, the replacement culvert, the stream bank immediately adjacent to the bridge receiving any runoff from the construction activity, a section of SR 1609 extending approximately 235 feet to the north and 170 feet to the south, a section of Fishing Creek extending from 400 meters (1312 feet) downstream to 100 meters (328 feet) upstream of Bridge No. 135, and a mussel relocation area located approximately 350 meters (1148 feet) upstream of the bridge (see Figure 2.1). Under normal circumstances, a downstream distance of 400 meters is generally considered to be the extent of detectable sedimentation effects.

2.2. Removal of Existing Bridge and Construction of New Culvert

The existing bridge is a single span 20.7 foot structure consisting of a timber deck on steel I-beams on timber caps with masonry abutments. There are no bents in the water. The removal of the bridge shall be performed so as not to allow debris to fall into the water. The bridge will be removed from the top down, first removing the asphalt with containment measures in place to prevent components of the bridge deck from dropping into the stream. The method of containment will be proposed by the contractor and approved by the engineer. This will be followed by removal of the rail, decking, and girders. The contractor will then completely isolate the masonry abutments using an impervious dike in the stream to allow for complete removal of the abutments.

The existing bridge will be replaced with a 42 foot x 10 foot bottomless concrete culvert. This will increase the hydraulic opening from ~ 83 square feet to ~ 191 square feet. The new structure will completely span Fishing Creek. The contractor will install additional impervious

dikes in the stream as necessary to allow for construction in the dry of the new structure footings and for installation of the Class II rip rap for bank stabilization. All construction equipment will remain behind the impervious dike. Approximately 190 tons of Class II rip rap will be used to stabilize the stream banks upstream and downstream of the proposed structure. The rip rap will establish a more natural streambank profile by constructing a bench that ties to the adjacent floodplain elevation along both streambanks. The total distance of stream bank to be stabilized with rip rap is approximately 85 linear feet along the southern bank and approximately 95 feet along the northern bank. Minor road realignment on each side of the new culvert for a total distance of approximately 425 linear feet will occur.

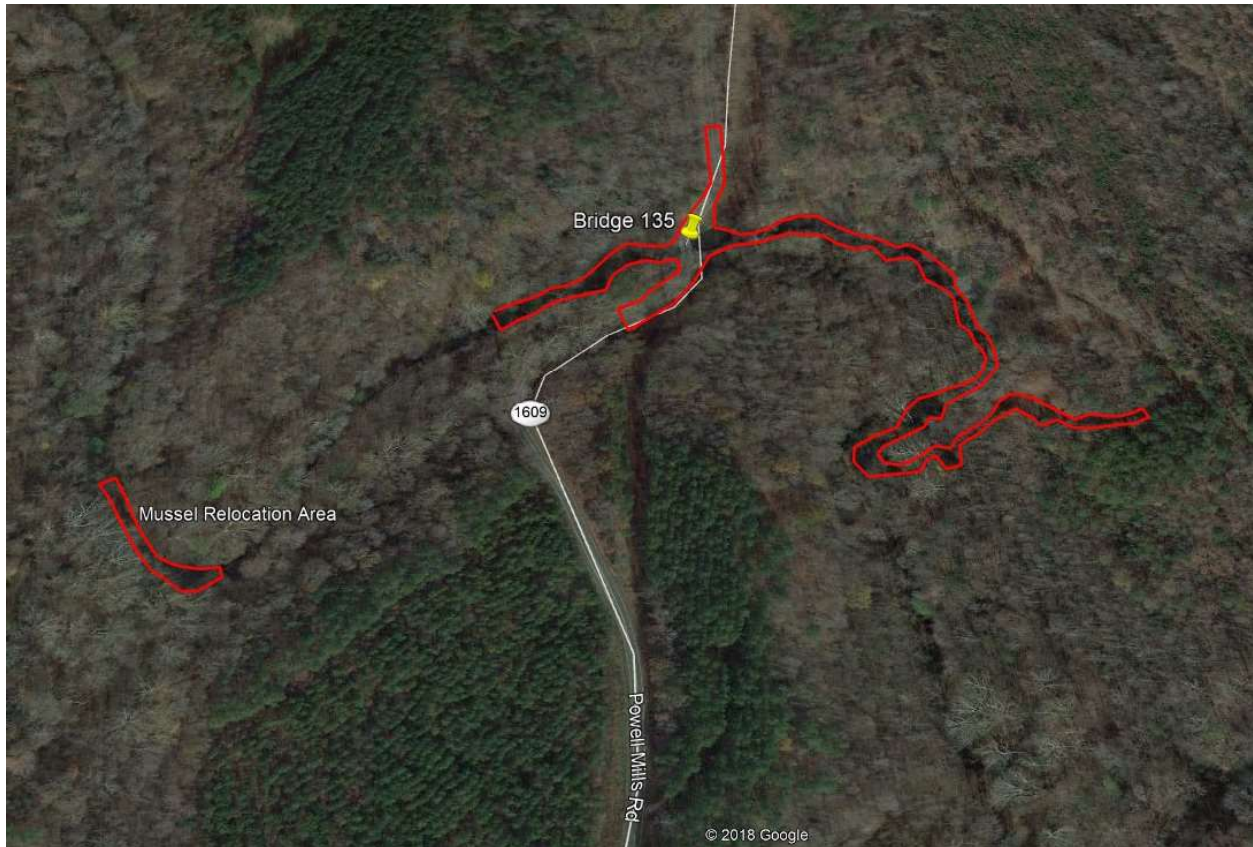


Figure 2.1. Approximate boundaries of Action Area outlined in red.

2.3. Conservation Measures

Design Standards in Sensitive Watersheds [[15A NCAC 04B.0124 \(b\) – \(e\)](#)] will be incorporated into the action. Design Standards in Sensitive Watersheds are erosion control measures that exceed the standard BMPs (e.g. measures are designed to provide protection from runoff of 25-year storm event). *Environmentally Sensitive Areas* shall also be designated and defined as a 50-foot buffer zone within the right-of-way on both sides of the stream measured from top of streambank. Within *Environmentally Sensitive Areas* the following shall apply:

- The contractor may perform clearing operations but not grubbing operations until immediately prior to beginning grading operations.

- Once grading operations begin in identified *Environmentally Sensitive Areas*, work shall progress in a continuous manner until complete.
- Erosion control devices shall be installed immediately following the clearing operation.
- Seeding and mulching shall be performed on the areas disturbed by construction immediately following final grade establishment.
- Seeding and mulching shall be done in stages on cut and fill slopes that are greater than 20 feet in height measured along the slope or greater than two acres in area, whichever is less.

The new 42 foot x 10 foot bottomless culvert will be constructed on existing alignment. Traffic will be detoured on adjacent roads until completion of the new structure. No bents will be constructed in the stream.

Best Management Practices for Bridge Demolition and Removal will be implemented during the removal of the existing bridge.

No equipment will be placed/staged in Fishing Creek unless behind the impervious dike as noted in Section 2.2.

Special sediment control fence NCDOT Standard No. 1606.01 or a combination of special sediment control fence and standard silt fence will be installed between the top of the stream bank and bridge embankment. Once the disturbed areas of the project draining to these areas have been stabilized, the special sediment control fence and/or standard silt fence and all built up sediment adjacent to these devices will be removed to natural ground and stabilized with appropriate seed mix. Native grass mix will be used on the floodplain.

All sedimentation and erosion control measures, throughout the project limits, will be cleaned out as appropriate to ensure proper function of the measures.

Embankment construction and grading shall be managed in such a manner as to prevent surface runoff/drainage from discharging untreated into the riparian buffer. Instead all interim surfaces will be graded to drain to temporary erosion control devices. Temporary berms, ditches, etc. will be incorporated, as necessary, to treat temporary runoff before discharging into the riparian buffer.

NCDOT will conduct a pre-construction mussel relocation for all species of native mussels as per Appendix D of the Biological Assessment (attached). The relocation plan covers an area from 130 meters downstream of the bridge to 30 meters upstream of the bridge.

The contractor will provide at least three weeks notification to the Resident Engineer and Division Environmental Officer concerning start of work at the project to allow for appropriate contact with parties conducting the pre-construction mussel survey and relocation activities.

The existing scour hole in the floodplain of the southwest quadrant will be filled with suitable material and stabilized with ground cover.

Best management practices found in the following documents will be implemented as appropriate: 1) NCDOT Erosion and Sediment Control Design and Construction Manual (NCDOT 2015), 2) NCDOT Best Management Practices for Construction and Maintenance Activities (NCDOT 2003), and 3) NCDOT Stormwater Best Management Practices Toolbox (NCDOT 2014).

All sedimentation and erosion control measures will be appropriately maintained following NCDOT standards to ensure proper function of the measures. The NCDOT adheres to the permit conditions of General Permit NCG 010000 to Discharge Stormwater under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System for Construction Activities. NCDOT is required to “select, install, implement and maintain best management practices (BMPs) and control measures that minimize pollutants in the discharge to meet the requirements of this permit.” Among other conditions, the permit requires: 1) all erosion and sedimentation control measures must be inspected at least once every seven calendar days and 2) within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than 1.0 inch of rain per 24 hour period. It is understood that these requirements and implementation of other appropriate BMPs are monitored through multiple layers of oversight. At a minimum, the following personnel monitor erosion control measures:

- Contractor project manager
- NCDOT Division Environmental Officers and Environmental Specialists
- NCDOT Roadside Environmental Field Operations staff

2.4. Interrelated and Interdependent Actions

A BO/CO evaluates the effects of a proposed Federal action. For purposes of consultation/conference under ESA §7, the effects of a Federal action on listed/proposed species or critical habitat include the direct and indirect effects of the action, plus the effects of interrelated or interdependent actions. “Indirect effects are those that are caused by the proposed action and are later in time, but still are reasonably certain to occur. Interrelated actions are those that are part of a larger action and depend on the larger action for their justification. Interdependent actions are those that have no independent utility apart from the action under consideration” (50 CFR §402.02).

A Halifax Electric aerial power line is located near the bridge. The power line does not need to be moved but it will need to be de-energized and lowered to the ground while the new culvert is installed.

3. CONCURRENCE

The USACE determined that the Action is not likely to adversely affect the Dwarf Wedgemussel (*Alasmidonta heterodon*). The Service concurs with this determination, for reasons we explain in this section. A mussel survey was conducted within the Action Area on August 23, 2017. While habitat for Dwarf Wedgemussel is present within the Action Area, no specimens have ever been documented in Fishing Creek near the project area. The closest known occurrence for the species is approximately seven miles downstream of the Action Area on Long Branch. The species was last observed there in 1999.

This concurrence concludes consultation for the listed species named in this section, and these are not further addressed in this BO. The circumstances described in the Reinitiation Notice of this BO that require reinitiating consultation for the Action, except for exceeding the amount or extent of incidental take, also apply to this species.

4. YELLOW LANCE

4.1. Status of Yellow Lance

This section summarizes the best available data about the biology and current condition of Yellow Lance (YL, *Elliptio lanceolata*) throughout its range that are relevant to formulating an opinion about the Action. The Service published its decision to list YL as threatened on April 3, 2018 (83 FR 14189-14198). The Service also recently completed a Species Status Assessment Report for the YL (USFWS 2017c), and much of the information contained in that document is incorporated by reference into this BO.

4.1.1. Description of YL

The YL is a bright yellow mussel with a shell more than twice as long as it is tall, usually not more than 86mm (3.4 inches) in length. Its shell is composed of two hinged valves which are joined by a ligament. The outermost layer of the shell has a waxy appearance with brownish ridges known as “growth rests” that formed during an intermediate stage of growth when the ridge area was the edge of the shell. The lustrous inner layer is usually an iridescent blue color, and sometimes has white or salmon color on the shorter end of the shell from where the foot extends (the anterior). The longer end of the shell from where the siphons extend (the posterior) is distinctly rounded. YL has interlocking hinge “teeth” on the inside of the shell to help keep the two valves in proper alignment (USFWS 2019c).

4.1.2. Life History of YL

The YL is a sand-associated species often found buried deep in clean, coarse to medium sand, although it can sometimes be found in gravel substrates. The YL often are moved with shifting sand and eventually settle in sand at the downstream end of stable sand and gravel bars. This species depends on clean, moderate flowing water with high dissolved oxygen and is found in medium-sized rivers to smaller streams.

The life cycle of the YL, like most freshwater mussels, is complex, relying on host fish for successful reproduction. Their eggs develop into microscopic larvae (glochidia) within the gills of the female mussel. The female expels glochidia into the water where they must attach to gills or fins of a fish to continue developing. Each mussel species has specific host fish species that are needed by the glochidia to keep growing and transform into juveniles. After a few weeks, they drop off and land on the river bottom where they grow into adults.

Like many freshwater mussels, the YL grows rapidly during the first few years of life and slows down with age. In the laboratory, the YL reaches sexual maturity around three years old. Once the YL reaches maturity, the females release stringy clumps of glochidia in mucous. The clumps

are likely eaten by minnows so the glochidia can attach to the minnow's gills and fin scales. At least two species of minnow are confirmed to host YL development in a laboratory setting, the White Shiner (*Luxilus albeolus*) and Pinewoods Shiner (*Lythrurus matuntinus*). Biologists have developed ways to propagate YL under controlled laboratory conditions.

Like other freshwater mussels, YL are suspension feeders that eat algae and other tiny particles, such as leaf debris, that they filter out of the water. Juveniles likely pedal-feed in the sediment, whereas adults filter-feed from the water column. For more detailed information on the life history of YL, see USFWS (2017c).

4.1.3. Numbers, Reproduction, and Distribution of YL

The YL has a historical range from the Patuxent River Basin in Maryland to the Neuse River Basin in North Carolina. For the current range, the YL Species Status Assessment Report (USFWS 2017c) delineates populations by using the eight river basins that YL has historically occupied. This includes the Patuxent, Potomac, Rappahannock, York, James, Chowan, Tar, and Neuse River basins in Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina. Because the river basin level is at a very coarse scale, populations were further delineated using management units (MUs). MUs were defined as one or more HUC10 watersheds that species experts identified as most appropriate for assessing population-level resiliency. Of eight historical populations, seven are known to have had a YL occurrence in the last 12 years, though the majority of those occurrences were limited to a single location within the river basin.

Patuxent River Basin in Maryland – This population contains one MU, the Patuxent MU. Five YL were collected prior to 1965, one individual was collected in 2015, and one relic shell was collected in 2016. In 2018, 23 individuals were found over 6+ kilometers of the Hawlings River.

Potomac River Basin in Maryland/Virginia – This population contains one MU, the Potomac MU. One specimen has been documented from a pre-1970 survey.

Rappahannock River Basin in Virginia – This population contains one MU, the Rappahannock River Subbasin MU. Many surveys have documented the presence of YL in this MU, with an occasional observation of upwards of 50 individuals. The species was first seen in the late 1980s, and it has been observed most recently in 2011 in the Rappahannock River, although very few (3) individuals were seen during that survey.

York River Basin in Virginia – This population contains one MU, the York MU. Several surveys document the presence of YL in this MU – presumably first seen in 1973, and as recent as 2007 in the South Anna River, although only one individual was observed during that survey.

James River Basin in Virginia – This population contains one MU, the Johns Creek MU. YL was first seen in this MU in 1984, and in 2004, one effort observed 31 individuals. The Virginia Department of Transportation confirms YL occurrence in this basin as recent as 2009.

Chowan River Basin in Virginia – This population contains two MUs, the Nottoway River Subbasin MU and the Meherrin River MU. Several surveys in the Nottoway River Subbasin

have noted the presence of YL (one with as many as 781 individuals, although the identity of some specimens is in question). The species has been seen as recently as 2011 in the Nottoway River, albeit in extremely low (5) numbers.

Tar River Basin in North Carolina – This population contains four MUs; the Upper/Middle Tar River MU, the Lower Tar River MU, the Sandy-Swift Creek MU, and the Fishing Creek Subbasin MU. Many survey efforts have documented the presence of YL over the years; the species was first seen in 1966 in the Tar River, and it has been documented as recently as 2017 in Shocco Creek (RK&K 2017a) and Fishing Creek (RK&K 2017b). Surveys in the mainstem Tar in 1990 documented upwards of 100 live individuals; most other surveys have documented between 25 and 31 individuals, and the most seen in recent (2014) surveys has been 25 live individuals. Similarly, in the late 1980s and early 1990s, Swift Creek surveys documented hundreds (342 in one instance) of shells, and recent surveys in 2015 and 2016 documented 53 and 45 live individuals, respectively.

Neuse River Basin in North Carolina – This population contains one MU, the Middle Neuse Tributaries MU. The YL was first seen in 1991, and most recently one individual was seen in 2015. Most surveys report very low numbers observed (usually only one live individual or just shell material), although one effort in 1994 (Swift Creek) documented 18 live individuals. There have been recent (2014-2016) intensive surveys in the Swift Creek watershed, and only one YL has been observed.

For more detailed information regarding the current condition of YL populations across its range, see USFWS (2017c).

4.1.4. Conservation Needs of and Threats to YL

The largest threats to the future viability of the species relate to habitat degradation from stressors influencing water quality, water quantity, instream habitat, and habitat connectivity (USFWS 2017c).

Adult mussels are easily harmed by toxicants and declines in water quality from pollution because they stay in one place. Pollution may come from specific, identifiable sources such as factories, sewage treatment plants and solid waste disposal sites or from diffuse sources (non-point pollution sources) like runoff from cultivated fields, pastures, cattle feedlots, poultry farms, mines, construction sites, private wastewater discharges, and road drainage. Pollutants can cause changes in water chemistry that seriously impact aquatic species by reducing water quality and may directly kill mussels, reduce the ability of surviving mussels to have young, or result in poor health or disappearance of host fish. Mussels are known to be sensitive to a variety of heavy metals, inorganic salts, and ammonia (Wang et al. 2017).

Sediment is material suspended in water that usually is moved as the result of erosion. Although sedimentation is a natural process, poor land use practices, dredging, impoundments, intensive timber harvesting, heavy recreational use, and other activities may accelerate erosion and increase sedimentation. A sudden or slow blanketing of the river bottom with sediment can suffocate freshwater mussels because it is difficult for them to move away from the threat.

Increased sediment levels may also make it difficult for mussels to feed, which can lead to decreased growth, reproduction, and survival (Ellis 1936, Marking and Bills 1980).

Dams affect both upstream and downstream mussel populations by disrupting natural flow patterns, scouring river bottoms, changing water temperatures, and eliminating habitat (Watters 2001). The YL, a mussel adapted to living in river currents, cannot survive in the still water impounded behind dams. YL depend on their host fish as a means of moving upstream. Dams are barriers that prevent or restrict fish from moving upstream, and therefore also prevent mussels from moving upstream. Upstream mussel populations then become isolated from downstream populations. This isolation leads to small unstable populations which are more likely to die out (USFWS 2019c).

4.2. Environmental Baseline for YL

This section is an analysis of the effects of past and ongoing human and natural factors leading to the current status of the YL, its habitat, and ecosystem within the Action Area. The environmental baseline is a “snapshot” of the species’ health in the Action Area at the time of the consultation, and does not include the effects of the Action under review.

4.2.1. Action Area Numbers, Reproduction, and Distribution of YL

The Action Area occurs within the Fishing Creek Subbasin MU of the Tar River Basin population. A mussel survey was conducted within the Action Area on August 23, 2017 (RK&K 2017b). During the survey, seven YL were observed. Using a detection probability of 0.42 (Pandolfo et al. 2016), it is estimated that 17 adult YL occur within the Action Area.

4.2.2. Action Area Conservation Needs of and Threats to YL

The Action Area contains approximately one acre of good quality habitat for the YL; however, some bank erosion/undercutting is present. The land use around and upstream of the Action Area is primarily forested, with ample forest buffers to protect the stream. Therefore, the Action Area is not currently threatened with water quality issues from upstream. The most immediate threat to YL within the Action Area may be from beaver activity, which could render the habitat less suitable to the species (Hoch 2012).

4.3. Effects of the Action on YL

This section analyzes the direct and indirect effects of the Action on the YL, which includes the direct and indirect effects of interrelated and interdependent actions. Direct effects are caused by the Action and occur at the same time and place. Indirect effects are caused by the Action, but are later in time and reasonably certain to occur. Our analyses are organized according to the description of the Action in section 2 of this BO.

4.3.1. Effects of Removal of Existing Bridge and Construction of New Culvert on YL

Due to the top-down demolition methodology, the removal of the existing bridge deck is not likely to affect YL. The primary direct instream disturbance will result from the placement of impervious dikes to dewater the work area to remove the existing masonry abutments, to install the new structure footings, and to place the rip rap on the stream banks. It is possible that YL could be crushed during these activities, but the potential for this to occur is low due to the fact the activities will occur at the scour pool under and adjacent to the bridge where YL are less likely to occur. The possibility of YL being crushed is also further reduced by the commitment to perform a mussel relocation prior to construction (see Appendix D of Biological Assessment).

When the impervious dikes are removed after construction of the new culvert, some amount of sediment will be transported downstream, potentially harming YL by interfering with respiration, feeding, or spawning and otherwise degrading habitat for YL and their host fish (Ellis 1936, Marking and Bills 1980). In extreme cases, mussels may be buried by sediment. However, the transport of sediment will be limited by the presence of the deep pool located at the bridge, thus reducing downstream effects.

Some minor earthwork will occur along the approach roads to the bridge, thus creating the potential for disturbed areas to erode sediment into the stream. However, to avoid or minimize the potential siltation effects, NCDOT has developed stringent erosion control measures (see Section 2.3) which greatly minimize sediment entering the stream. Assuming the proper installation and maintenance of these erosion control measures and full implementation of all conservation measures, the probability of effects from siltation leading to mortality is low. All potential effects described in this section could affect not only juvenile and adult YL, but the larval glochidia stage and the species' host fish as well.

Under normal circumstances, a downstream distance of 400 meters (0.25 mile) is generally considered to be the maximum extent of detectable sedimentation effects in Piedmont streams. Based on the estimated population of adults, it is assumed that up to 17 adult YL could be harmed within this 400 meters. However, this number is likely overstated due to the planned mussel relocation in a portion of the Action Area (see Section 2.3). Given the cryptic nature of YL, any harmful effects would be difficult to detect and measure.

Although NCDOT employs BMPs to avoid contaminants from entering streams, there is always the chance of an accidental spill of petrochemicals, uncured concrete, or other toxic substances into a stream. Although such events are rare, they can cause significant harm to mussels (USFWS 2017a).

One indirect beneficial effect of the Action is that the hydraulic opening under the existing bridge will be increased from ~83 square feet to ~191 square feet with the new culvert, thus allowing the stream channel to stabilize and reach a more natural equilibrium. In turn, this will likely reduce the potential for long-term erosion and sedimentation effects on downstream YL habitat.

4.3.2. Effects of Conservation Measures on YL

The conservation measures are designed to minimize adverse effects to aquatic resources. One of these conservation measures involves relocating mussels from a 160 meter section of stream (from 130 meters downstream to 30 meters upstream of the bridge crossing – see Appendix D of Biological Assessment). If YL are encountered within this 160 meter section of stream, they will be relocated approximately 350 meters upstream of the bridge crossing into suitable habitat. Any YL handled and relocated may be temporarily stressed (i.e. harassed) during the relocation, but mortality is not expected. Although up to 17 YL are estimated to occur within the Action Area, it is likely that only a subset of this number would be relocated within the 160 meter section of the stream covered by the relocation plan. Based on a 0.42 detection probability (Pandolfo et al. 2016) and applying 1-2 survey passes, it is estimated that 42-66% of YL within the 160 meter section of stream would be located and moved.

4.3.3. Effects of Interrelated and Interdependent Actions on YL

The de-energization and lowering of the Halifax Electric aerial power line located near the bridge will have no effect on the YL. No ground disturbance is expected.

4.4. Cumulative Effects on Yellow Lance

For purposes of consultation under ESA §7, cumulative effects are those caused by future state, tribal, local, or private actions that are reasonably certain to occur in the Action Area. Future Federal actions that are unrelated to the proposed action are not considered, because they require separate consultation under §7 of the ESA.

We are not aware of any non-Federal actions in the Action Area that may affect YL. Therefore, cumulative effects are not relevant to formulating our opinion for the Action.

4.5. Conclusion for Yellow Lance

In this section, we summarize and interpret the findings of the previous sections for the YL (status, baseline, effects, and cumulative effects) relative to the purpose of a BO under §7(a)(2) of the ESA, which is to determine whether a Federal action is likely to:

- a) jeopardize the continued existence of species listed as endangered or threatened; or
- b) result in the destruction or adverse modification of designated critical habitat.

“Jeopardize the continued existence” means to engage in an action that reasonably would be expected, directly or indirectly, to reduce appreciably the likelihood of both the survival and recovery of a listed species in the wild by reducing the reproduction, numbers, or distribution of that species (50 CFR §402.02).

Of eight historical populations of YL occurring in Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina, six are known to have had records in the last 12 years. The Action Area occurs within the Fishing Creek Subbasin MU of the Tar River Basin population. It is estimated that 17 adult YL occur within the Action Area. Adverse effects to YL may occur. However, the Action incorporates many construction-related conservation measures which will reduce the potential to adversely

affect YL. Assuming proper installation and maintenance of NCDOT's stringent erosion control measures, the probability of adverse effects from siltation leading to mortality is low. A mussel relocation plan will further reduce the chance of lethal effects. The Action also has a long-term beneficial effect of increasing the hydraulic opening of the new structure, which will likely reduce future erosion and sedimentation effects. Overall, the effects of the Action are not biologically meaningful relative to the species' populations range-wide and the species' conservation needs.

After reviewing the current status of the species, the environmental baseline for the Action Area, the effects of the Action and the cumulative effects, it is the Service's biological opinion that the Action is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of the YL.

5. TAR RIVER SPINYMUSSEL

5.1. Status of Tar River Spiny mussel

This section summarizes the best available data about the biology and current condition of Tar River Spiny mussel (TRSM, *Parvaspina steinstansana*) throughout its range that are relevant to formulating an opinion about the Action. The Service published its decision to list TRSM as endangered on June 27, 1985 (50 FR 26572-26575).

5.1.1. Description of TRSM

The TRSM is one of only three freshwater mussels with spines in the world. The brownish shell is rhomboid-shaped, up to 2.4 inches (6 cm) long, with 0-6 spines on each valve. The shell is rather smooth and shiny, with concentric rings, and ends in a blunt point. Younger individuals are orange-brown with greenish rays streaking outward from the hinge area. Adults are darker with less distinct rays. One to three small thin ridges run on the interior surface of the shell from the beak cavity to the lower ventral area of the shell. The anterior half of the shell's inner surface is salmon-colored, while the posterior half is iridescent blue. Juveniles may have up to 12 spines, but adults tend to lose their spines as they mature (USFWS 2017d).

5.1.2. Life History of TRSM

The TRSM lives in relatively silt-free unconsolidated beds of coarse sand and gravel in relatively fast-flowing, well oxygenated stream reaches. It is found in association with other mussels but is never very numerous. Like other mussels, it feeds by siphoning and filtering small food particles that are suspended in the water. Their method of reproduction is similar to other freshwater mussel species. Males release sperm into the water column, and the sperm are taken in by the females through their siphons as they respire. The eggs are fertilized and develop within the females' gills into larvae (glochidia). The females release the glochidia that must then attach to the gills or fins of specific fish species. The glochidia transform into juvenile mussels and drop off the fish onto the stream bottom (USFWS 2017d). The following fish have been identified as suitable hosts: White Shiner (*Luxilus albeolus*), Pinewoods Shiner (*Lythrurus matutinus*), Bluehead Chub (*Nocomis leptoccephalus*), and Satinfish Shiner (*Cyprinella analostana*) (Eads et al. 2008).

5.1.3. Numbers, Reproduction, and Distribution of TRSM

The TRSM is endemic to the Tar River and Neuse River basins in North Carolina. In the Tar River system, the species has been documented in the mainstem of the Tar River, Shocco Creek, Fishing Creek, Little Fishing Creek, Swift Creek, and Sandy Creek. In the Neuse River system, the species has been documented from the Little River and mainstem of the Neuse River. Based on the most recent survey data, the species may be extirpated from the mainstem of the Tar River (last observation of live individuals in 2001; no live or shells were found during surveys in 2002, 2007, or 2013) and Shocco Creek (last and only record was a shell found in 1993). The species may also be extirpated from the mainstem of the Neuse River. Surviving populations of TRSM are small in number, restricted in range, declining, and appear isolated from other populations where they continue to be highly vulnerable to extirpation from stochastic and chronic events (e.g., drought, toxic spills, runoff, problems associated with wastewater discharges) (USFWS 2014).

Surveys in Sandy Creek and Swift Creek (Tar River Basin) from 1987-2005 found a total of 355 TRSM (live individuals plus shells). Only one individual was found during surveys in Swift Creek in 2005 and no individuals have been found since. A total of 73 live individuals and shells have been observed in Little Fishing Creek during surveys from 1993-2016, and 10 (live individuals plus shells) were found from 1999-2016 in Fishing Creek. Only four TRSM have been recorded from the Little River (Neuse River Basin), and repeated surveys have not found any more individuals (NCWRC 2019). Additional surveys are needed to determine the status of the TRSM in the mainstem of the Tar River, Shocco Creek, and the mainstem of the Neuse River.

Although a very low level of successful reproduction may be occurring in the Little Fishing/Fishing Creek and Little River populations, all the surviving populations appear to be well below self-maintenance levels. Multiple augmentation efforts from December 2014 through April 2017 have occurred in Little Fishing Creek and Fishing Creek. A total of 11,577 captively propagated TRSM were released at locations in the two streams (Tyler Black, NCWRC, personal email communication, February 2018).

5.1.4. Conservation Needs of and Threats to TRSM

All surviving populations of the TRSM are small in size, highly fragmented, and are in decline. The primary factors affecting the species and its habitat appear to be stream impacts (sedimentation, bank instability, loss of instream habitat) associated with the loss of forested riparian buffers, poorly controlled stormwater runoff of silt and other pollutants from forestry and agricultural activities, development activities, and road construction (USFWS 2019b). Pesticides were implicated in the largest known mortality event for Tar River Spiny mussel (Fleming et al. 1995). Point source discharges also continue to threaten habitat quality in both the Tar and Neuse River watersheds. The genetic viability of the surviving populations is a significant concern. All of the remaining populations of TRSM appear to be effectively isolated from one another by impoundments and long reaches of highly degraded habitat (USFWS 2019b).

5.2. Environmental Baseline for TRSM

This section is an analysis of the effects of past and ongoing human and natural factors leading to the current status of the TRSM, its habitat, and ecosystem within the Action Area. The environmental baseline is a “snapshot” of the species’ health in the Action Area at the time of the consultation, and does not include the effects of the Action under review.

5.2.1. Action Area Numbers, Reproduction, and Distribution of TRSM

Although the TRSM was not found during an August 23, 2017 survey (RK&K 2017b) of the Action Area, North Carolina Natural Heritage Program Element Occurrence (EO) ID No. 21414 for the species is located approximately 0.3 stream mile downstream of Bridge 135, just outside the Action Area. The EO is considered current with a last observed date of August 20, 1999. The 1999 survey detected a single TRSM approximately 1.25 stream miles downstream of Bridge 135. Suitable instream habitat for the species is present in the Action Area, but is not optimal due to deeper pools and the fineness of the substrate. Based on this information, it is estimated that up to one TRSM may occur within the Action Area.

5.2.2. Action Area Conservation Needs of and Threats to TRSM

The Action Area contains approximately one acre of suitable, but not optimal, habitat for the TRSM; however, some bank erosion/undercutting is present. The land use around and upstream of the Action Area is primarily forested, with ample forest buffers to protect the stream. Therefore, the Action Area is not currently threatened with water quality issues from upstream. The most immediate threat to TRSM within the Action Area may be from beaver activity, which could render the habitat less suitable to the species (Hoch 2012).

5.3. Effects of the Action on TRSM

This section analyzes the direct and indirect effects of the Action on the TRSM, which includes the direct and indirect effects of interrelated and interdependent actions. Direct effects are caused by the Action and occur at the same time and place. Indirect effects are caused by the Action, but are later in time and reasonably certain to occur. Our analyses are organized according to the description of the Action in section 2 of this BO.

5.3.1. Effects of Removal of Existing Bridge and Construction of New Culvert on TRSM

The effects of removing the existing bridge and constructing the new culvert on TRSM are very similar to those of the YL described in Section 4.3.1. It is estimated that up to one TRSM may be harmed.

5.3.2. Effects of Conservation Measures on TRSM

The effects of conservation measures on TRSM are very similar to those of the YL described in Section 4.3.2. It is estimated that up to one TRSM may be temporarily harassed via relocation.

5.3.3. Effects of Interrelated and Interdependent Actions on TRSM

The de-energization and lowering of the Halifax Electric aerial power line located near the bridge will have no effect on the TRSM. No ground disturbance is expected.

5.4. Cumulative Effects on TRSM

For purposes of consultation under ESA §7, cumulative effects are those caused by future state, tribal, local, or private actions that are reasonably certain to occur in the Action Area. Future Federal actions that are unrelated to the proposed action are not considered, because they require separate consultation under §7 of the ESA.

We are not aware of any non-Federal actions in the Action Area that may affect TRSM. Therefore, cumulative effects are not relevant to formulating our opinion for the Action.

5.5. Conclusion for TRSM

In this section, we summarize and interpret the findings of the previous sections for the TRSM (status, baseline, effects, and cumulative effects) relative to the purpose of a BO under §7(a)(2) of the ESA, which is to determine whether a Federal action is likely to:

- a) jeopardize the continued existence of species listed as endangered or threatened; or
- b) result in the destruction or adverse modification of designated critical habitat.

“Jeopardize the continued existence” means to engage in an action that reasonably would be expected, directly or indirectly, to reduce appreciably the likelihood of both the survival and recovery of a listed species in the wild by reducing the reproduction, numbers, or distribution of that species (50 CFR §402.02).

The TRSM is endemic to the Tar River and Neuse River basins in North Carolina. Populations of TRSM are small in number, restricted in range, declining, and appear isolated from other populations where they continue to be highly vulnerable to extirpation from stochastic and chronic events. No TRSM were observed within the Action Area in a 2017 survey. The closest record for the species was a single specimen from 1999 that was observed approximately 1.25 miles downstream of Bridge No. 135. It is estimated that up to one TRSM may occur within the Action Area.

The Action incorporates many construction-related conservation measures which will reduce the potential to adversely affect TRSM. Assuming proper installation and maintenance of NCDOT’s stringent erosion control measures, the probability of adverse effects from siltation leading to mortality is low. A mussel relocation plan will further reduce the chance of lethal effects. The Action also has a long-term beneficial effect of increasing the hydraulic opening of the new structure, which will likely reduce future erosion and sedimentation effects. Overall, the effects of the Action are not biologically meaningful relative to the species’ populations range-wide and the species’ conservation needs.

After reviewing the current status of the species, the environmental baseline for the Action Area, the effects of the Action and the cumulative effects, it is the Service's biological opinion that the Action is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of the TRSM.

6. ATLANTIC PIGTOE

6.1. Status of Atlantic Pigtoe

This section summarizes best available data about the biology and current condition of Atlantic Pigtoe (AP, *Fusconaia masoni*) throughout its range that are relevant to formulating an opinion about the Action. The Service published a proposed rule to list AP as threatened on October 11, 2018 (83 FR 51570-51609). The Service also recently completed a Species Status Assessment Report for the AP (USFWS 2017b), and much of the information contained in that document is incorporated by reference into this CO.

6.1.1. Description of AP

The AP is a freshwater mussel with a chunky, rhombus shaped shell, similar in appearance to a pig's hoof/toe. There is a distinct posterior ridge. The outer surface of the shell is yellow to dark brown and parchment-like, while the inner layer is iridescent blue to salmon, white, or orange. Although larger specimens exist, the AP rarely exceeds two inches in length. Young individuals may have greenish rays across the entire shell surface. When collected fresh, the interior surface (nacre) in the shell tends to be salmon colored and sometimes iridescent. AP has interlocking hinge "teeth" on the inside of the shell to help keep the two valves in proper alignment (USFWS 2019a).

6.1.2. Life History of AP

The preferred habitat of the AP is coarse sand and gravel, and rarely in silt and detritus. Historically, the best populations existed in small creeks to larger rivers with excellent water quality, where flows were sufficient to maintain clean, silt-free substrates.

The life cycle of the AP, like most freshwater mussels, is complex, relying on host fish for successful reproduction. Male AP release their sperm into the water column where it is siphoned in by the females. Once fertilization has taken place in the gills of the female mussel, mature microscopic glochidia (larva) are released where they must attach themselves to the gills and/or fins of fish hosts to continue developing. AP are tachytictic (short term) breeders that usually release their larvae by July or August (USFWS 2019a).

AP have specific host fish that are needed by the glochidia to keep growing to ultimately transform into juveniles. After a few weeks of living as parasites, they drop off and land on the stream bottom where they grow into adults. Host fish for the AP include the Rosefin Shiner (*Lythrurus ardens*), Creek Chub (*Semotilus atromaculatus*), Longnose Dace (*Rhynchithys cataractae*), White Shiner (*Luxilus albeolus*), Satinfin Shiner (*Cyprinella analostana*), Bluehead Chub (*Nocomis leptcephalus*), Rosyside Dace (*Clinostomus funduloides*), Pinewoods Shiner (*Lythrurus matutinus*), Swallowtail Shiner (*Notropis procne*), and Mountain Redbelly Dace

(*Chrosomus oreas*). The time period for glochidia to develop varies between 30 to-60 days and depends on the host fish (USFWS 2019a).

Like all freshwater mussels, AP are known as suspension feeders because they eat algae, bacteria, and other microscopic matter they filter out of the water. Juveniles likely pedal-feed in the sediment, whereas adults filter-feed from the water column (USFWS 2019a).

6.1.3. Numbers, Reproduction, and Distribution of AP

The AP's historical range included all major river basins in the Atlantic coastal drainages from the James River Basin in Virginia south to the Altamaha River Basin in Georgia. The AP has been documented from multiple physiographic provinces, from the foothills of the Appalachian Mountains through the Piedmont and into the Coastal Plain, in streams ranging in size from < 1 meter wide up to some of the largest Atlantic Slope rivers within the species' range.

For the current range, the AP Species Status Assessment Report (USFWS 2017b) delineates populations using the 12 river basins that AP has historically occupied. This includes the James, Chowan, Roanoke, Tar, Neuse, Cape Fear, Pee Dee, Catawba, Edisto, Savannah, Ogeechee, and Altamaha River basins. Of 12 historical populations, seven populations within Virginia and North Carolina have observations in the last 12 years, though the majority of occurrences were limited to a single location within the river basin. The AP is presumed extirpated from the southern portion of the range in South Carolina and Georgia. Most of the remaining populations are small and fragmented, only occupying a fraction of reaches that were historically occupied. This decrease in abundance and distribution has resulted in largely isolated contemporary populations.

Because the river basin level is at a very coarse scale, the seven extant populations were further delineated using management units (MUs). MUs were defined as one or more HUC10 watersheds that species experts identified as most appropriate for assessing population-level resiliency. For more detailed information regarding the status of each population and MU, see pages 13-26 and Table 3-2 of the AP Species Status Assessment Report (USFWS 2017b).

6.1.4. Conservation Needs of and Threats to AP

The AP faces a variety of threats from declines in water quality, loss of stream flow, riparian and instream habitat fragmentation, and deterioration of instream habitats. These threats are expected to be exacerbated by urbanization and climate change. Given current and future decreases in resiliency, populations become more vulnerable to extirpation from stochastic events, in turn, resulting in concurrent losses in representation and redundancy. Predictions of AP habitat conditions and population factors suggest possible extirpation in up to five of seven currently extant populations. The two populations predicted to remain extant at the end of the predictive time horizon are expected to be characterized by low occupancy and abundance. For more detailed information regarding the conservation needs and threats to AP, see pages 45-61 of the AP Species Status Assessment Report (USFWS 2017b).

6.2. Environmental Baseline for AP

This section is an analysis of the effects of past and ongoing human and natural factors leading to the current status of the AP, its habitat, and ecosystem within the Action Area. The environmental baseline is a “snapshot” of the species’ health in the Action Area at the time of the consultation, and does not include the effects of the Action under review.

6.2.1. Action Area Numbers, Reproduction, and Distribution of AP

Although the AP was not detected during an August 23, 2017 mussel survey (RK&K 2017b), the Action Area is located within North Carolina Natural Heritage Program Element Occurrence (EO) ID 16027. The EO is considered current with a last observed date of July 27, 2017. Another survey on June 12, 2017 documented the closest recent record of an AP to Bridge 135 – one AP individual just over 10 stream miles downstream of the bridge, well outside of the Action Area. Suitable habitat for the species consisting of stable gravel or sand/gravel substrate is present within the Action Area, but areas of finer sand and silt in the deeper pools cause the AP habitat to have a patchy distribution.

6.2.2. Action Area Conservation Needs of and Threats to AP

The Action Area contains less than one acre of suitable habitat for the AP in a patchy distribution. The land use around and upstream of the Action Area is primarily forested, with ample forest buffers to protect the stream. Therefore, the Action Area is not currently threatened with water quality issues from upstream. The most immediate threat to AP within the Action Area may be from beaver activity, which could render the habitat less suitable to the species (Hoch 2012).

6.3. Effects of the Action on AP

This section analyzes the direct and indirect effects of the Action on the AP, which includes the direct and indirect effects of interrelated and interdependent actions. Direct effects are caused by the Action and occur at the same time and place. Indirect effects are caused by the Action, but are later in time and reasonably certain to occur. Our analyses are organized according to the description of the Action in section 2 of this BO/CO.

6.3.1. Effects of Removal of Existing Bridge and Construction of New Culvert on AP

The effects of removing the existing bridge and constructing the new culvert on AP are very similar to those of the YL described in Section 4.3.1. It is estimated that up to one AP may be harmed.

6.3.2. Effects of Conservation Measures on AP

The effects of conservation measures on AP are very similar to those of the YL described in Section 4.3.2. It is estimated that up to one AP may be harassed via relocation.

6.3.3. Effects of Interrelated and Interdependent Actions on AP

The de-energization and lowering of the Halifax Electric aerial power line located near the bridge will have no effect on the AP. No ground disturbance is expected.

6.4. Cumulative Effects on AP

For purposes of consultation under ESA §7, cumulative effects are those caused by future state, tribal, local, or private actions that are reasonably certain to occur in the Action Area. Future Federal actions that are unrelated to the proposed action are not considered, because they require separate consultation under §7 of the ESA.

We are not aware of any non-Federal actions in the Action Area that may affect AP. Therefore, cumulative effects are not relevant to formulating our opinion for the Action.

6.5. Conclusion for AP

In this section, we summarize and interpret the findings of the previous sections for the AP (status, baseline, effects, and cumulative effects) relative to the purpose of a BO/CO under §7(a)(2) of the ESA, which is to determine whether a Federal action is likely to:

- a) jeopardize the continued existence of species listed as endangered or threatened; or
- b) result in the destruction or adverse modification of designated critical habitat.

“Jeopardize the continued existence” means to engage in an action that reasonably would be expected, directly or indirectly, to reduce appreciably the likelihood of both the survival and recovery of a listed species in the wild by reducing the reproduction, numbers, or distribution of that species (50 CFR §402.02).

Of 12 historical populations, seven populations within Virginia and North Carolina have observations in the last 12 years. The AP is presumed extirpated from the southern portion of the range in South Carolina and Georgia. Most of the remaining populations are small and fragmented, only occupying a fraction of reaches that were historically occupied. The AP was not detected within the Action Area during an August 23, 2017 mussel survey, but the Action Area is located within North Carolina Natural Heritage Program Element Occurrence ID 16027. The closest recent record of the species was documented in 2017 with a single individual observed just over 10 stream miles downstream of Bridge No. 135, well outside of the Action Area. Suitable habitat for the species is present within the Action Area, but in a patchy distribution. Based on this information, it is estimated that up to one AP may be present within the Action Area.

The Action incorporates many construction-related conservation measures which will reduce the potential to adversely affect AP. Assuming proper installation and maintenance of NCDOT’s stringent erosion control measures, the probability of adverse effects from siltation leading to mortality is low. A mussel relocation plan will further reduce the chance of lethal effects. The Action also has a long-term beneficial effect of increasing the hydraulic opening of the new structure, which will likely reduce future erosion and sedimentation effects. Overall, the effects

of the Action are not biologically meaningful relative to the species' populations range-wide and the species' conservation needs.

After reviewing the current status of the species, the environmental baseline for the Action Area, the effects of the Action and the cumulative effects, it is the Service's biological opinion that the Action is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of the AP.

7. PROPOSED CRITICAL HABITAT FOR ATLANTIC PIGTOE

7.1. Status of Atlantic Pigtoe Proposed Critical Habitat

This section summarizes best available data about the current condition of all proposed units of critical habitat for Atlantic Pigtoe (AP, *Fusconaia masoni*) that are relevant to formulating an opinion about the Action. The Service published its proposed rule to designate critical habitat for AP on October 11, 2018 (83 FR 51570-51609).

7.1.1. Description of AP Proposed Critical Habitat

Proposed critical habitat for AP is comprised of approximately 542 river miles in 16 units. All of the units are currently occupied by the species and contain all of the physical and biological features (PBFs) essential to the conservation of the species. See Table 3 of 83 FR 51570-51609 for more detailed information on individual units.

The proposed critical habitat provides the following PBFs essential to the conservation of the AP (83 FR 51570-51609).

1. Suitable substrates and connected instream habitats, characterized by geomorphically stable stream channels and banks (*i.e.*, channels that maintain lateral dimensions, longitudinal profiles, and sinuosity patterns over time without an aggrading or degrading bed elevation) with habitats that support a diversity of freshwater mussel and native fish (such as stable riffle-run-pool habitats that provide flow refuges consisting of silt-free gravel and coarse sand substrates).
2. Adequate flows, or a hydrologic flow regime (which includes the severity, frequency, duration, and seasonality of discharge over time), necessary to maintain benthic habitats where the species is found and to maintain connectivity of streams with the floodplain, allowing the exchange of nutrients and sediment for maintenance of the mussel's and fish hosts' habitat, food availability, spawning habitat for native fishes, and the ability for newly transformed juveniles to settle and become established in their habitats.
3. Water and sediment quality (including, but not limited to, conductivity, hardness, turbidity, temperature, pH, ammonia, heavy metals, and chemical constituents) necessary to sustain natural physiological processes for normal behavior, growth, and viability of all life stages.
4. The presence and abundance of fish hosts necessary for recruitment of the AP.

7.1.2. Conservation Value of AP Proposed Critical Habitat

The current distribution of the AP is much reduced from its historical distribution. We anticipate that recovery will require continued protection of existing populations and habitat, as well as ensure there are adequate numbers of mussels in stable populations and that these populations occur over a wide geographic area. This strategy will help to ensure that catastrophic events, such as the effects of hurricanes (e.g. flooding that causes excessive sedimentation, nutrients, and debris to disrupt stream ecology), cannot simultaneously affect all known populations. Rangewide recovery considerations, such as maintaining existing genetic diversity and striving for representation of all major portions of the species' current range, were considered in formulating this proposed critical habitat. All of the units are currently occupied by the species and contain all of the PBFs essential to the conservation of the species (83 FR 51570-51609).

7.1.3. Conservation Needs for AP Proposed Critical Habitat

The features essential to the conservation of the AP may require special management considerations or protections to reduce the following threats: (1) urbanization of the landscape, including land conversion for urban and commercial use, infrastructure (roads, bridges, utilities), and urban water uses (water supply reservoirs, wastewater treatment, etc.); (2) nutrient pollution from agricultural activities that impact water quantity and quality; (3) significant alteration of water quality; (4) improper forest management or silviculture activities that remove large areas of forested wetlands and riparian systems; (5) culvert and pipe installation that creates barriers to movement; (6) impacts from invasive species; (7) changes and shifts in seasonal precipitation patterns as a result of climate change; and (8) other watershed and floodplain disturbances that release sediments or nutrients into the water. Management activities that could ameliorate these threats include: use of best management practices designed to reduce sedimentation, erosion, and bank side destruction; protection of riparian corridors and leaving sufficient canopy cover along banks; moderation of surface and ground water withdrawals to maintain natural flow regimes; increased use of stormwater management and reduction of stormwater flows into the systems; and reduction of other watershed and floodplain disturbances that release sediments, pollutants, or nutrients into the water (83 FR 51570-51609).

7.2. Environmental Baseline for AP Proposed Critical Habitat

This section is an analysis of the effects of past and ongoing human and natural factors leading to the current status of proposed critical habitat for AP within the Action Area. The environmental baseline is a "snapshot" of the condition of the PBFs that are essential to the conservation of the species within designated critical of the Action Area at the time of the consultation, and does not include the effects of the Action under review.

7.2.1. Action Area Conservation Value of AP Proposed Critical Habitat

The Action Area lies within Management Unit 10: TR3 - Fishing Creek Subbasin, which consists of 85 stream miles in Fishing Creek, Little Fishing Creek, Shocco Creek, and Maple Branch in Warren, Halifax, Franklin, and Nash Counties. The land bordering the creeks includes private

parcels (56 miles), protective easements (14 miles), and state game lands (15 miles). The unit currently supports all breeding, feeding, and sheltering needs for the species. The Action Area occupies 0.36% of Management Unit 10 and < 0.06% of the total of all proposed critical habitat for the species. The Action Area provides all four PBFs, but in a patchy distribution.

7.2.2. Action Area Conservation Needs for AP Proposed Critical Habitat

The land use around and upstream of the Action Area is primarily forested, with ample forest buffers to protect the stream. Therefore, the critical habitat within the Action Area is not currently threatened with water quality issues from upstream. The most immediate threat to the critical habitat within the Action Area may be from beaver activity, which could affect all four PBFs (Hoch 2012).

7.3. Effects of the Action on AP Proposed Critical Habitat

This section analyzes the direct and indirect effects of the Action on critical habitat for AP, which includes the direct and indirect effects of interrelated and interdependent actions. Direct effects are caused by the Action and occur at the same time and place. Indirect effects are caused by the Action, but are later in time and reasonably certain to occur. Our analyses are organized according to the description of the Action in section 2 of this BO/CO.

7.3.1. Effects of Removal of Existing Bridge and Construction of New Culvert on AP Proposed Critical Habitat

When the impervious dikes are removed after construction of the new culvert, some amount of sediment will be transported downstream within critical habitat, potentially affecting PBF numbers 1, 3, and 4 (from Section 7.1.1 above). However, the transport of sediment will be reduced somewhat by the presence of the deep pool located at the bridge, thus reducing downstream effects. Also, the minor earthwork along the approach roads to the culvert will create the potential for disturbed areas to erode sediment into the stream. Any addition of sediment to the stream could also affect PBF numbers 1, 3, and 4. However, NCDOT has developed stringent erosion control measures (see Section 2.3) which greatly minimize sediment entering the stream. Assuming the proper installation and maintenance of these erosion control measures, such effects to the PBFs are expected to be minor and temporary, and thus would not appreciably diminish the value of the PBFs.

One potential beneficial effect of the Action on critical habitat is that the hydraulic opening under the existing bridge will be increased from ~83 square feet to ~191 square feet with the new culvert, thus allowing the stream channel to stabilize and reach a more natural equilibrium. In turn, this will likely reduce the potential for long-term erosion and sedimentation effects on PBF numbers 1, 3, and 4.

7.3.2. Effects of Conservation Measures on AP Proposed Critical Habitat

The Conservation Measures, in part, are designed to reduce sedimentation effects. Therefore, potential effects to PBF numbers 1, 3, and 4 described above will be minimized.

7.3.3. Effects of Interrelated and Interdependent Actions on AP Proposed Critical Habitat

The de-energization and lowering of the Halifax Electric aerial power line located near the bridge will have no effect on proposed critical habitat.

7.4. Cumulative Effects on AP Proposed Critical Habitat

For purposes of consultation under ESA §7, cumulative effects are those caused by future state, tribal, local, or private actions that are reasonably certain to occur in the Action Area. Future Federal actions that are unrelated to the proposed action are not considered, because they require separate consultation under §7 of the ESA.

We are not aware of any non-Federal actions in the Action Area that may affect proposed critical habitat. Therefore, cumulative effects are not relevant to formulating our opinion for the Action.

7.5. Conclusion for AP Proposed Critical Habitat

In this section, we summarize and interpret the findings of the previous sections for AP critical habitat (status, baseline, effects, and cumulative effects) relative to the purpose of a BO/CO under §7(a)(2) of the ESA, which is to determine whether a Federal action is likely to:

- a) jeopardize the continued existence of species listed as endangered or threatened; or
- b) result in the destruction or adverse modification of designated critical habitat.

“*Destruction or adverse modification*” means a direct or indirect alteration that appreciably diminishes the value of designated critical habitat for the conservation of a listed species. Such alterations may include, but are not limited to, those that alter the physical or biological features essential to the conservation of a species or that preclude or significantly delay development of such features (50 CFR §402.02).

Total proposed critical habitat for AP consists of approximately 542 miles of stream across 16 units. All units are considered occupied by the species. The Action Area comprises 0.31 mile of proposed critical habitat, thus representing <0.06% of the total proposed critical habitat. Some adverse effects to critical habitat may occur from movement of sediment within the stream or from input of sediment into the stream, thus potentially affecting PBF numbers 1, 3, and 4. However, implementation of conservation measures as part of the Action will greatly minimize these effects. All such effects are expected to be minor and temporary, and thus will not appreciably diminish the value of the PBFs.

After reviewing the current status of the proposed critical habitat, the environmental baseline for the Action Area, the effects of the Action, and the cumulative effects, it is the Service’s conference opinion that the Action is not likely to destroy or adversely modify proposed critical habitat for AP.

8. INCIDENTAL TAKE STATEMENT

ESA §9(a)(1) and regulations issued under §4(d) prohibit the take of endangered and threatened fish and wildlife species without special exemption. The term “take” in the ESA means “to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect, or to attempt to engage in any such conduct” (ESA §3). In regulations at 50 CFR §17.3, the Service further defines:

- “harass” as “an intentional or negligent act or omission which creates the likelihood of injury to wildlife by annoying it to such an extent as to significantly disrupt normal behavioral patterns which include, but are not limited to, breeding, feeding, or sheltering;”
- “harm” as “an act which actually kills or injures wildlife. Such act may include significant habitat modification or degradation where it actually kills or injures wildlife by significantly impairing essential behavioral patterns, including breeding, feeding or sheltering;” and
- “incidental take” as “any taking otherwise prohibited, if such taking is incidental to, and not the purpose of, the carrying out of an otherwise lawful activity.”

Under the terms of ESA §7(b)(4) and §7(o)(2), taking that is incidental to and not intended as part of the agency action is not considered prohibited, provided that such taking is in compliance with the terms and conditions of an incidental take statement (ITS).

The prohibitions against taking an endangered animal species found in ESA §9, and against taking a threatened animal species adopted by regulations under §4(d), do not apply until a species is listed. The preceding conference opinion (CO) evaluated effects of the Action on the AP, which is not listed under the ESA. The Service advises the USACE to consider implementing the reasonable and prudent measures provided below, which are intended to reduce the anticipated amount or extent of take of this species. Voluntary implementation of these measures according to the accompanying terms and conditions, and voluntary monitoring and reporting of taking as specified below, will facilitate adoption of the CO as a BO following listing of this species as endangered or threatened. Following such adoption, the reasonable and prudent measures, terms and conditions, and monitoring and reporting requirements provided below will become non-discretionary.

The Action considered in this BO/CO includes a conservation measure to capture and relocate mussels from a portion of the Action Area to an upstream safer location (see Section 2.3). Through this statement, the Service authorizes this conservation measure as an exception to the prohibitions against trapping, capturing, or collecting listed species. This conservation measure is identified as a Reasonable and Prudent Measure below, and we provide Terms and Conditions for its implementation.

For the exemption in ESA §7(o)(2) to apply to the Action considered in this BO/CO, the USACE must undertake the non-discretionary measures described in this ITS, and these measures must become binding conditions of any permit, contract, or grant issued for implementing the Action. The USACE has a continuing duty to regulate the activity covered by this ITS. The protective coverage of §7(o)(2) may lapse if the USACE fails to:

- assume and implement the terms and conditions; or

- require a permittee, contractor, or grantee to adhere to the terms and conditions of the ITS through enforceable terms that are added to the permit, contract, or grant document.

In order to monitor the impact of incidental take, the USACE must report the progress of the Action and its impact on the species to the Service as specified in this ITS.

8.1. Amount or Extent of Take

This section specifies the amount or extent of take of listed/proposed listed wildlife species that the Action is reasonably certain to cause, which we estimated in the “Effects of the Action” section(s) of this BO/CO. We reference, but do not repeat, these analyses here.

8.1.1. YL

The Service anticipates that the Action is reasonably certain to cause incidental take of individual YL consistent with the definition of harass resulting from capture and relocation (see Section 2.3 and 4.3.2). The Service anticipates that the Action is reasonably certain to cause incidental take of individual YL consistent with the definition of harm resulting from the removal of the existing bridge and construction of the new culvert (see Section 4.3.1). It is estimated that up to 17 adult YL could incur incidental take.

8.1.2. TRSM

The Service anticipates that the Action is reasonably certain to cause incidental take of individual TRSM consistent with the definition of harm or harass resulting from the removal of the existing bridge and construction of the new culvert (see Section 5.3.1) or from capture and relocation (see Section 2.3 and 5.3.2). It is estimated that up to one adult TRSM could incur incidental take.

8.1.3. AP

The Service anticipates that the Action is reasonably certain to cause incidental take of individual AP consistent with the definition of harm or harass resulting from the removal of the existing bridge and construction of the new culvert (see Section 6.3.1) or from capture and relocation (see Section 2.3 and 6.3.2). It is estimated that up to one adult AP could incur incidental take.

8.2. Reasonable and Prudent Measures

The Service believes the following reasonable and prudent measures (RPMs) are necessary or appropriate to minimize the impact of incidental take caused by the Action on YL, TRSM, and AP.

RPM 1. Mussel Relocation. Relocate YL, TRSM, and AP from the portion of the Action Area most likely to be adversely affected.

8.3. Terms and Conditions

In order for the exemption from the take prohibitions of §9(a)(1) and of regulations issued under §4(d) of the ESA to apply to the Action, the USACE must comply with the terms and conditions (T&Cs) of this statement, provided below, which carry out the RPMs described in the previous section. These T&Cs are mandatory. As necessary and appropriate to fulfill this responsibility, the USACE must require any permittee, contractor, or grantee to implement these T&Cs through enforceable terms that are added to the permit, contract, or grant document.

T&C 1. Relocation Schedule. The mussel relocation must occur within three weeks prior to start of in-channel work.

T&C 2. Relocation Extent. As per the Mussel Relocation Plan (see Appendix D of the Biological Assessment, attached), mussels will be relocated from a 160 meter section of Fishing Creek (from 130 meters downstream of Bridge No. 135 to 30 meters upstream of the bridge). Relocated mussels will be moved to suitable habitat approximately 350 meters upstream of Bridge No. 135 as per the Mussel Relocation Plan.

T&C 3. Take TRSM into Captivity. Any TRSM observed during the mussel relocation will be transferred to the North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission to be utilized as brood stock for future propagation/augmentation/reintroduction purposes. Agency contacts are Todd Ewing and Michael Fisk. All TRSM will ultimately be returned to the capture location after a successful reproductive event.

8.4. Monitoring and Reporting Requirements

In order to monitor the impacts of incidental take, the USACE or NCDOT must report the progress of the Action and its impact on the species to the Service as specified in the incidental take statement (50 CFR §402.14(i)(3)). This section provides the specific instructions for such monitoring and reporting (M&R). As necessary and appropriate to fulfill this responsibility, the USACE must require any permittee, contractor, or grantee to accomplish the monitoring and reporting through enforceable terms that are added to the permit, contract, or grant document. Such enforceable terms must include a requirement to immediately notify the USACE and the Service if the amount or extent of incidental take specified in this ITS is exceeded during Action implementation.

M&R 1. Erosion Control Measures Failure. In the event that visible sediment loss from the project is observed at the bridge site, a review of turbidity levels will be made upstream and downstream 400 meters (0.25 mile) to determine if sedimentation effects are occurring beyond the Action Area. If visual observation of turbidity levels downstream appear to be elevated beyond upstream observations, the project inspector will contact the Division Environmental Officer. If determined that project-related sedimentation is occurring beyond 400 meters, the amount or extent of incidental take specified in this ITS has been exceeded and the Service must be contacted immediately

M&R 2. Mussel Relocation Report. A report summarizing the details of the mussel relocation, including species and numbers of individuals moved, will be submitted to the Service. If more than 17 YL, more than one TRSM, or more than one AP are moved, the amount or extent of incidental take specified in this ITS has been exceeded.

9. CONSERVATION RECOMMENDATIONS

§7(a)(1) of the ESA directs Federal agencies to use their authorities to further the purposes of the ESA by conducting conservation programs for the benefit of endangered and threatened species. Conservation recommendations are discretionary activities that an action agency may undertake to avoid or minimize the adverse effects of a proposed action, implement recovery plans, or develop information that is useful for the conservation of listed species. The Service offers the following recommendation that is relevant to the listed species addressed in this BO/CO and that we believe are consistent with the authorities of the USACE.

1. Provide resources for additional mussel survey work within the Upper Tar River Watershed.

10. REINITIATION NOTICE

Formal consultation for the Action considered in this BO is concluded. Reinitiating consultation is required if the USACE retains discretionary involvement or control over the Action (or is authorized by law) when:

- a. the amount or extent of incidental take is exceeded;
- b. new information reveals that the Action may affect listed species or designated critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not considered in this BO;
- c. the Action is modified in a manner that causes effects to listed species or designated critical habitat not considered in this BO; or
- d. a new species is listed or critical habitat designated that the Action may affect.

In instances where the amount or extent of incidental take is exceeded, the USACE is required to immediately request a reinitiation of formal consultation.

Formal conference for the Action considered in this CO is concluded. The USACE may submit a written request to the Service to confirm the CO as a BO issued through formal consultation if the USACE retains discretionary involvement or control over the Action when species addressed in the CO are listed, or when proposed critical habitats addressed in the CO are designated. This request should advise the Service of any new information about the Action or its effects on such species or critical habitats that is relevant to adopting the CO as a BO, including the amount or extent of any taking of species that the Action has caused before the effective date of a listing decision.

The incidental take statement provided for non-listed species in a CO does not become effective until such species are listed and the CO is adopted as a BO. At that time, the Service will review the Action to determine whether modifying the opinion and incidental take statement to reflect new information is appropriate. If the Service finds no significant changes in the Action as

proposed or in the information used during the conference, the Service will confirm the CO as a BO for the Action, which shall conclude formal consultation. Thereafter, the USACE shall request to reinitiate formal consultation under the same four circumstances listed above.

11.LITERATURE CITED

- Eads, C.B., R. Nichols, C.J. Wood, and J.F. Levine. 2008. Captive spawning and host determination of the federally endangered Tar River Spiny mussel (*Elliptio steinstansana*). *Ellipsaria* 10(2):7-8.
- Ellis, M.M. 1936. Erosion silt as a factor in aquatic environments. *Ecology* 17:29-42.
- Fleming, W.J., T.P. Augspurger, and J.M. Alderman. 1995. Freshwater mussel die-off attributed to anticholinesterase poisoning. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry* 14:877-879.
- Hoch, R.A. 2012. Beaver and mill dams alter freshwater mussel habitat, growth, and survival in North Carolina piedmont streams. Master's Thesis, Appalachian State University, Boone, NC. 48 pp.
- Marking, L.L. and T.D. Bills. 1980. Acute effects of silt and sand sedimentation on freshwater mussels. Pages 204-211 in: J.L. Rasmussen, ed. Proceedings of the UMRCC symposium on Upper Mississippi River bivalve mollusks. Upper Mississippi River Conservation Committee, Rock Island, Illinois. 270 pp.
- North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT). 2003. Best management practices for construction and maintenance. Raleigh, NC. 112 pp. + app. Available online at <https://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/Roadway/RoadwayDesignAdministrativeDocuments/Best%20Management%20Practices%20for%20Construction%20and%20Maintenance%20Activities.pdf>. Accessed on July 1, 2019.
- North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT). 2014. Stormwater best management practices toolbox, version 2. Raleigh, NC. Available online at https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/hydro/Stormwater%20Resources/NCDOT_BMP_Toolbox_2014_April.pdf. Accessed on July 1, 2019.
- North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT). 2015. Erosion and Sediment Control Design and Construction Manual. Raleigh, NC. Available online at https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/hydro/HSPDocuments/NCDOT_ESC_Manual_2015.pdf. Accessed on July 1, 2019.
- North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission (NCWRC). 2019. Online portal access to wildlife systems (PAWS). Accessed May 2019.
- Pandolfo, T.J., T.J. Kwak, W.G. Cope, R.J. Heise, R.B. Nichols, and K. Pacifici. 2016. Species traits and catchment-scale habitat factors influence the occurrence of freshwater mussel populations and assemblages. *Freshwater Biology* 61:1671-1684.

- RK&K. 2017a. Freshwater mussel survey report. Replacement of Bridges No. 66 and No. 9 on NC 58 over Shocco Creek. Unpublished report submitted to North Carolina Department of Transportation, Raleigh, NC. 8 pp. + app.
- RK&K. 2017b. Freshwater mussel survey report. Replacement of Bridge No. 135 on SR 1609 over Fishing Creek. Unpublished report submitted to North Carolina Department of Transportation, Raleigh, NC. 8 pp. + app.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2014. Tar River Spiny mussel (*Elliptio steinstansana*). 5-year review: Summary and evaluation. Raleigh, NC. 21 pp.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2017a. Clinch River mussel pulled back from brink of extinction. Available online at <https://www.fws.gov/southeast/news/2017/10/clinch-river-mussel-pulled-back-from-the-brink-of-extinction/>. Accessed on June 11, 2019.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2017b. Species status assessment report for the Atlantic Pigtoe (*Fusconaia masoni*) version 1.2. Atlanta, GA. 181 pp.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2017c. Species status assessment report for the Yellow Lance (*Elliptio lanceolata*) version 1.2. Atlanta, GA. 140 pp.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2017d. Tar River spiny mussel (*Elliptio steinstansana*). Available at https://www.fws.gov/raleigh/species/es_tar_spiny_mussel.html. Accessed June 11, 2019.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2019a. Atlantic Pigtoe *Fusconaia masoni*. Available online at <https://www.fws.gov/southeast/wildlife/mussels/atlantic-pigtoe/>. Accessed on June 11, 2019.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2019b. Tar River spiny mussel *Elliptio steinstansana*. Available online at <https://www.fws.gov/southeast/wildlife/mussels/tar-river-spiny-mussel/>. Accessed on June 11, 2019.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2019c. Yellow Lance *Elliptio lanceolata*. Available online at <https://www.fws.gov/southeast/wildlife/mussels/yellow-lance/>. Accessed on June 11, 2019.
- Wang, N., C.D. Ivey, C.G. Ingersoll, W.G. Brumbaugh, D. Alvarez, E.J. Hammer, C.R. Bauer, T. Augspurger, S. Raimondo, and M.C. Barnhart. 2017. Acute sensitivity of a broad range of freshwater mussels to chemicals with different modes of toxic action. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry* 36(3):786-796.
- Watters, T. 2001. Freshwater mussels and water quality: A review of the effects of hydrologic and instream habitat alterations. Pages 261-274 in: *Proceedings of the First Freshwater Mollusk Conservation Society Symposium, 1999*. Ohio Biological Survey, Columbus, Ohio.

Appendix D

Mussel Relocation Plan for the Replacement of Bridge No. 135 in Warren County

Due to the presence of the federally listed Yellow Lance (*Elliptio lanceolata*) in the vicinity of Bridge No. 135 on SR 1609 (Powells Mill Road) in Warren County, relocation of the listed species is warranted. A mussel survey on August 23, 2017, documented seven Yellow Lance individuals within 400 meters downstream of the SR 1609 crossing.

As discussed in the Biological Assessment (BA) for the replacement of Bridge No. 135, completion of the project is likely to have a temporary adverse effect on Yellow Lance and other mussel species that may be present. The primary source of this impact is a potential release or increase of sediment due to project construction. The conservation measures outlined in the project BA will greatly reduce the potential for, as well as the potential amount of sediment entering Fishing Creek due to project construction. The small amount of sediment potentially entering the stream, combined with the physical characteristics of the stream, suggest downstream sediment transport from the project area will be limited.

The segment of Fishing Creek to be directly affected by construction occurs within a moderately deep run with generally slow water flow velocities. It is likely that much of any sediment escaping the construction site will not be transported past this initial run. A series of subsequent deep runs/pools downstream of the bridge location are each potential deposition areas of any sediment entering the stream during project construction. Due to these depositional areas, it is unlikely that sediment will be transported a long distance below the active construction zone. Considering the potential sediment transport distances, mussels will be moved from a stream segment extending approximately 30 meters above the current bridge (to the area of the old mill dam), downstream approximately 130 meters from the bridge for a total of 160 meters. Throughout the remainder of this relocation plan, this 160-meter section will be referred to as the salvage area.

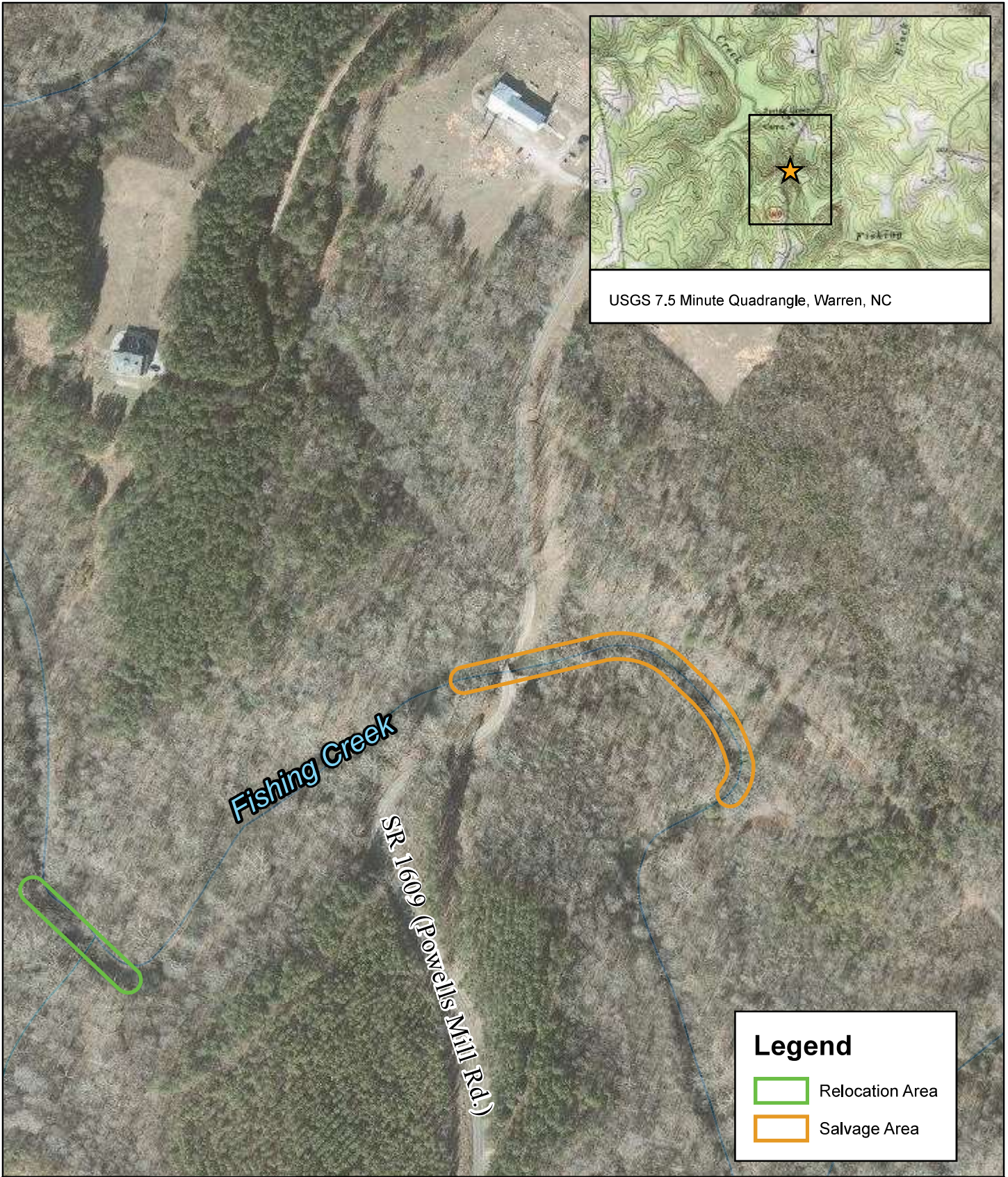
Mussel detection within the salvage area will be via what is deemed the most appropriate survey technique based on stream conditions at the time of the effort and may include using view buckets (bathyscopes), snorkeling, tactile, or SCUBA. Instream habitat within the salvage area is variable. One survey pass will be completed over the entire salvage area. For those portions of the salvage area within higher quality mussel habitat or where federally listed or proposed listed mussels are found, two survey passes will be completed.

All native freshwater mussels will be removed from the salvage area. All Yellow Lance individuals will be measured and tagged and if Tar River Spinymussel (*Parvaspina steinstansana*) individuals are collected, they too will be measured and tagged. Due to the species being proposed to be listed as a protected species under the Endangered Species Act, any Atlantic Pigtoe (*Fusconaia masoni*) individuals collected will also be measured and tagged.

Individuals of all other mussel species will only be enumerated and moved. Once measured and tagged, any/all Yellow Lance, Tar River Spiny mussel and Atlantic Pigtoe individuals (along with all other native mussels) will be placed in coolers and covered with wet towels to prevent desiccation. As soon as practical, the mussels will be carried upstream to the relocation area and placed in the substrate.

The proposed relocation area is located approximately 350 meters above the SR 1609 road crossing in a reach of Fishing Creek containing a run-riffle-pool sequence to be hereafter referred to as the relocation area. The relocation area extends for approximately 100 meters of stream and has physical characteristics similar to those in areas of Fishing Creek where Yellow Lance have been recently documented. The relocation area limits will be recorded using sub-meter GPS technology.



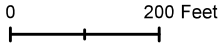
Post relocation monitoring of the mussels will not be conducted due to the possibility of additional stress to the relocated individuals. A report summarizing the details of the mussel relocation, including species and numbers of individuals collected, will be prepared and submitted to NCDOT. Any deviation from this relocation plan must be agreed to by USFWS.



USGS 7.5 Minute Quadrangle, Warren, NC

Legend

- Relocation Area
- Salvage Area

Prepared By: 	Prepared For: 	<p>Mussel Relocation</p> <p>BRIDGE # 135 on SR 1609 OVER FISHING CREEK 17BP.5.R.88</p> <p>WARREN COUNTY</p>	Date: April 2019	Figure D1
			Scale: 0 — 200 Feet 	
Job No.: 17BP.5.R.88				
Drawn by: GSM Checked by: KNM				

Addendum to Biological Opinion

Replacement of Bridge No. 135 on SR 1609 over Fishing Creek, Warren County, North Carolina

FWS Log #: 04EN2000-2017-F-1193-R001



Prepared by:

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Raleigh Field Office
P.O. Box 33726
Raleigh, NC 27636-3726



Digitally signed by PETER BENJAMIN
Date: 2021.11.05 14:46:17 -04'00'

November 5, 2021

Pete Benjamin, Field Supervisor

Date

CONSULTATION HISTORY

This section lists key events and correspondence during the course of this consultation. A complete administrative record of this consultation is available from the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's (Service) Raleigh Field Office.

2019-07-17 – The Service issued *Biological Opinion: Replacement of Bridge No. 135 on SR 1609 over Fishing Creek, Warren County, North Carolina*.

2020-02-06 – The Service proposed critical habitat for the Yellow Lance.

2020-05-26 – The Service received a draft addendum to the Biological Assessment (BA).

2020-06-02 – The Service provided comments on a draft addendum to the BA to the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT).

2021-04-08 – The Service issued a final rule designating critical habitat for the Yellow Lance.

2021-06-09 – The Service issued a final rule listing the Neuse River Waterdog as a threatened species with designated critical habitat.

2021-08-30 – The Service received the final addendum to the BA and a letter from the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) requesting reinitiation of formal Section 7 consultation.

2021-10-14 – The Service provided the NCDOT and USACE with a draft Addendum to Biological Opinion.

ADDENDUM TO BIOLOGICAL OPINION

1. INTRODUCTION

On July 17, 2019 the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (Service) issued a Biological Opinion (BO) for the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) proposed replacement of Bridge No. 135 on SR 1609 over Fishing Creek in Warren County, North Carolina with a bottomless concrete culvert. Although that BO remains in effect, the Service has subsequently designated critical habitat for the Yellow Lance and listed the Neuse River Waterdog as a threatened species with designated critical habitat. This Addendum is intended to be appended to the existing BO.

2. YELLOW LANCE CRITICAL HABITAT

2.1. Status of Yellow Lance Critical Habitat

This section summarizes best available data about the current condition of all units of critical habitat for Yellow Lance (YL, *Elliptio lanceolata*) that are relevant to formulating an opinion about the Action. The Service published its rule to designate critical habitat for YL on April 8, 2021 (86 FR 18189-18215).

2.1.1. Description of YL Critical Habitat

Critical habitat for YL is comprised of approximately 319 river miles in 11 units. All of the units are currently occupied by the species and contain all of the physical and biological features (PBFs) essential to the conservation of the species. See 86 FR 18195-18197 for more detailed information on individual units. The critical habitat provides the following PBFs essential to the conservation of the YL (86 FR 18193).

1. Suitable substrates and connected instream habitats, characterized by geomorphically stable stream channels and banks (*i.e.*, channels that maintain lateral dimensions, longitudinal profiles, and sinuosity patterns over time without an aggrading or degrading bed elevation) with habitats that support a diversity of freshwater mussel and native fish (such as stable riffle-run-pool habitats that provide flow refuges consisting of silt-free gravel and coarse sand substrates).
2. Adequate flows, or a hydrologic flow regime (which includes the severity, frequency, duration, and seasonality of discharge over time), necessary to maintain benthic habitats where the species is found and to maintain connectivity of streams with the floodplain, allowing the exchange of nutrients and sediment for maintenance of the mussel's and fish hosts' habitat, food availability, spawning habitat for native fishes, and the ability for newly transformed juveniles to settle and become established in their habitats.
3. Water and sediment quality (including, but not limited to, conductivity, hardness, turbidity, temperature, pH, ammonia, heavy metals, and chemical constituents) necessary to sustain natural physiological processes for normal behavior, growth, and viability of all life stages.

4. The presence and abundance of fish hosts necessary for recruitment of the YL.

2.1.2. Conservation Value of YL Critical Habitat

The current distribution of the YL is reduced from its historical distribution. We anticipate that recovery will require continued protection of existing populations and habitat, as well as ensure there are adequate numbers of mussels in stable populations and that these populations occur over a wide geographic area. This strategy will help to ensure that catastrophic events, such as floods, which can cause excessive sedimentation, nutrients, and debris to disrupt stream ecology, cannot simultaneously affect all known populations. Range-wide recovery considerations, such as maintaining existing genetic diversity and striving for representation of all major portions of the species' current range, were considered in formulating this critical habitat. All of the units are currently occupied by the species and contain all of the PBFs essential to the conservation of the species (86 FR 18189-18215).

2.1.3. Conservation Needs for YL Critical Habitat

The features essential to YL conservation may require special management considerations or protections to reduce the following threats: (1) reduction in water quality, quantity, and resulting sedimentation as a result of urbanization of the landscape, including land conversion for urban and commercial use, infrastructure (roads, bridges, utilities), and urban water uses (water supply reservoirs, wastewater treatment, etc.); (2) nutrient pollution from agricultural activities that impact water quantity and quality; (3) significant alteration of water quality; (4) sedimentation from incompatible forest management or clearcuts in riparian areas; (5) culvert and pipe installations that create barriers to instream movement; (6) impacts from invasive species; (7) changes and shifts in seasonal precipitation patterns as a result of climate change; and (8) other watershed and floodplain disturbances that release sediments or nutrients into the water. Management activities that could ameliorate these threats include: use of best management practices designed to reduce sedimentation, erosion, and bankside destruction; protection of riparian corridors and leaving sufficient canopy cover along banks; moderation of surface and ground water withdrawals to maintain natural flow regimes; increased use of stormwater management and reduction of stormwater flows into the systems; and reduction of other watershed and floodplain disturbances that release sediments, pollutants, or nutrients into the water (86 FR 18189-18215).

2.2. Environmental Baseline for YL Critical Habitat

This section is an analysis of the effects of past and ongoing human and natural factors leading to the current status of critical habitat for YL within the Action Area. The environmental baseline is a "snapshot" of the condition of the PBFs that are essential to the conservation of the species within critical habitat of the Action Area at the time of the consultation, and does not include the effects of the Action under review.

2.2.1. Action Area Conservation Value of YL Critical Habitat

The Action Area occurs within Critical Habit Unit 9 (TR3 – Fishing Creek Sub-basin). The Action Area constitutes 0.31 river mile (0.8%) of the total 37 river miles of Unit 9, and approximately 0.1% of the total 319 river miles of critical habitat for the YL. Unit 9 currently supports all breeding, feeding, and sheltering needs of the species.

2.2.2. Action Area Conservation Needs for YL Critical Habitat

Special management considerations or protection may be required within this unit to address a variety of threats. Excessive amounts of nitrogen and phosphorus run off the land, or are discharged into the waters, causing excessive growth of vegetation and leading to extremely low levels of dissolved oxygen. Special management focused on agricultural BMPs, maintenance of forested buffers, and connection of protected riparian corridors will benefit habitat for the species in this unit (86 FR 18197).

2.3. Effects of the Action on YL Critical Habitat

The effects of the Action on YL critical habitat are nearly identical to those on Atlantic Pigtoe proposed critical habitat addressed in Section 7.3 of the original BO (dated July 17, 2019).

2.4. Cumulative Effects on YL Critical Habitat

We are not aware of any non-Federal actions in the Action Area that may affect critical habitat. Therefore, cumulative effects are not relevant to formulating our opinion for the Action.

2.5. Conclusion for YL Critical Habitat

In this section, we summarize and interpret the findings of the previous sections for YL critical habitat (status, baseline, effects, and cumulative effects) relative to the purpose of a BO under §7(a)(2) of the ESA, which is to determine whether a Federal action is likely to:

- a) jeopardize the continued existence of species listed as endangered or threatened; or
- b) result in the destruction or adverse modification of designated critical habitat.

“Destruction or adverse modification” means a direct or indirect alteration that appreciably diminishes the value of designated critical habitat for the conservation of a listed species. Such alterations may include, but are not limited to, those that alter the PBFs essential to the conservation of a species or that preclude or significantly delay development of such features (50 CFR §402.02).

Of the total 319 river miles of critical habitat for the YL, approximately 0.31 mile (0.1%) occur within the Action Area. Some adverse effects to critical habitat may occur from movement of sediment within the stream or from input of sediment into the stream, thus potentially affecting PBF numbers 1, 3, and 4. However, implementation of conservation measures as part of the Action will greatly minimize these effects. All such effects are expected to be minor and temporary, and thus will not appreciably diminish the value of the PBFs.

After reviewing the current status of the critical habitat, the environmental baseline for the Action Area, the effects of the Action, and the cumulative effects, it is the Service's biological opinion that the Action is not likely to destroy or adversely modify critical habitat for YL.

3. NEUSE RIVER WATERDOG

3.1. Status of Neuse River Waterdog

This section summarizes best available data about the biology and condition of the Neuse River Waterdog (NRWD, *Necturus lewisi*) throughout its range that are relevant to formulating a biological opinion about the Action. The Service published its final rule to list the NRWD as threatened with designated critical habitat on June 9, 2021 (86 FR 30688–30751).

3.1.1. Species Description

The NRWD is a fairly large salamander with adults typically growing to a length of about 11 inches. It has a reddish brown body with an irregular pattern of large blue or black spots. The NRWD has a laterally compressed tail the same coloration as the body; however, the belly is typically a dull brown or gray color with spots similar to those seen elsewhere on the body. Like other members of the genus *Necturus*, it has four toes on its front and back feet as well as a set of large feathery gills. As juveniles, NRWDs are spotted like the adults but the basic body color is gray. Young individuals may also have a lighter stripe along the back with darker colored sides and black flecking. Larvae for this species are entirely brown except for two white spots, one behind each eye (NCPARC 2021).

3.1.2. Life History

NRWDs need clean, flowing water characterized by high dissolved oxygen concentrations (Brimley 1924, Ashton 1985, Braswell and Ashton 1985). The preferred habitats vary with the season, temperature, dissolved oxygen content, flow rate and precipitation. The species is much more active in colder seasons and when water is near-freezing. There is no evidence of migrational movement for the species. Home ranges of NRWDs often overlap, regardless of the sex or season. Males have a larger average home range of ~73 m² compared to ~17 m² for females. NRWDs defend a territory, usually referred to as a home retreat area in a burrow or under a rock (Ashton 1985).

Longevity of NRWDs is not known, however its close relative *N. maculosus* may live for >30 years (McDaniel et al. 2009). NRWDs reach sexual maturity at around 5.5-6.5 years, or at a length of ~4 inches SVL (snout-vent length, Fedak 1971). They breed once per year, with mating occurring in the fall/winter and spawning in the spring (Pudney et al. 1985). Females will lay a clutch of ~25-90 eggs in a rudimentary nest under large rocks in moderate currents (Cooper and Ashton 1985).

Both adults and larvae are opportunistic feeders (Braswell and Ashton 1985), commonly lying in wait for a small organism to swim or float by (Ashton 1985). However, NRWDs also use other

feeding techniques when they are active at night, often leaving their retreats to actively search for food. They will eat most animals that are small enough for them to catch and swallow, and they have been known to eat snails, worms, spiders, and small fish among other prey (NCPARC 2021).

3.1.3. Numbers, Reproduction, and Distribution

The NRWD is endemic to the Tar, Neuse, and Trent River basins. Although geographically part of the larger Neuse River basin, the habitats in the Trent River system are isolated from the Neuse River and its tributaries because of salt water intrusion. Therefore, the Trent River system is considered as a separate population. These three populations are divided into nine Management Units (MUs). The NRWD is extant in all MUs; however, within those MUs it is presumed extirpated from 35% (14/40) of the historically occupied HUC10 watersheds. The species occupies streams in two physiographic regions – Piedmont and Coastal Plain. However, it has lost physiographic representation of an estimated 43% in Piedmont watersheds and an estimated 13% loss in Coastal Plain watersheds. Additional detailed information on the species' numbers, reproduction, and distribution can be found in Section 3.2 (pages 14-17) of the Species Status Assessment (USFWS 2021).

3.1.4. Conservation Needs and Threats

The NRWD faces a variety of risks from declines in water quality, loss of stream flow, riparian and instream fragmentation, and deterioration of instream habitats. These risks are expected to be exacerbated by urbanization and climate change. Detailed information on the species' conservation needs and threats can be found in Section 3.3 (pages 18-26) and Chapter 4 (pages 33-54) of the Species Status Assessment (USFWS 2021).

3.2. Environmental Baseline for NRWD

This section describes the best available data about the condition of the NRWD in the Action Area without the consequences caused by the proposed Action.

3.2.1. Action Area Numbers, Reproduction, and Distribution of NRWD

The Action Area occurs within the Fishing Creek Subbasin Management Unit of the Tar River Basin population of NRWD (USFWS 2021). The North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission (NCWRC) captured a single NRWD within the Action Area in one trap-night in 2015 (J. Humphries, NCWRC, personal communication). Another trapping survey in January 2020 by a graduate student (E. Teitsworth, North Carolina State University, personal communication) did not result in any NRWD captures after four trap-nights. Using a detection probability of 0.33 per trap-night developed during ongoing research (Teitsworth 2020), the two trapping surveys suggest that 1-2 NRWDs occur within the action area.

3.2.2. Action Area Conservation Needs of and Threats to NRWD

The Action Area contains approximately 0.31 river mile of good quality habitat for the NRWD; however, some bank erosion/undercutting is present. The land use around and upstream of the

Action Area is primarily forested, with ample forest buffers to protect the stream. Therefore, the Action Area is not currently threatened with water quality issues from upstream. The most immediate threat to NRWD within the Action Area may be from beaver activity, which could render the habitat less suitable to the species (Hoch 2012).

3.3. Effects of the Action on NRWD

In a BO for a listed species, the effects of the proposed action are all reasonably certain consequences to the species caused by the Action, including the consequences of other activities caused by the Action. Activities caused by the Action would not occur but for the Action. Consequences to species may occur later in time and may occur outside the action area. Our analyses are organized according to the description of the Action in Section 2 of the July 17, 2019 BO.

Due to the top-down demolition methodology, the removal of the existing bridge deck is not likely to affect NRWD. The primary direct instream disturbance will result from the placement of impervious dikes to dewater the work area to remove the existing masonry abutments, to install the new structure footings, and to place rip rap on the stream banks. Although a low probability, it is possible that NRWD could be crushed during these activities, especially from placement of rip rap since NRWDs utilize burrows in banks (Ashton 1985).

When the impervious dikes are removed after construction of the new culvert, some amount of sediment will be transported downstream, potentially harming NRWD by interfering with respiration, feeding, or spawning and otherwise degrading habitat for NRWD. Sedimentation and turbidity are detrimental to aquatic organisms (Ellis 1936, Hollis et al. 1964, Richter et al. 1997, Wood and Armitage 1997, Henley et al. 2000). However, the transport of sediment will be limited by the presence of a deep pool located at the bridge, thus reducing downstream effects.

Some minor earthwork will occur along the approach roads to the bridge, thus creating the potential for disturbed areas to erode sediment into the stream. However, to avoid or minimize the potential sedimentation effects, NCDOT has developed stringent erosion control measures (see Section 2.3 of original 2019 BO) which greatly minimize sediment entering the stream. Assuming the proper installation and maintenance of these erosion control measures and full implementation of all conservation measures, the probability of effects from sedimentation leading to mortality is low.

Under normal circumstances, a downstream distance of 400 meters (0.25 mile) is generally considered to be the maximum extent of detectable sedimentation effects in Piedmont streams for a small bridge or culvert replacement project. Based on survey data and an estimated detection probability (Teitsworth 2020), an estimated 1-2 NRWDs could be adversely affected within this 400 meter stretch of stream. Most effects would likely be temporary in nature. Given the cryptic nature of NRWD, any harmful effects would be difficult to detect and measure.

Although NCDOT employs BMPs to avoid contaminants from entering streams, there is always the chance of an accidental spill of petrochemicals, uncured concrete, or other toxic substances

into a stream. Although such events are rare, they can cause significant harm to mussels (USFWS 2017).

One beneficial effect of the Action is that the hydraulic opening under the existing bridge will be increased from ~83 square feet to ~191 square feet with the new culvert, thus allowing the stream channel to stabilize and reach a more natural equilibrium. In turn, this will likely reduce the potential for long-term erosion and sedimentation effects on downstream NRWD habitat.

3.4. Cumulative Effects on NRWD

Cumulative effects are “those effects of future state or private activities, not involving Federal activities, that are reasonably certain to occur within the action area of the Federal action subject to consultation” (50 CFR §402.02). In their request for consultation, the USACE did not describe, and the Service is not aware of, any future non-Federal activities that are reasonably certain to occur within the Action Area. Therefore, we anticipate no cumulative effects that we must consider in formulating our opinion for the Action.

3.5. Conclusion for NRWD

In this section, we summarize and interpret the findings of the previous sections (status, baseline, effects, and cumulative effects) relative to the purpose of the BO for the NRWD, which is to determine whether the Action is likely to jeopardize its continued existence.

The NRWD is endemic to the Tar, Neuse, and Trent River basins in North Carolina. The species faces a variety of risks from declines in water quality, loss of stream flow, riparian and instream fragmentation, and deterioration of instream habitats. The Action Area contains approximately 0.31 river mile of good quality habitat for the NRWD, and an estimated 1-2 NRWDs may occur within it. NRWDs could be killed by crushing during placement of rip rap (low probability) or experience sub-lethal adverse effects from sedimentation effects (more likely). However, NCDOT will implement stringent erosion control BMPs to minimize sedimentation effects.

After reviewing the status of the species, the environmental baseline for the Action Area, the effects of the Action and the cumulative effects, it is the Service’s opinion that the Action is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of the NRWD.

4. CRITICAL HABITAT FOR NRWD

4.1. Status of NRWD Critical Habitat

This section summarizes best available data about the condition of all units of critical habitat for NRWD that are relevant to formulating a biological opinion about the Action. The Service published its final rule to designate critical habitat for the NRWD on June 9, 2021 (86 FR 30688–30751).

4.1.1. Critical Habitat Description

Critical habitat for NRWD is comprised of approximately 779 river miles in the following 18 separate units all located in North Carolina.

- Unit 1: TAR 1 – Upper Tar River. Unit 1 consists of 12.3 river miles of the Tar River. The riparian land adjacent to this unit is primarily privately owned (80%) with several conservation parcels or easements (20%).
- Unit 2: TAR 2 – Upper Fishing Creek. Unit 2 consists of 10.5 river miles of Upper Fishing Creek. The riparian land adjacent to the unit is primarily privately owned (94%) with several conservation parcels or easements (6%).
- Unit 3: TAR 3 – Bens Creek. Unit 3 consists of 2.0 river miles of Bens Creek. The riparian land adjacent to the unit is entirely privately owned.
- Unit 4: TAR 4a – Fishing Creek Sub-basin. Unit 4 consists of 82.8 river miles of lower Little Fishing Creek and mainstem Fishing Creek. The riparian land adjacent to the unit includes private land (86%), several conservation parcels (6%), and state game lands (8%).
- Unit 5: TAR 4b – Sandy/Swift Creek. Unit 5 consists of a 72.5 river mile segment of Sandy Creek and Red Bud Creek. The riparian land adjacent to this unit includes private lands (97%), conservation parcels (1%), and state game lands (2%).
- Unit 6: TAR 4c – Middle Tar River Sub-basin. Unit 6 consists of a 111 river mile segment of the Middle Tar River and Stony Creek. The riparian land adjacent to this unit is nearly all private lands (99%) with less than (1%) conservation parcels, local parks, and a research station.
- Unit 7: TAR 4d – Lower Tar River Sub-basin. Unit 7 consists of 59.9 river miles in the Lower Tar River Sub-basin including portions of Town Creek, Otter Creek, and Tyson Creek. The riparian land adjacent to this unit consists of private land (97%), conservation parcels (2.5%), and state game lands (0.5%).
- Unit 8: NR 1 – Eno River. Unit 8 consists of 43.9 river miles of the Eno River. The riparian land adjacent to this unit includes private lands (61%), state park lands (25%), local government conservation parcels (12%), and state game lands (2%).
- Unit 9: NR 2 – Flat River. Unit 9 is a 15.2 river mile segment of the Flat River. The riparian land adjacent to this unit consists of some private land (49%) and extensive conservation parcels (51%), including demonstration forest, recreation areas, and state game lands.
- Unit 10: NR 3 – Middle Creek. Unit 10 is a 30.8 river mile segment of Middle Creek. The riparian land adjacent to this unit is predominantly privately owned (91%) with a few conservation parcels (9%).
- Unit 11: NR 4 – Swift Creek (Middle Neuse). Unit 11 is a 24.0 river mile segment of Swift Creek. The riparian land adjacent to this unit is entirely privately owned.
- Unit 12: NR 5a – Little River. Unit 12 is a 90.8 river mile segment of the Little River and Buffalo Creek. The riparian land adjacent to this unit is predominantly privately owned (90%) with some local municipal conservation parcels (10%).
- Unit 13: NR 5b – Mill Creek. Unit 13 is a 20.8 river mile segment of Mill Creek. The riparian land adjacent to this unit is predominantly privately owned (95%) with some conservation parcels (5%).

- Unit 14: NR 5c – Middle Neuse River. Unit 14 is a 43.2 river mile segment of the Middle Neuse River. The riparian land adjacent to this unit includes privately owned land (92%), conservation parcels (1%), and state park land (7%).
- Unit 15: NR 6 – Contentnea Creek/Lower Neuse River Sub-basin. Unit 15 is a 114.8 river mile reach including portions of Contentnea Creek, Nahunta Swamp, and Neuse River. The riparian land adjacent to this unit is nearly all privately-owned land (99%) with a small portion of conservation parcels (1%).
- Unit 16: NR 7 – Swift Creek (Lower Neuse). Unit 16 is a 10.3 river mile reach of Swift Creek. The riparian land adjacent to this unit is nearly all privately owned (99%) with some conservation parcels (1%).
- Unit 17: TR 1 – Trent River. Unit 17 is a 32.5 river mile reach of Beaver Creek and Trent River. The riparian land adjacent to this unit is entirely privately owned.
- Unit 18: TR 2 – Tuckahoe Swamp. Unit 18 is a 2.0 river mile reach of Tuckahoe Swamp. The riparian land adjacent to this unit is entirely privately owned.

Within the areas of critical habitat, the following four physical and biological features (PBFs) were determined to be essential to the conservation of the NRWD:

1. Suitable substrates and connected instream habitats, characterized by geomorphically stable stream channels and banks (i.e., channels that maintain lateral dimensions, longitudinal profiles, and sinuosity patterns over time without an aggrading or degrading bed elevation) with habitats that support a diversity of native aquatic fauna (such as stable riffle-run-pool habitats that provide flow refuges consisting of silt-free gravel, small cobble, coarse sand, and leaf litter substrates) as well as abundant cover and burrows used for nesting.
2. Adequate flows, or a hydrologic flow regime (which includes the severity, frequency, duration, and seasonality of discharge over time), necessary to maintain instream habitats where the species is found and to maintain connectivity of streams with the floodplain, allowing the exchange of nutrients and sediment for maintenance of the waterdog's habitat, food availability, and ample oxygenated flow for spawning and nesting habitat.
3. Water quality (including, but not limited to, conductivity, hardness, turbidity, temperature, pH, ammonia, heavy metals, and chemical constituents) necessary to sustain natural physiological processes for normal behavior, growth, and viability of all life stages.
4. Invertebrate and fish prey items, which are typically hellgrammites, crayfish, mayflies, earthworms, snails, beetles, centipedes, slugs, and small fish.

4.1.2. Conservation Value

The current distribution of the NRWD is much reduced from its historical distribution. We anticipate that recovery will require continued protection of existing populations and habitat, as well as ensure there are adequate numbers in stable populations and that these populations occur over a wide geographic area. This strategy will help to ensure that catastrophic events, such as

the effects of hurricanes (e.g. flooding that causes excessive sedimentation, nutrients, and debris to disrupt stream ecology), cannot simultaneously affect all known populations. All of the units are currently occupied by the species and contain some or all of the PBFs essential to the conservation of the species.

4.1.3. Conservation Needs and Threats

The features essential to the conservation of the NRWD may require special management considerations or protections to reduce the following threats: (1) urbanization of the landscape, including land conversion for urban and commercial use, infrastructure (roads, bridges, utilities), and urban water uses (water supply reservoirs, wastewater treatment, etc.); (2) nutrient pollution from agricultural activities that impact water quantity and quality; (3) significant alteration of water quality; (4) improper forest management or silviculture activities that remove large areas of forested wetlands and riparian systems; (5) dams, culverts, and utility pipe installation that creates barriers to movement; (6) impacts from invasive species; (7) changes and shifts in seasonal precipitation patterns as a result of climate change; and (8) other watershed and floodplain disturbances that release sediments or nutrients into the water. Management activities that could ameliorate these threats include: use of BMPs designed to reduce sedimentation, erosion, and bank side destruction; protection of riparian corridors and leaving sufficient canopy cover along banks; moderation of surface and ground water withdrawals to maintain natural flow regimes; increased use of stormwater management and reduction of stormwater flows into the systems; and reduction of other watershed and floodplain disturbances that release sediments, pollutants, or nutrients into the water.

4.2. Environmental Baseline for NRWD Critical Habitat

This section describes the best available data about the condition of critical habitat for the NRWD in the Action Area without the consequences caused by the proposed Action.

4.2.1. Action Area Conservation Value of NRWD Critical Habitat

The Action Area occurs within Critical Habit Unit 2: TAR 2 – Upper Fishing Creek. The Action Area constitutes 0.31 mile (3.0%) of the total 10.5 river miles of Unit 2, and approximately 0.04% of the total 779 river miles of critical habitat for the NRWD. Unit 2 currently supports all breeding, feeding, and sheltering needs of the species.

4.2.2. Action Area Conservation Needs for NRWD Critical Habitat

Special management considerations or protection may be required within this unit to address a variety of threats. Excessive amounts of nitrogen and phosphorus run off the land or are discharged into the waters, causing excessive growth of microscopic or macroscopic vegetation and leading to extremely low levels of dissolved oxygen. Special management focused on agricultural and forestry BMPs, maintenance of forested buffers, and connection of protected riparian corridors will benefit habitat for the species in this unit (86 FR 30719).

4.3. Effects of the Action on NRWD Critical Habitat

In a BO for critical habitat, the effects of the proposed action are all reasonably certain consequences to its PBFs caused by the action, including the consequences of other activities caused by the action. Activities caused by the action would not occur but for the action. Consequences to critical habitat features may occur later in time, but are limited to portions of the designation that occur within the Action Area.

A likely effect to NRWD critical habitat is the resuspension of sediment when the impervious dewatering dikes are removed once construction is completed. Resuspended sediment is transported downstream where it redeposits on the substrate. Although sediment transport is a normal process within a stream's flow regime (Poff et al. 1997), redeposited sediment could affect, at least temporarily, PBF 1, 3, and 4 (see Section 4.1.1 above). Redeposited sediment can render substrates less suitable as habitat. Resuspended sediment also increases turbidity which generally reduces water quality. Lower water quality and sediment affected substrates can then subsequently reduce the diversity and numbers of aquatic macroinvertebrate prey species. The approach roads to the new culvert will require some earthwork, and the disturbed areas create the potential to erode sediment into the stream and similarly affect PBF 1, 3, and 4. However, NCDOT's use of BMPs (NCDOT 2003, NCDOT 2015) will greatly minimize these potential effects. As such, these effects to the PBFs are expected to be minor and temporary, and thus would not appreciably diminish the value of the PBFs.

The hydraulic opening under the existing bridge is undersized and likely contributes to bank erosion. The new hydraulic opening will be more than doubled in size with the new culvert, thus allowing the stream channel to stabilize and reach a more natural equilibrium. In turn, this will likely reduce the potential for long-term erosion and sedimentation effects downstream, thus providing minor but long-term improvements to PBF 1, 3, and 4.

4.4. Cumulative Effects on NRWD Critical Habitat

Cumulative effects are "those effects of future state or private activities, not involving federal activities, that are reasonably certain to occur within the action area of the federal action subject to consultation" (50 CFR §402.02). In their request for consultation, the USACE did not describe, and the Service is not aware of, any future non-Federal activities that are reasonably certain to occur within the Action Area. Therefore, we anticipate no cumulative effects that we must consider in formulating our opinion for the Action.

4.5. Conclusion for NRWD Critical Habitat

In this section, we summarize and interpret the findings of the previous sections (status, baseline, effects, and cumulative effects) relative to the purpose of the BO for NRWD critical habitat, which is to determine whether the Action is likely to result in its destruction or adverse modification.

The Action Area constitutes 3.0% of the total 10.5 river miles of Unit 2 and approximately 0.04% of the total 779 river miles of critical habitat for the NRWD. The Action will likely affect

PBF 1, 3, and 4 in a small portion of Unit 2 through sedimentation and turbidity. However, the implementation of stringent erosion control measures and BMPs as part of the Action will greatly minimize these effects. All such effects are expected to be minor and temporary, and thus will not appreciably diminish the value of the PBFs.

After reviewing the status of the critical habitat, the environmental baseline for the Action Area, the effects of the Action, and the cumulative effects, it is the Service's biological opinion that the Action is not likely to result in the destruction or adverse modification of critical habitat for the NRWD.

5. INCIDENTAL TAKE STATEMENT

The Service previously provided an Incidental Take Statement (ITS) for the Action in Section 8 of the original July 17, 2019 BO. Although no additional Reasonable and Prudent Measures, Terms and Conditions, or Monitoring and Reporting Requirements are necessary, the ITS is modified to include the following:

5.1. Amount or Extent of Take of NRWD

The Service anticipates that the Action is reasonably certain to cause incidental take of individual NRWDs consistent with the definition of harm resulting from either being crushed during construction or more likely experiencing sub-lethal adverse effects from sedimentation. Based on survey data and an estimated detection probability, incidental take is estimated at 2 NRWDs. However, given the cryptic nature of this species, incidental take will likely not be detectable.

6. REINITIATION NOTICE

Formal consultation for the Action considered in the BO regarding YL critical habitat, NRWD, and NRWD critical habitat is concluded. Reinitiating consultation is required if the USACE retains discretionary involvement or control over the Action (or is authorized by law) when:

- a. the amount or extent of incidental take is exceeded;
- b. new information reveals that the Action may affect listed species or designated critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not considered in the BO;
- c. the Action is modified in a manner that causes effects to listed species or designated critical habitat not considered in the BO; or
- d. a new species is listed or critical habitat designated that the Action may affect.

7. LITERATURE CITED

- Ashton, R.E. 1985. Field and laboratory observations on microhabitat selection, movements and home range of *Necturus lewisi* (Brimley). *Brimleyana* 10:83-106.
- Braswell, A.L. and R.E. Ashton Jr. 1985. Distribution, ecology, and feeding habits of *Necturus lewisi* (Brimley). *Brimleyana* 10:13-35.

- Brimley, C.S. 1924. The water dogs (Necturus) of North Carolina. *Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society* 40(3/4):166-168.
- Cooper, J.E. and R.E. Ashton Jr. 1985. The *Necturus lewisi* study: introduction, selected literature review, and comments on the hydrologic units and their faunas. *Brimleyana* 10:1-12.
- Ellis, M.M. 1936. Erosion silt as a factor in aquatic environments. *Ecology* 17:29-42.
- Fedak, M.A. 1971. A comparative study of the life histories of *Necturus lewisi* Brimley and *Necturus punctatus* Gibbes (Caudata: Proteidae) in North Carolina. Master's Thesis. Duke University, Durham, North Carolina.
- Henley, W.F., M.A. Patterson, R.J. Neves, and A.D. Lemly. 2000. Effects of sedimentation and turbidity on lotic food webs: A concise review for natural resource managers. *Reviews in Fisheries Science* 8(2):125-139.
- Hoch, R.A. 2012. Beaver and mill dams alter freshwater mussel habitat, growth, and survival in North Carolina piedmont streams. Master's Thesis, Appalachian State University, Boone, NC. 48 pp.
- Hollis, E.H., J.G. Boone, C.R. De Rose, and G.J. Murphy. 1964. A literature review of the effects of turbidity and siltation on aquatic life. Department of Chesapeake Bay Affairs, Annapolis, Maryland.
- McDaniel, T.V., P.A. Martin, G.C. Barrett, K. Hughes, A.D. Gendron, L. Shirose, and C.A. Bishop. 2009. Relative abundance, age structure, and body size in mudpuppy populations in southwestern Ontario. *Journal of Great Lakes Research* 35:182-189.
- North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT). 2003. Best management practices for construction and maintenance activities. Raleigh, NC. 112 pp. + app. Available online at <https://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/Roadway/RoadwayDesignAdministrativeDocuments/Best%20Management%20Practices%20for%20Construction%20and%20Maintenance%20Activities.pdf>. Accessed on October 6, 2021.
- North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT). 2015. Erosion and Sediment Control Design and Construction Manual. Raleigh, NC. Available online at https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/hydro/HSPDocuments/NCDOT_ESC_Manual_2015.pdf. Accessed on October 6, 2021.
- North Carolina Partners in Amphibian and Reptile Conservation (NCPARC). 2021. Neuse River Waterdog. Available online at <https://herpsofnc.org/neuse-river-waterdog/>. Accessed on October 6, 2021.

- Poff, N.L., J.D. Allan, M.B. Bain, J.R. Karr, K.L. Prestegard, B.D. Richter, R.E. Sparks, and J.C. Stromberg. 1997. The natural flow regime: a paradigm for river conservation and restoration. *BioScience* 47:769-784.
- Pudney, J., J.A. Canick, and G.V. Callard. 1985. The testis and reproduction in male *Necturus* with emphasis on *N. lewisi* (Brimley). *Brimleyana* 10:53-74.
- Richter, B.D., D.P. Braun, M.A. Mendelson, and L.L. Master. 1997. Threats to imperiled freshwater fauna. *Conservation Biology* 11:1081-1093.
- Teitsworth, E.W, W.J. Humphries, B.W. Taylor, R.E. Emanuel, and K. Pacifici. 2020. Assessing the distribution and population status of Neuse River Waterdog (*Necturus lewisi*). Poster presented at Southeastern Partners in Amphibian and Reptile Conservation 2020 annual conference. Nauvoo, Alabama.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2017. Clinch River mussel pulled back from brink of extinction. Available online at <https://www.fws.gov/southeast/news/2017/10/clinch-river-mussel-pulled-back-from-the-brink-of-extinction/>. Accessed on October 6, 2021.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2021. Species status assessment report for the Neuse River Waterdog (*Necturus lewisi*). Version 1.2. Atlanta, Georgia.
- Wood, P.J. and P.D. Armitage. 1997. Biological effects of fine sediment in the lotic environment. *Environmental Management* 21(2):203-217.

**STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
RALEIGH, NC**

CONTRACT PAYMENT BOND

Date of Payment Bond Execution _____

Name of Principal Contractor _____

Name of Surety: _____

Name of Contracting Body: _____

Amount of Bond: _____

Contract ID No.: DE00335

County Name: WARREN COUNTY

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, That we, the PRINCIPAL CONTRACTOR (hereafter, PRINCIPAL) and SURETY above named, are held and firmly bound unto the above named Contracting Body, hereinafter called the Contracting Body, in the penal sum of the amount stated above for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that whereas the principal entered into a certain contract with the Contracting Body, numbered as shown above and hereto attached:

NOW THEREFORE, if the principal shall promptly make payment to all persons supplying labor and material in the prosecution of the work provided for in said contract, and any and all duly authorized modifications of said contract that may hereafter be made, notice of which modifications to the surety being hereby waived, then this obligation to be void; otherwise to remain in full force and virtue.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the above-bound parties have executed this instrument under their several seals on the date indicated above, the name and corporate seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed and these presents duly signed by its undersigned representative, pursuant to authority of its governing body.

CONTRACT PAYMENT BOND

Affix Seal of Surety Company

Print or type Surety Company Name

By _____
Print, stamp or type name of Attorney-in-Fact

Signature of Attorney-in-Fact

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

Address of Attorney-in-Fact

CONTRACT PAYMENT BOND
CORPORATION

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Full name of Corporation

Address as prequalified

By

Signature of President, Vice President, Assistant Vice President
Select appropriate title

Print or type Signer's name

Affix Corporate Seal

Attest

Signature of Secretary, Assistant Secretary
Select appropriate title

Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PAYMENT BOND

LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Full name of Firm

Address as prequalified

By:

Signature of Member, Manager, Authorized Agent
Select appropriate title

Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PAYMENT BOND

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS UNDER A FIRM NAME

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Individual Name

Trading and doing business as

Full name of Firm

Address as prequalified

Signature of Contractor

Individually

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PAYMENT BOND

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS IN HIS OWN NAME

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Print or type Individual name

Address as prequalified

Signature of Contractor

Individually

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PAYMENT BOND

PARTNERSHIP

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Full name of Partnership

Address as prequalified

By

Signature of Partner

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PAYMENT BOND
JOINT VENTURE (2) or (3)
SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTORS (Principal)

Instructions to Bidders: 2 Joint Ventures, Fill in lines (1), (2) and (3) and execute. 3 Joint Venturers Fill in lines (1), (2), (3), (4) and execute. On Line (1), print or type the name of Joint Venture. On line (2), print or type the name of one of the joint venturers and execute below in the appropriate manner required by Article 102-8 of the *NCDOT Standard Specifications*. On Line (3), print or type the name of second joint venturer and execute below in the appropriate manner required by said article of the Specifications. On Line (4), print or type the name of the third joint venturer, if applicable and execute below in the appropriate manner required by said article of the Specifications. This form of execution must be strictly followed.

Signature of Witness or Attest	By	Signature of Contractor
Print or type Signer's name		Print or type Signer's name

and

Signature of Witness or Attest	By	Signature of Contractor
Print or type Signer's name		Print or type Signer's name

and

Signature of Witness or Attest	By	Signature of Contractor
Print or type Signer's name		Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PAYMENT BOND

Attach certified copy of Power of Attorney to this sheet

**STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
RALEIGH, NC**

CONTRACT PERFORMANCE BOND

Date of Performance Bond Execution: _____

Name of Principal Contractor: _____

Name of Surety: _____

Name of Contracting Body: _____

Amount of Bond: _____

Contract ID No.: DE00335

County Name: WARREN COUNTY

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, That we, the PRINCIPAL CONTRACTOR (hereafter, PRINCIPAL) and SURETY above named, are held and firmly bound unto the above named Contracting Body, hereinafter called the Contracting Body, in the penal sum of the amount stated above for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that whereas the principal entered into a certain contract with the Contracting Body, numbered as shown above and hereto attached:

NOW THEREFORE, if the principal shall well and truly perform and fulfill all the undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions, and agreements of said contract during the original term of said contract and any extensions thereof that may be granted by the Contracting Body, with or without notice to the Surety, and during the life of any guaranty required under the contract, and shall also well and truly perform and fulfill all the undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions, and agreements of any and all duly authorized modifications of said contract that may hereafter be made, notice of which modifications to the surety being hereby waived, then this obligation to be void; otherwise to remain in full force and virtue.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the above-bound parties have executed this instrument under their several seals on the date indicated above, the name and corporate seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed and these presents duly signed by its undersigned representative, pursuant to authority of its governing body.

CONTRACT PERFORMANCE BOND

Affix Seal of Surety Company

Print or type Surety Company Name

By _____
Print, stamp or type name of Attorney-in-Fact

Signature of Attorney-in-Fact

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

Address of Attorney-in-Fact

CONTRACT PERFORMANCE BOND
CORPORATION

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Full name of Corporation

Address as prequalified

By

Signature of President, Vice President, Assistant Vice President
Select appropriate title

Print or type Signer's name

Affix Corporate Seal

Attest

Signature of Secretary, Assistant Secretary
Select appropriate title

Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PERFORMANCE BOND

LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Full name of Firm

Address as prequalified

By:

Signature of Member, Manager, Authorized Agent
Select appropriate title

Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PERFORMANCE BOND

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS UNDER A FIRM NAME

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Individual Name

Trading and doing business as

Full name of Firm

Address as prequalified

Signature of Contractor

Individually

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PERFORMANCE BOND

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS IN HIS OWN NAME

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Print or type Individual name

Address as prequalified

Signature of Contractor

Individually

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PERFORMANCE BOND
PARTNERSHIP

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Full name of Partnership

Address as prequalified

By

Signature of Partner

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PERFORMANCE BOND
JOINT VENTURE (2) OR (3)
SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTORS (Principal)

Instructions to Bidders: 2 Joint Ventures, Fill in lines (1), (2) and (3) and execute. 3 Joint Venturers Fill in lines (1), (2), (3), (4) and execute. On Line (1), print or type the name of Joint Venture. On line (2), print or type the name of one of the joint venturers and execute below in the appropriate manner required by Article 102-8 of the *NCDOT Standard Specifications*. On Line (3), print or type the name of second joint venturer and execute below in the appropriate manner required by said article of the Specifications. On Line (4), print or type the name of the third joint venturer, if applicable and execute below in the appropriate manner required by said article of the Specifications. This form of execution must be strictly followed.

Signature of Witness or Attest	By	Signature of Contractor
Print or type Signer's name		Print or type Signer's name

and

Signature of Witness or Attest	By	Signature of Contractor
Print or type Signer's name		Print or type Signer's name

and

Signature of Witness or Attest	By	Signature of Contractor
Print or type Signer's name		Print or type Signer's name

CONTRACT PERFORMANCE BOND

Attach certified copy of Power of Attorney to this sheet

**STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
RALEIGH, NC**

BID BOND

Contract Number: DE00335 County: WARREN COUNTY

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, That we, the PRINCIPAL CONTRACTOR (hereafter, PRINCIPAL) and SURETY above named, are held and firmly bound unto the Department of Transportation in the full and just sum of five (5) percent of the total amount bid by the Principal for the project stated above, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

NOW, THEREFORE, the condition of this obligation is: the Principal shall not withdraw its bid within sixty (60) days after the opening of the bids, or within such other time period as may be provided in the proposal, and if the Board of Transportation shall award a contract to the Principal, the Principal shall, within fourteen (14) calendar days after written notice of award is received by him, provide bonds with good and sufficient surety, as required for the faithful performance of the contract and for the protection of all persons supplying labor, material, and equipment for the prosecution of the work. In the event the Principal requests permission to withdraw his bid due to mistake in accordance with the provisions of Article 103-3 of the *Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures*, the conditions and obligations of this Bid Bond shall remain in full force and effect until the Department of Transportation makes a final determination to either allow the bid to be withdrawn or to proceed with award of the contract. In the event a determination is made to award the contract, the Principal shall have fourteen (14) calendar days to comply with the requirements set forth above. In the event the Principal withdraws its bid after bids are opened except as provided in Article 103-3, or after award of the contract has been made fails to execute such additional documents as may be required and to provide the required bonds within the time period specified above, then the amount of the bid bond shall be immediately paid to the Department of Transportation as liquidated damages.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, the Principal and Surety have caused these presents to be duly signed and sealed.

This the _____ day of _____, 20 _____

Surety

By _____
General Agent or Attorney-in-Fact Signature

Seal of Surety

Print or type Signer's Name

BID BOND
CORPORATION

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Full name of Corporation

Address as prequalified

By

Signature of President, Vice President, Assistant Vice President
Select appropriate title

Print or type Signer's name

Affix Corporate Seal

Attest

Signature of Secretary, Assistant Secretary
Select appropriate title

Print or type Signer's name

BID BOND

LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Full name of Firm

Address as prequalified

**Signature of Member/
Manager/Authorized Agent**

Individually

Print or type Signer's name

BID BOND

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS UNDER A FIRM NAME

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Individual Name

Trading and doing business as

Full name of Firm

Address as prequalified

Signature of Contractor

Individually

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

BID BOND

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS IN HIS OWN NAME

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Print or type Individual Name

Address as prequalified

Signature of Contractor

Individually

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

BID BOND

PARTNERSHIP

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Full name of Partnership

Address as prequalified

By _____
Signature of Partner

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

BID BOND
JOINT VENTURE (2 or 3)
SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTORS (Principal)

Instructions to Bidders: **2 Joint Ventures**, Fill in lines (1), (2) and (3) and execute. **3 Joint Venturers** Fill in lines (1), (2), (3), (4) and execute. Line (1), print or type the name of Joint Venture. On line (2), print or type the name of one of the joint venturers and execute below in the appropriate manner required by Article 102-8 of the *Specifications*. On Line (3), print or type the name of second joint venturer and execute below in the appropriate manner required by said article of the Specifications. On Line (4), print or type the name of the third joint venturer, if applicable and execute below in the appropriate manner required by said article of the Specifications. This form of execution must be strictly followed.

_____ Signature of Witness or Attest	By	_____ Signature of Contractor
_____ Print or type Signer's name		_____ Print or type Signer's name

and

_____ Signature of Witness or Attest	By	_____ Signature of Contractor
_____ Print or type Signer's name		_____ Print or type Signer's name

and

_____ Signature of Witness or Attest	By	_____ Signature of Contractor
_____ Print or type Signer's name		_____ Print or type Signer's name

EXECUTION OF BID

NON-COLLUSION, DEBARMENT AND GIFT BAN CERTIFICATION

CORPORATION

The prequalified bidder being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. §133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with his own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. §133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER

Full name of Corporation

Address as Prequalified

Attest _____ By _____
Secretary/Assistant Secretary President/Vice President/Assistant Vice President
(Select appropriate title) (Select appropriate title)

Print or type Signer's name

Print or type Signer's name

CORPORATE SEAL

NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN CERTIFICATION

PARTNERSHIP

The prequalified bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with its own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER

Full Name of
Partnership

Address as
Prequalified

Signature of Witness

Signature of Partner

Print or Type Signer's Name

Print or Type Signer's Name

**NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN
CERTIFICATION**

LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY

The prequalified bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with its own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER

Full Name of Firm

Address as Prequalified

Signature of Witness

Signature of Member/Manager/Authorized Agent
(Select appropriate Title)

Print or Type Signer's Name

Print or Type Signer's Name

NON-COLLUSION, DEBARMENT AND GIFT BAN CERTIFICATION

JOINT VENTURE (2) or (3)

The prequalified bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with its own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER

Instructions: **2 Joint Venturers** Fill in lines (1), (2) and (3) and execute. **3 Joint Venturers** Fill in lines (1), (2), (3) and (4) and execute. On Line (1), fill in the name of the Joint Venture Company. On Line (2), fill in the name of one of the joint venturers and execute below in the appropriate manner. On Line (3), print or type the name of the other joint venturer and execute below in the appropriate manner. On Line (4), fill in the name of the third joint venturer, if applicable and execute below in the appropriate manner.

(1) _____
Name of Joint Venture

(2) _____
Name of Contractor

Address as Prequalified

BY

Signature of Witness or Attest

Signature of Contractor

Print or Type Signer's Name

Print or Type Signer's Name

If Corporation, affix Corporate Seal

AND

(3) _____
Name of Contractor

Address as Prequalified

BY

Signature of Witness or Attest

Signature of Contractor

Print or Type Signer's Name

Print or Type Signer's Name

If Corporation, affix Corporate Seal

AND

(4) _____
Name of Contractor

Address as Prequalified

BY

Signature of Witness or Attest

Signature of Contractor

Print or Type Signer's Name

Print or Type Signer's Name

If Corporation, affix Corporate Seal

**NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN
CERTIFICATION**

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS UNDER A FIRM NAME

The prequalified bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with its own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER

Name of Prequalified Bidder

 Individual Name

Trading and Doing Business As

 Full name of Firm

 Address as Prequalified

 Signature of Witness

 Signature of Prequalified Bidder, Individual

 Print or Type Signer's Name

 Print or Type Signer's Name

**NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN
CERTIFICATION**

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS IN HIS OWN NAME

The prequalified bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with its own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER

Name of Prequalified Bidder _____

Print or Type Name

Address as Prequalified

Signature of Prequalified Bidder, Individually

Print or type Signer's Name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER

Conditions for certification:

1. The prequalified bidder shall provide immediate written notice to the Department if at any time the bidder learns that his certification was erroneous when he submitted his debarment certification or explanation that is file with the Department, or has become erroneous because of changed circumstances.
2. The terms *covered transaction, debarred, suspended, ineligible, lower tier covered transaction, participant, person, primary covered transaction, principal, proposal, and voluntarily excluded*, as used in this provision, have the meanings set out in the Definitions and Coverage sections of the rules implementing Executive Order 12549. A copy of the Federal Rules requiring this certification and detailing the definitions and coverages may be obtained from the Contract Officer of the Department.
3. The prequalified bidder agrees by submitting this form, that he will not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in NCDOT contracts, unless authorized by the Department.
4. For Federal Aid projects, the prequalified bidder further agrees that by submitting this form he will include the Federal-Aid Provision titled *Required Contract Provisions Federal-Aid Construction Contract (Form FHWA PR 1273)* provided by the Department, without subsequent modification, in all lower tier covered transactions.
5. The prequalified bidder may rely upon a certification of a participant in a lower tier covered transaction that he is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless he knows that the certification is erroneous. The bidder may decide the method and frequency by which he will determine the eligibility of his subcontractors.
6. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this provision. The knowledge and information of a participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
7. Except as authorized in paragraph 6 herein, the Department may terminate any contract if the bidder knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available by the Federal Government.

DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION

The prequalified bidder certifies to the best of his knowledge and belief, that he and his principals:

- a. Are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from covered transactions by any Federal department or agency;
- b. Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction or contract under a public transaction; violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records; making false statements; or receiving stolen property;
- c. Are not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entity (Federal, State or local) with commission of any of the offenses enumerated in paragraph b. of this certification; and
- d. Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal had one or more public transactions (Federal, State or local) terminated for cause or default.
- e. Will submit a revised Debarment Certification immediately if his status changes and will show in his bid proposal an explanation for the change in status.

If the prequalified bidder cannot certify that he is not debarred, he shall provide an explanation with this submittal. An explanation will not necessarily result in denial of participation in a contract.

Failure to submit a non-collusion affidavit and debarment certification will result in the prequalified bidder's bid being considered non-responsive.

Check here if an explanation is attached to this certification.

County : Warren

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
ROADWAY ITEMS						
0001	0000100000-N	800	MOBILIZATION	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0002	0000400000-N	801	CONSTRUCTION SURVEYING	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0003	0008000000-E	200	SUPPLEMENTARY CLEARING & GRUB-BING	1 ACR		
0004	0036000000-E	225	UNDERCUT EXCAVATION	200 CY		
0005	0043000000-N	226	GRADING	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0006	0134000000-E	240	DRAINAGE DITCH EXCAVATION	10 CY		
0007	0195000000-E	265	SELECT GRANULAR MATERIAL	200 CY		
0008	0196000000-E	270	GEOTEXTILE FOR SOIL STABILIZATION	200 SY		
0009	0318000000-E	300	FOUNDATION CONDITIONING MATERIAL, MINOR STRUCTURES	10 TON		
0010	0320000000-E	300	FOUNDATION CONDITIONING GEOTEXTILE	20 SY		
0011	0354000000-E	310	**** RC PIPE CULVERTS, CLASS ***** 24", V	52 LF		
0012	1220000000-E	545	INCIDENTAL STONE BASE	25 TON		
0013	1491000000-E	610	ASPHALT CONC BASE COURSE, TYPE B25.0C	280 TON		
0014	1503000000-E	610	ASPHALT CONC INTERMEDIATE COURSE, TYPE I19.0C	270 TON		
0015	1519000000-E	610	ASPHALT CONC SURFACE COURSE, TYPE S9.5B	200 TON		
0016	1575000000-E	620	ASPHALT BINDER FOR PLANT MIX	40 TON		
0017	2000000000-N	806	RIGHT-OF-WAY MARKERS	18 EA		
0018	3030000000-E	862	STEEL BEAM GUARDRAIL	287.5 LF		
0019	3045000000-E	862	STEEL BEAM GUARDRAIL, SHOP CURVED	250 LF		

County : Warren

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0020	3150000000-N	862	ADDITIONAL GUARDRAIL POSTS	5 EA		
0021	3288000000-N	SP	GUARDRAIL END UNITS, TYPE TL-2	4 EA		
0022	3628000000-E	876	RIP RAP, CLASS I	200 TON		
0023	3635000000-E	876	RIP RAP, CLASS II	385 TON		
0024	3649000000-E	876	RIP RAP, CLASS B	170 TON		
0025	3656000000-E	876	GEOTEXTILE FOR DRAINAGE	1,580 SY		
0026	4400000000-E	1110	WORK ZONE SIGNS (STATIONARY)	395 SF		
0027	4410000000-E	1110	WORK ZONE SIGNS (BARRICADE MOUNTED)	94 SF		
0028	4422000000-N	1120	PORTABLE CHANGEABLE MESSAGE SIGN (SHORT TERM)	28 DAY		
0029	4430000000-N	1130	DRUMS	6 EA		
0030	4445000000-E	1145	BARRICADES (TYPE III)	64 LF		
0031	4810000000-E	1205	PAINT PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (4")	3,400 LF		
0032	6000000000-E	1605	TEMPORARY SILT FENCE	735 LF		
0033	6006000000-E	1610	STONE FOR EROSION CONTROL, CLASS A	75 TON		
0034	6009000000-E	1610	STONE FOR EROSION CONTROL, CLASS B	225 TON		
0035	6012000000-E	1610	SEDIMENT CONTROL STONE	70 TON		
0036	6015000000-E	1615	TEMPORARY MULCHING	0.5 ACR		
0037	6018000000-E	1620	SEED FOR TEMPORARY SEEDING	100 LB		
0038	6021000000-E	1620	FERTILIZER FOR TEMPORARY SEEDING	0.5 TON		
0039	6024000000-E	1622	TEMPORARY SLOPE DRAINS	200 LF		

County : Warren

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0040	6029000000-E	SP	SAFETY FENCE	400 LF		
0041	6030000000-E	1630	SILT EXCAVATION	110 CY		
0042	6036000000-E	1631	MATTING FOR EROSION CONTROL	5,845 SY		
0043	6037000000-E	SP	COIR FIBER MAT	100 SY		
0044	6042000000-E	1632	1/4" HARDWARE CLOTH	55 LF		
0045	6070000000-N	1639	SPECIAL STILLING BASINS	4 EA		
0046	6071020000-E	SP	POLYACRYLAMIDE (PAM)	55 LB		
0047	6084000000-E	1660	SEEDING & MULCHING	0.5 ACR		
0048	6087000000-E	1660	MOWING	0.5 ACR		
0049	6090000000-E	1661	SEED FOR REPAIR SEEDING	50 LB		
0050	6093000000-E	1661	FERTILIZER FOR REPAIR SEEDING	0.25 TON		
0051	6096000000-E	1662	SEED FOR SUPPLEMENTAL SEEDING	50 LB		
0052	6108000000-E	1665	FERTILIZER TOPDRESSING	0.5 TON		
0053	6111000000-E	SP	IMPERVIOUS DIKE	400 LF		
0054	6114500000-N	1667	SPECIALIZED HAND MOWING	10 MHR		
0055	6117000000-N	SP	RESPONSE FOR EROSION CONTROL	7 EA		
0056	6117500000-N	SP	CONCRETE WASHOUT STRUCTURE	1 EA		
0057	6123000000-E	1670	REFORESTATION	0.27 ACR		
0058	6141000000-E	SP	GENERIC EROSION CONTROL ITEM CONCRETE COMPOSITE GEOTEXTILE MATTING	260 SY		
0059	8035000000-N	402	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE AT STATION ***** 12+35.00 -L-	Lump Sum	L.S.	

County : Warren

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0060	8065000000-N	SP	ASBESTOS ASSESSMENT	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0061	8196000000-E	420	CLASS A CONCRETE (CULVERT)	61 CY		
0062	8245000000-E	425	REINFORCING STEEL (CULVERT)	7,487 LB		
0063	8804000000-N	SP	GENERIC CULVERT ITEM 42' X 10' PRECAST REINFORCED C ONCRETE TH	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0849/Mar18/Q24703.52/D269957520000/E63			Total Amount Of Bid For Entire Project :			